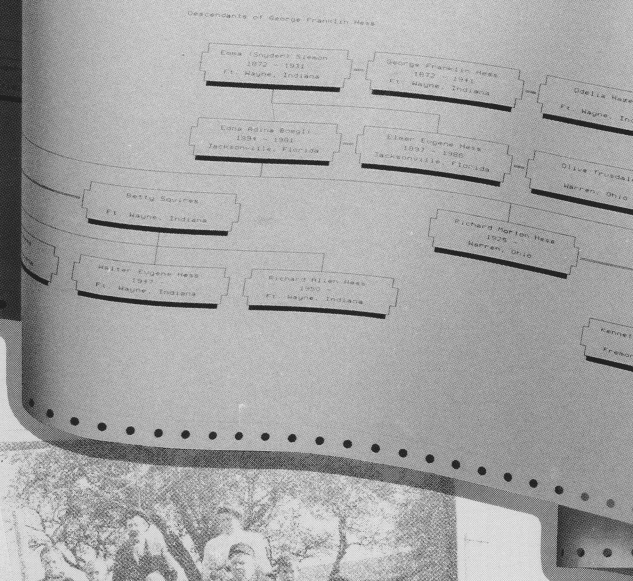
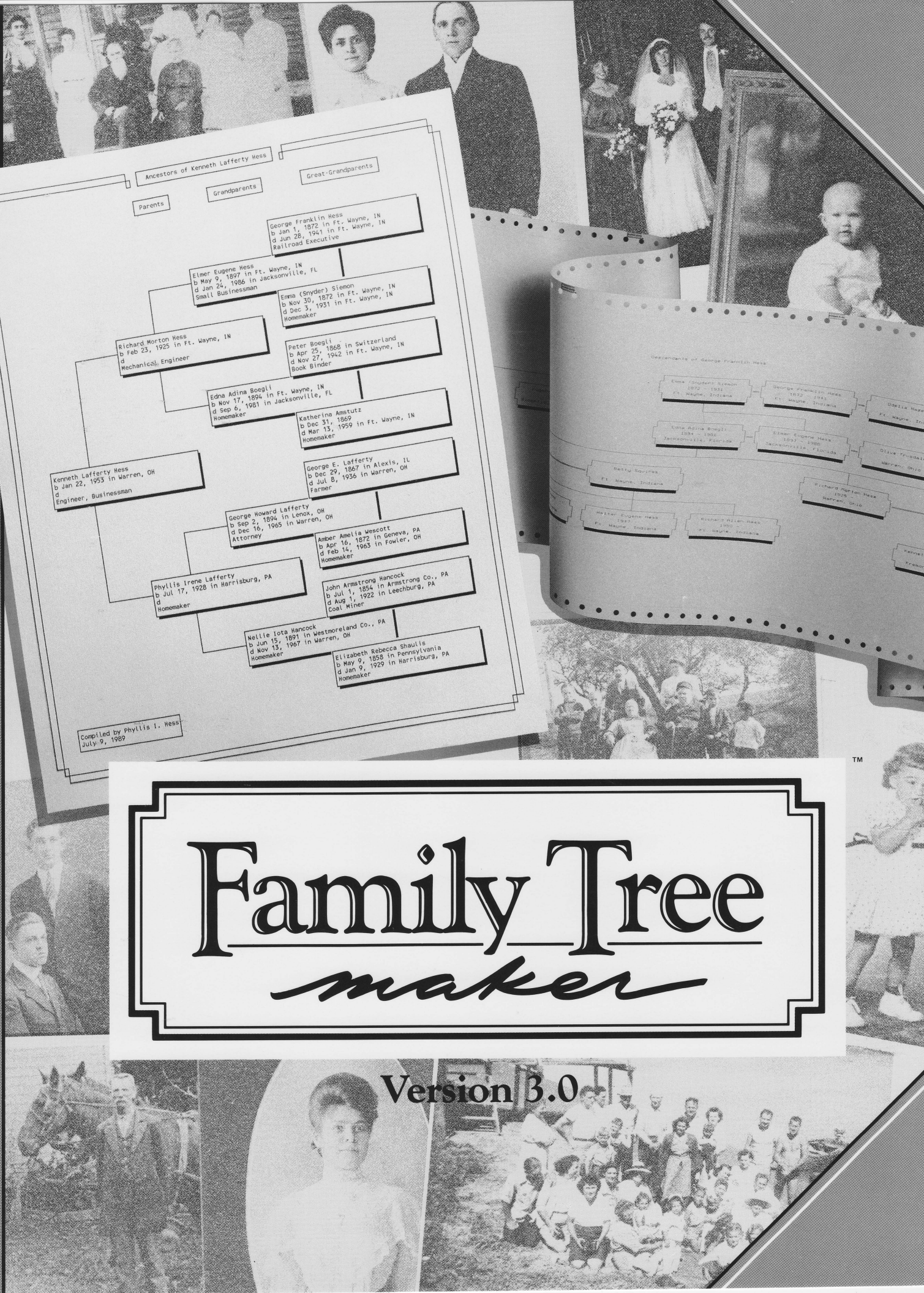


Compiled by Phyllis J. Hess
July 9, 1989



Family Tree *maker*

Version 3.0



Serial Number _____

Family Tree Maker™ Accessories Order Form

Please send me the following:

Item	Price	Quantity	Diskette Size (circle one)	Total
Biography Maker*	\$ 29.99	x _____	<input type="checkbox"/> 5.25" or <input type="checkbox"/> 3.5"	\$ _____
Laser Printer Fonts Diskette	\$ 19.99	x _____	<input type="checkbox"/> 5.25" or <input type="checkbox"/> 3.5"	\$ _____
Parchment Paper Pack (75 sheets)	\$ 12.99	x _____		\$ _____
In California add 7.25% sales tax				\$ _____
Shipping (\$14.00 outside U.S., Canada, and Mexico)				\$ 4.00
				Total \$ _____

Name _____

Shipping Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Country _____ Area Code/Phone _____

Visa MC AmEx Check (U.S. only)

Card No. _____

Expires _____ Signature _____

Name on Card _____

Send to: Banner Blue Software
P.O. Box 7865, Fremont, CA 94537

Or fax to: 510-795-4488

*Hard disk, OR any high density drive, OR
two 3 1/2" disk drives required.

Products shipped within 48 hours of receipt.

FT0693

Serial Number _____

Change of Address Card

If you have changed your address, please fill out this postcard and return it to us. You won't want to miss getting information on future products and enhancements.

Old Address Information (Please print legibly or type):

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Country _____ Area Code/Phone _____

New Address Information:

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Country _____ Area Code/Phone _____

Send to: Banner Blue Software
P.O. Box 7865, Fremont, CA 94537

Or fax to: 510-795-4488

FTM

The logo for 'Family Tree maker' is enclosed in a decorative rectangular frame with a double-line border. The words 'Family Tree' are written in a large, black, serif font, with horizontal lines underlining each word. Below them, the word 'maker' is written in a smaller, black, cursive script font. A small 'TM' trademark symbol is located to the right of the frame.

Family Tree
maker™

USER'S TUTORIAL AND REFERENCE MANUAL

Banner Blue Software Incorporated
Fremont, California

© Copyright 1989, 1991, 1993
Banner Blue Software Incorporated
All Rights Reserved

Fifth Edition (May 1993)

CREDITS

Family Members

Thanks to our family members Gary Corda, Ryan Fineran, Kyle Fineran, Mark Gonsalves, Valerie Ljungqvist, Mike McDonell, Adrienne Mocello, Joe Moniz, David Moniz, Tom Shinn, Judy Shinn, Corinne Speer, Bob Stanko, Nancy Stanko, Taryn Stanko, Barry Vaughan, Rodger Watkins, and Tom Wilbur. They were supportive and understanding during the hectic months it took to complete this project.

Program Design and Coding

Hugo Paz, Dan Handalian II, Harvey Tang, Courtney Kermeen, and Steve Stanko with assistance from Jeff Levinsky and Kenneth L. Hess

Documentation

Cathi Fineran, Dan Handalian II, Michelle Shinn, and Ceil Tilney

Thanks also to Michael Crouch, MD, LSU School of Medicine

Graphic Arts

Cathy Thompson and Sue Watkins

Testing and Critiquing

Jessica Cornette, Cathi Fineran, Courtney Kermeen, Jeff Levinsky, Kristian Ljungqvist, Susanne E. McDonell, Stacey Moniz, Joel Pelote, Michelle Shinn, and Sue Watkins

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation

HP is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company

Epson is a registered trademark of the Epson Corporation

Roots III is a trademark of COMMSOFT, Inc.

About Your Family Tree Maker Diskette and Manual

Banner Blue encourages you to make a back-up copy of Family Tree Maker for your own use. However, the software and manual are protected by United States and International copyright laws. Except for back-up purposes, it is a Federal Crime to make copies of the software for any purpose, including for use by another person.

It is a Federal Crime to copy the manual in whole or in part without Banner Blue's prior written consent.

Warranty

Banner Blue warrants that the software substantially conforms to the manual and published specifications. This warranty is in effect for a period of one (1) year following your date of purchase.

Banner Blue also warrants that the physical diskette and manual are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use for a period of one (1) year. Banner Blue will correct substantial software errors or replace defective diskettes or manuals at no charge. If this is not possible, Banner Blue will refund the amount paid for the product. If you accidentally damage your diskette, notify Banner Blue and we will send you a replacement diskette for a nominal charge.

EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESS WARRANTIES DESCRIBED ABOVE, BANNER BLUE MAKES NO OTHER WARRANTY, EXPRESS, OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION. THIS INCLUDES, BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE. YOUR EXCLUSIVE REMEDY, AND BANNER BLUE'S ENTIRE LIABILITY, WILL BE REPLACEMENT OF THE DISKETTE OR REFUND OF THE AMOUNT PAID FOR THE PRODUCT. IN NO EVENT SHALL BANNER BLUE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

This warranty will be governed by the laws of the state of California.

Banner Blue
P. O. Box 7865
Fremont CA 94537-7865

510-794-6850 Phone
510-795-4488 Fax

Other Products by Banner Blue Software

(see Appendix K for product descriptions)

Home

Biography Maker
Uncle Sam's Budget Balancer
Banner Blue Movie Guide

Business

Org Plus Advanced
Org Plus for Macintosh
Org Plus for Windows
Brochure Maker



TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	3
Six Kinds of Trees	4
Create Your Own Style	8
System Requirements	8
Where To Find What You Need To Know	8
Customer Registration	10
Customer Assistance	10
Product Upgrade Plan	11
About Mailing Lists	11
We Want To Hear From You	11
Chapter 1	Installation and Program Setup 15
Installing And Starting Family Tree Maker On A Hard Disk System	15
Installing And Starting Family Tree Maker On Systems Without A Hard Disk	17
Program Setup	19
Where To Go From Here	24
Chapter 2	Tutorial 29
Before You Start	29
Getting Started	29
Creating A New Family Tree	30
Part I: Entering Family Information	32
Part II: The Individual Cards	42
Part III: Printing A Family Tree	49
Chapter 3	Entering Information 55
A Quick Overview	55
The Family Card	55
Entering Family Information	56
Recording Sources	63
The Individual Cards	64
Individual Card 1	64
Individual Card 2	66
Individual Card 3	66

Chapter 3**Entering Information (continued)**

Individual Card 4 – Notes	67
The Marriage Card	78
Displaying A Different Family Card	78
Parents' Family Card	79
Child's Family Card	80
Siblings' Family Card	80
Other Spouses	80
Find Individual	81
Index of Names	86
Typing Saver	88
How To Use The Typing Saver	88
Special Tips	90
A Typing Saver Short-Cut	90
Kinship	90
Saving Your Information	92
The Drive (or Directory) Field	94
The Command Menu	94

Chapter 4**Printing Trees.....109**

Printing An Ancestor Tree	109
Selecting The Primary Individual	111
Choosing The Tree Size	111
Choosing The Number Of Generations	113
Getting Ready To Print	116
Previewing Your Tree	116
Changing Print Settings	117
Printing A Photo Tree	125
Selecting The Primary Individual	125
Choosing The Number Of Generations	125
Getting Ready To Print	126
Previewing Your Tree	126
Changing Print Settings	127
Printing A Descendant Tree	127
Selecting The Primary Individual	129
Choosing The Number Of Generations	129
Getting Ready To Print	132
Previewing Your Tree	133
Changing Print Settings	133
Printing A Direct Descendant Tree	142
Selecting The Primary Individual	144
Selecting The Secondary Individual	144
Getting Ready To Print	145
Previewing Your Tree	146
Changing Print Settings	146

	Making Descendant Trees With Room For Photographs ..	152
	Printing An Outline Descendant Tree.....	153
	Selecting The Primary Individual	155
	Choosing The Number Of Generations	156
	Getting Ready To Print	157
	Previewing Your Outline Descendant Tree	158
	Changing Print Settings.....	158
	Printing An Outline Direct Descendant Tree	167
	Selecting The Primary Individual	168
	Selecting The Secondary Individual.....	169
	Getting Ready To Print	170
	Previewing Your Outline Direct Descendant Tree	171
	Changing Print Settings.....	171
Chapter 5	Other Printing	181
	Printing Family and Individual Cards	181
	Printing The List Of Individuals	182
	Printing A Family Group Sheet	184
	Printing A Calendar	186
	Printing Custom Reports	188
	Selecting Individuals To Print	189
	Selecting Information To Print	190
	Getting Ready To Print	192
	Previewing Your Report.....	193
	Changing Print Settings.....	194
	Batch Printing	198
	Selecting Information To Print	198
	Selecting Individuals To Print	200
	Displaying The Individuals Found	201
	Changing Print Settings.....	202
	Draft Printing.....	203
Chapter 6	The Data Exchange Utility	207
	Program Setup	207
	Starting the Data Exchange Utility on a	
	Hard Disk System.....	208
	Starting the Data Exchange Utility on	
	Systems Without a Hard Disk	208
	Program Setup/Status	209
	Help.....	209
	Where To Go From Here.....	209
	Import From GEDCOM.....	209
	Export To GEDCOM.....	213
	Export To ASCII	216

Chapter 6	The Data Exchange Utility (continued)	
	Export Notes.....	218
	View File	220
Appendix A	Researching Families.....	223
	Note-Taking.....	223
	Types of Forms.....	224
	Filing.....	225
	Research Sources	225
	Local Records.....	226
	National Records	227
	Church Records	228
	Requesting Information	228
	Things to Watch For	229
	Double Dates	229
	Marriage Banns	229
	Death and Burial Dates	230
	Incorrect Documents	230
	Word Meanings	230
	Location Names and Boundary Changes.....	230
	Outdated Medical Terminology	231
	The Final Product	232
	Bibliography	233
	Genealogical Information Sources	234
Appendix B	LDS Ordinance Information	239
Appendix C	Printers and Plotters	241
	When You're Not Sure What Printer Setting To Use	241
	Setting Up A Large Format Plotter	242
	Special Setup	244
Appendix D	Common Questions and Problems	247
	Entering Information	247
	Correcting Relationship Mistakes.....	247
	Avoiding Information Loss.....	251
	Retrieving Backups.....	252
	Keeping All Your Information in a Single Card File... 253	
	Listing Children and Marriages in the Correct Order 254	
	Using International Characters	256
	Printing.....	257
	Text Is Printing Out Of The Boxes.....	257

	The Information From the Boxes On The Right Side Of The Tree Is Printing On The Left Side Of The Page	258
	Garbage Characters Are Printing On The Tree	259
	Error Messages	260
	Out of memory. Cannot hold more information	260
	Your printer or plotter is not responding	260
	You have entered the drive (or directory) incorrectly ..	260
Appendix E	How to Save Selected Descendants and Join Card Files	263
	Save Selected Descendants	263
	Join Card Files	264
Appendix F	Using a Mouse	273
Appendix G	Fixing Files With Duplicates Of The Same Person	275
	Combining Duplicate Entries In Your Card File.....	276
	What To Do If Family Tree Maker Doesn't Recognize A Duplicate Entry	277
Appendix H	Time Saving Tips.....	279
Appendix I	Importing Roots III Files	281
Appendix J	Preserving Photographs	283
	What A Photograph Is Made Of	283
	Causes Of Deterioration	283
	Proper Storage Methods And Materials	285
	Sources Of Safe Storage And Display Materials	286
	Bibliography	286
Appendix K	Accessories	287
	<i>Biography Maker</i>	287
	Laser Fonts Diskette	287
	Parchment Paper	288

Appendix K

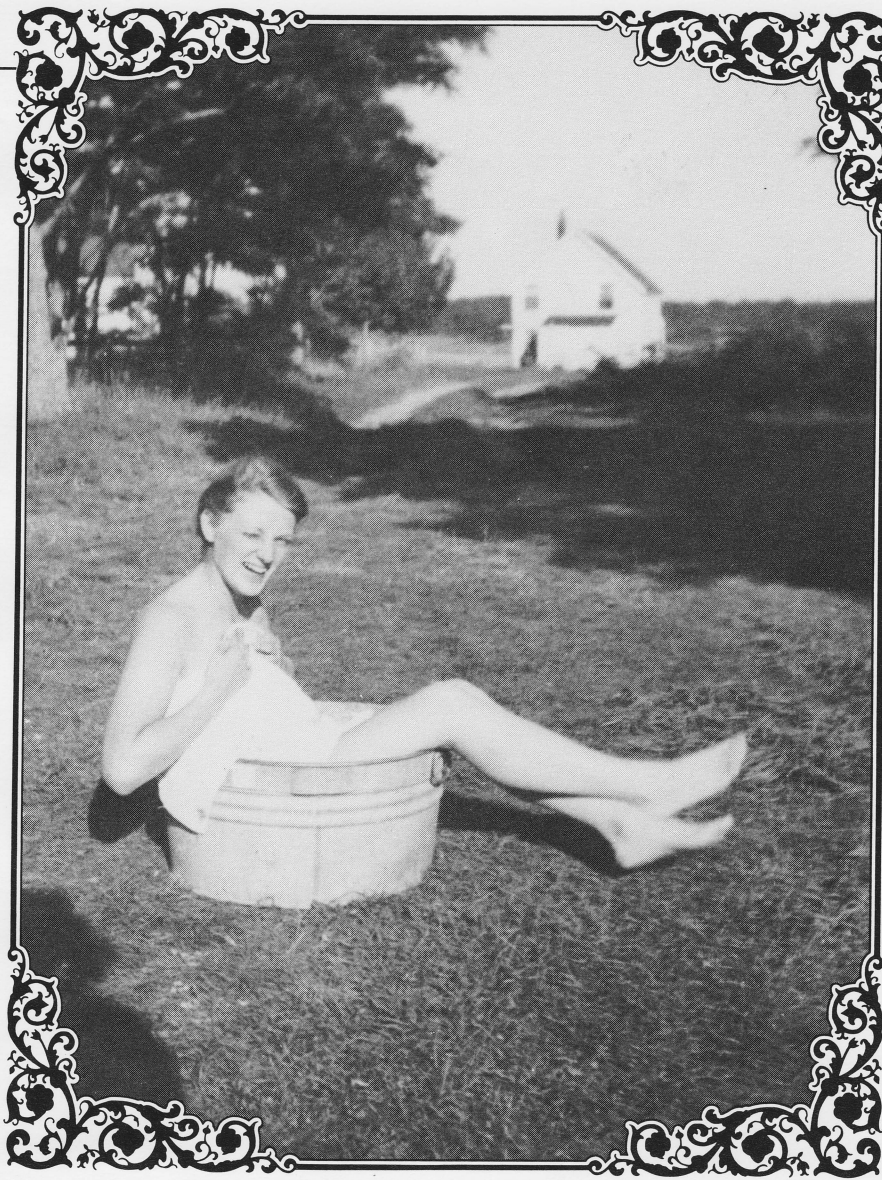
Accessories (continued)

Other Products288
 Uncle Sam's Budget Balancer288
 Banner Blue Movie Guide288
 Brochure Maker288
 Org Plus.....288

Picture Index289

Index291

INTRODUCTION



The maternal grandmother of Dan Handalian, one of this manual's writers, was quite a card in her younger years. Here she is playfully posing in an old clamming bucket during the summer of 1938, in Wareham, Massachusetts. A year later she was married, and to this day remains youthful, spirited, and lots of fun.



INTRODUCTION

FAMILY TREE MAKER creates beautiful family trees and gives you a detailed permanent record of your family history.

Family trees are fun to make no matter what information you include. They make fantastic gifts, and they're the perfect conversation piece for your next family gathering.

Family Tree Maker is quick and easy to use. You enter information into the computer about each family member — parents, children, marriages — as if you were filling out a form printed on a note card. Optional cards let you enter more extensive information. Family Tree Maker does the rest of the work.

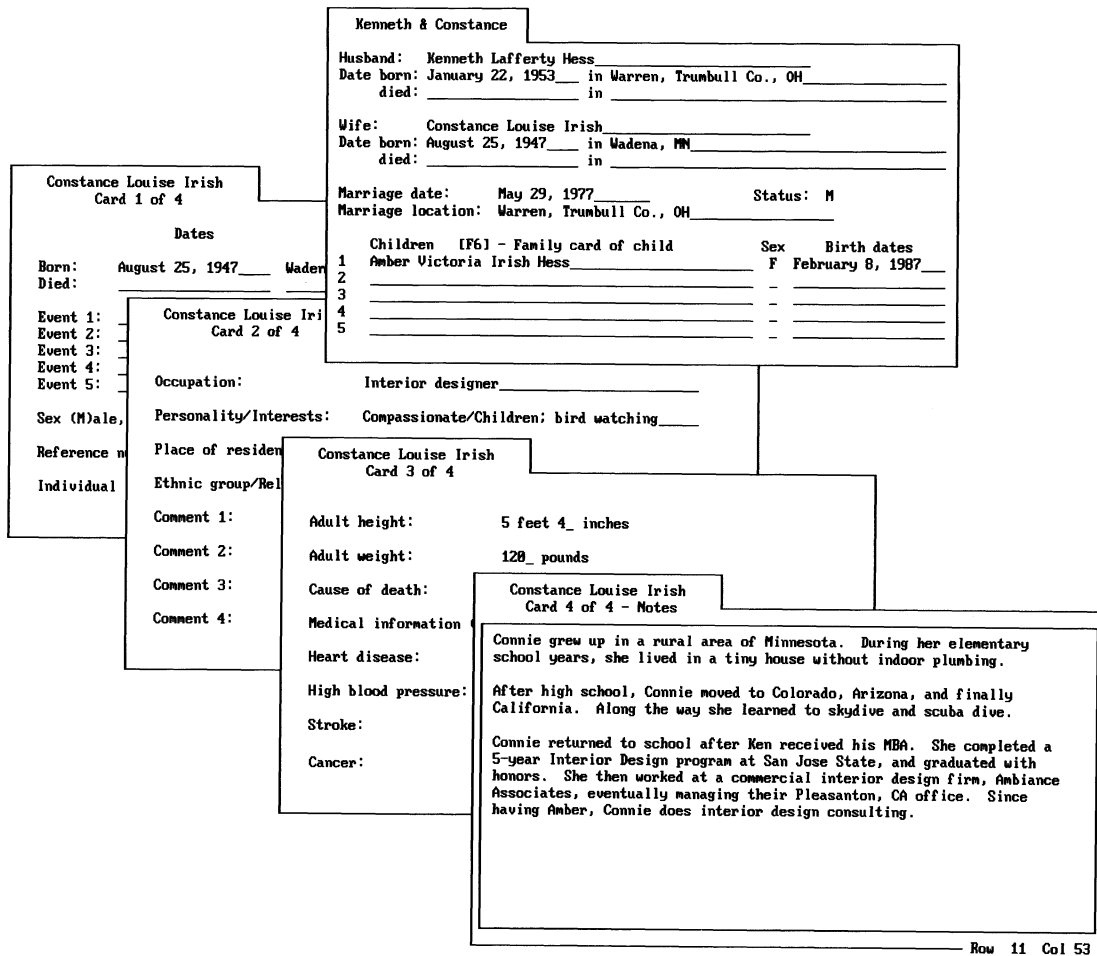


Figure I-1. Family and Individual Cards

SIX KINDS OF TREES

Family Tree Maker assembles the information you provide into family trees. You can print any of six basic styles of tree: ancestor, photo, descendant, outline descendant, direct descendant, and outline direct descendant.

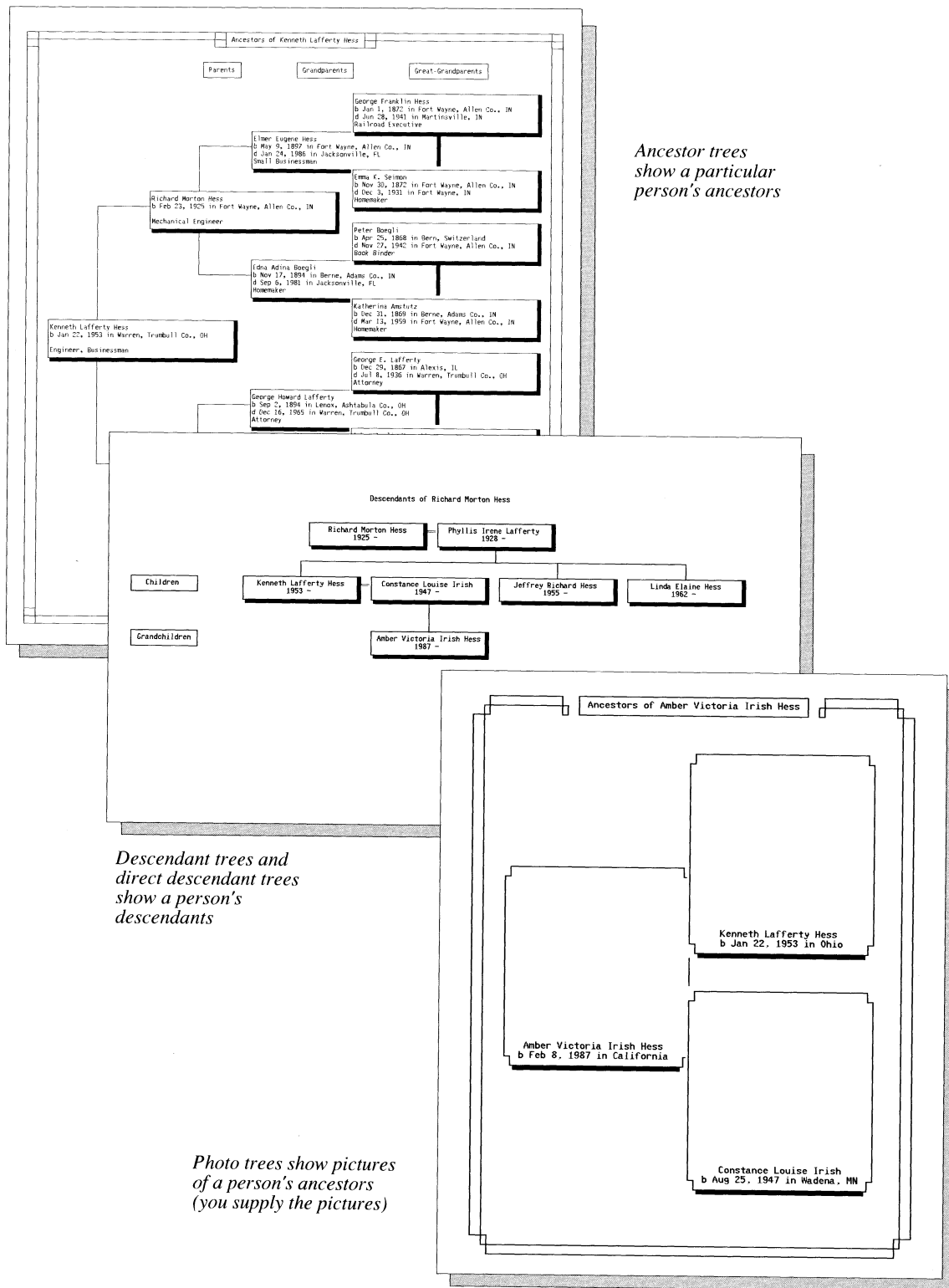
Ancestor trees (sometimes called “pedigree” trees) make great gifts to family members because they show the family roots for any individual. Two parents, four grandparents, eight great-grandparents, and beyond are all printed with perfect spacing.

Photo trees are ancestor trees with spaces for individual photographs.

Descendant trees are ideal for family gatherings and reunions because they show where everyone fits. Starting with a relative in the distant past, a descendant tree shows children, grandchildren, great-grandchildren and so on, generation by generation. Aunts, uncles, and cousins are all included.

Direct descendant trees are similar to descendant trees, but they’re much smaller. They start with a relative in the distant past and show the line of descent to a relative in a later generation. Siblings can be shown, but sibling’s spouses, cousins, and others who aren’t direct descendants cannot.

Outline style trees (descendant and direct descendant) contain the same information as descendant and direct descendant trees but present it in a compact, outline form without boxes. They’re ideal for creating quick, short summaries of your family history when you’re not concerned about presenting information in a traditional tree format.



Ancestor trees show a particular person's ancestors

Descendant trees and direct descendant trees show a person's descendants

Photo trees show pictures of a person's ancestors (you supply the pictures)

Figure I-2. Types of family trees

Hess Descendants born in Pennsylvania

Name	Birth location	Birth-death
Biddle, Janet Irene	Butler Co., PA	1948 -
Crawford, Mary	Dauphin Co., PA	1770 - 1835
Emmert, Mary	PA	1794 - 1853
Hancock, Albert Henry	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1864 - 1952
Hancock, Andrew Jackson	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1861 - 1960
Hancock, Charles E.	Ligonier Twp., Westmoreland Co., PA	1886 - 1956
Hancock, Clarence Wilbert	Leechburg, Armstrong Co., PA	1907 - 1978
Hancock, David Gipson	Armstrong Co., PA	1819 - 1887
Hancock, David Gipson	Armstrong Co., PA	1859 - 1934
Hancock, Dorothy Mae	Leechburg, PA	1918 -
Hancock, Earl	Ligonier Twp., Westmoreland Co. PA	1889 -
Hancock, Edwin Martin	Vandergrift, Westmoreland Co., PA	1910 - 1966
Hancock, Genevieve	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1911 -
Hancock, Harold Laverne	Leechburg, Armstrong Co., PA	1910 - 1977
Hancock, Harry Wilbert	Ligonier Twp. Westmoreland Co., PA	1887 - 1958
Hancock, Henry	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1823 - 1903
Hancock, James Harry	Kittanning, PA	1946 -
Hancock, James Herbison	Kelly Station, PA	1910 -
Hancock, James M.	Kelly Station, PA	1858 - 1861
Hancock, John	PA	1787 - 1851
Hancock, John	PA	1814 - 1852
Hancock, John Abraham	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1854 - 1922
Hancock, Lawrence Wilbert	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1915 -
Hancock, Nancy	Armstrong Co., PA	1810 - 1890
Hancock, Nancy Jane	Kelly Station, PA	1851 - 1935
Hancock, Nellie Iota		
Hancock, Percy Deering		
Hancock, Robert Randall		
Hancock, Russell Clarence		
Hancock, Susannah		
Lafferty, Phyllis Irene		
Lafferty, Samuel		
Lindsey, Rebecca		
McDowell, Margaret		
McMichael, James		
McMichael, Sarah Ann		
Mechling, May C.		
Myers, Ida Marie		
Riggle, Lavina		
Schultz, Juliana		
Shaulis, Adam P.		
Shaulis, Elizabeth Rebecca		
Shaulis, Noah		
Shetler, Sarah		
Thompson, Jennie Mae		
Umburn, Margaret Hazel		
Wescott, Amber Amelia		
Wescott, Nathan		

This report was created by Susanne E. McDonell on

Custom reports show whatever information you choose

Descendants of Thomas Sprunger

- 1 Sprunger, Thomas (1645-UNKNOWN)
- +Buergi, Regina (1649-UNKNOWN)
- 2 Sprunger, Hans (1668-UNKNOWN)
- +Holsten, Ulla (1670-UNKNOWN)
- 3 Sprunger, Deiter (1718-UNKNOWN)
- +Neuenschwander, Elizabeth (UNKNOWN)
- 4 Sprunger, Katherina (1773-UNKNOWN)
- +Amstutz, Christian (1772-UNKNOWN)
- 5 Amstutz, Elisabeth (1797-UNKNOWN)
- 5 Amstutz, Johannes (1800-UNKNOWN)
- 5 Amstutz, Christian (1802-1840)
- 5 Amstutz, Regina (1803-UNKNOWN)
- 5 Amstutz, Anna (1804-UNKNOWN)
- 5 Amstutz, Durs Dorsey (1805-1870)
- 5 Amstutz, Johannes Ulrich (1817-UNKNOWN)
- +Sprunger, Elisabeth (1832-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Lena (1860-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Marianna (1861-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Jakob U. (1862-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, John J. (1864-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Japhet (1865-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Elisabeth U. (1867-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Twin (1867-UNKNOWN)
- 6 Amstutz, Katherina (1869-1959)
- +Boegli, Peter (1868-1942)
- 7 Boegli, Emma Bertha (1890-UNKNOWN)
- 7 Boegli, Wilber James (1891-UNKNOWN)
- 7 Boegli, Elmer Elam (1893-UNKNOWN)
- 7 Boegli, Edna Adina (1894-1981)
- +Hess, Elmer Eugene (1897-1986)
- 8 Hess, Gretchen Kathryn (1917-1989)
- +Friend, William Delbert (1915-1983)
- 9 Friend, William Herbert (1948-)
- +Meril, Pamela (UNKNOWN)
- 9 Friend, Patricia Lynn (1950-)
- 8 Hess, Eugene Elmer (1918-)
- +Stelle, Phebe Esther (1919-1988)
- 8 Hess, Donald Boegli (1920-)
- 8 Hess, Pauline Gwendolyn (1922-)
- +Summerville, Robert (UNKNOWN-1978)
- 9 Summerville, Sandra Eileen (1945-)
- 9 Summerville, Robert Lee (1946-)
- 8 Hess, Corliss Burdett (1923-)
- +Squires, Betty (1924-)
- 8 Hess, Richard Morton (1925-)
- +Lafferty, Phyllis Irene (1928-)
- 9 Hess, Kenneth Lafferty (1953-)
- +Irish, Constance Louise (1947-)
- 10 Hess, Amber Victoria Irish (1987-)
- 8 Hess, Marilyn Lorraine (1926-)
- +Garig, Darrell Leon (1929-)
- 7 Boegli, Howard Lewellyn (1898-UNKNOWN)
- 7 Boegli, Elizabeth Magdalena (1908-UNKNOWN)
- 2 Sprunger, Hans Peter (1669-UNKNOWN)
- 2 Sprunger, Barbara (1671-UNKNOWN)
- 2 Sprunger, Catherina (1673-UNKNOWN)

This tree was created by Susanne E. McDonell especially for the Hess Family on April 22, 1993.

Outline descendant and direct descendant trees show relationships at a glance

Figure I-3. Custom report and Outline descendant tree

Husband: Richard Morton Hess			
Born:	February 23, 1925	Place: Fort Wayne, Allen Co., IN	Event 3:
Married:	December 9, 1951	Place: Warren, Trumbull Co., OH	Event 4:
Died:		Place:	Event 5:
Event 1:		Place:	Event 5:
Event 2:		Place:	Event 5:
Father:	Elder Eugene Hess	Place:	
Mother:	Edna Adina Boegli		
Other Wives:			
Wife: Phyllis Irene Lafferty			
Born:	July 17, 1928	Place: Harrisburg, Dauphin Co., PA	Event 3:
Died:		Place:	Event 4:
Event 1:		Place:	Event 5:
Event 2:		Place:	Event 5:
Father:	George Howard Lafferty		
Mother:	Nellie Jota Hancock		
Other Husbands:			
Sex:	Children:	List each child (living or dead)	
M/F:		in order of birth:	
1. Name:	Kenneth Lafferty Hess	Spouse: Constance Louise Irish	
Born:	January 22, 1953	Place: Warren, Trumbull Co., OH	Event 3:
Married:	May 29, 1977	Place: Warren, Trumbull Co., OH	Event 4:
Died:		Place:	Event 5:
2. Name:	Jeffrey Richard Hess		
Born:	August 12, 1955	Place: Warren, Tr	
Married:	October 25, 1980	Place: West Lafay	
Died:		Place:	
3. Name:	Linda Elaine Hess		
Born:	March 26, 1962	Place:	
Married:		Place:	
Died:		Place:	
4. Name:		Place:	
Born:		Place:	
Married:		Place:	
Died:		Place:	
5. Name:		Place:	
Born:		Place:	
Married:		Place:	
Died:		Place:	
6. Name:		Place:	
Born:		Place:	
Married:		Place:	
Died:		Place:	
7. Name:		Place:	
Born:		Place:	
Married:		Place:	
Died:		Place:	
8. Name:		Place:	
Born:		Place:	
Married:		Place:	
Died:		Place:	
Prepared by:	Phyllis L. Hess	2345 South Rd. SE	Wellsley, OH
Phone:	216-345-67		

Print details about a particular family...

The Hess Family

Name:	Date born:
Arnold, Richard	October 4, 1954
Berry, Patricia Ann	November 23, 1957
Biddle, Janet Irene	September 26, 1948
Brechtelsbauer, James Michael	September 27, 1970
Brechtelsbauer, Jeffrey Hall	September 4, 1956
Brechtelsbauer, Jeremy David	June 2, 1974
Brechtelsbauer, Joel	October 8, 1958
Brechtelsbauer, John Eric	January 25, 1964
Friend, Patricia Lynn	November 8, 1950
Friend, William Herbert	February 27, 1948
Garig, Darrell Leon II	November 28, 1952
Garig, Dawn Michelle	September 3, 1960
Garig, Duane Allen	February 9, 1957
Hancock, Beverly	July 10, 1941
Hancock, David Lawrence	December 10, 1945
Hancock, Donald Lee	September 7, 1949
Hancock, Eugene Hill	February 9, 1936
Hancock, Genie Lou	February 3, 1959
Hancock, Gloria Lynn	February 3, 1940
Hancock, James Harry	
Hancock, James Jay	
Hancock, Janice Elizabeth	
Hancock, Jodi Lynn	
Hancock, John Michael	
Hancock, Kimberly	
Hancock, Leonard Roger	
Hancock, Lynn Ann	
Hancock, Mark Eugene	
Hancock, Robert Randall	
Hancock, Russell	
Hancock, Tommy Dale	
Hawkins, Donald Lee	
Hess, Amber Victoria Irish	
Hess, Christopher David	
Hess, Diana Marie	
Hess, George Franklin	
Hess, Jeffrey Richard	
Hess, Kenneth Lafferty	
Hess, Kyle Jeffrey	
Hess, Linda Elaine	
Hess, Richard Allen	
Hess, Walter Eugene	
Irish, Constance Louise	
Jr., Robert Randall Hancock	
Lafferty, Brian Patrick	
Lafferty, Donald Eugene	
Lafferty, Donald Eugene	
Lay, Daniel Clayton	
Lay, Susan Denise	
Oberdorf, Loretta Jane	
Schutts, Diana Ruth	
Schutts, Ronald Lee	
Smith, Albert	
Smith, Janet Rae	
Smith, John	
Smith, Ronald Lee	
Sollinger, Judy Ann	
Summerville, Cathy Elizabeth	
Summerville, Clyde Cleveland	
Summerville, Melanie Lee Ann	
Summerville, Robert Lee	
Summerville, Sandra Eileen	
Throp, David Brian	
Throp, Janice Carol	
Weiss, Dorothy	
Weiss, Gary	
Weiss, George	
Zenevich, Dolores	

...or a list of all your relatives...

January 1993 Birthdays and Anniversaries

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
					1	2
3	4	5 Howard Lowell Boegli 95	6 George Richard Hess 85 Ronald Lee Schutts 41	7	8 Dingus McLee 81 Pamela & William Herbert Friend 21	9
10	11	12	13	14	15 Tommy Dale Hancock 41	16
17	18	19	20	21 Lucy Lavina Jane Hancock 76 Janice Elizabeth & Joshua Brechtelsbauer 37	22 Andrew Franklin Hancock 71 Kenneth Lafferty Hess 40	23 Janet Irene & Robert Randall Hancock 20
24 Edna Belle Hess 94	25 John Eric Brechtelsbauer 29	26	27	28	29	30
31						

...or a calendar of their birthdays and anniversaries

Figure I-4. Family Group Sheet, List of Individuals, and Calendar

CREATE YOUR OWN STYLE

Family Tree Maker places customized information about each individual in a box whose design you control. Then Family Tree Maker precisely draws lines between the boxes to show your family relationships. You can print as many different family trees as you like from the family information you enter just once.

The results are beautiful. And with a typical printer you have your tree in minutes.



Extend the research on your family to include military service, occupation — even personal characteristics like height, weight, and personality. Or, track high blood pressure, heart problems, and other diseases that might be genetically related. Family Tree Maker can store this information, then print it in your trees.

Perhaps the most exciting information Family Tree Maker can store is free-form notes about a person. You can enter up to 5 printed pages about each individual. It's nice to know the names and dates, but stories, habits, jokes, and favorite recipes really give you an idea of what your relatives were like in real life. Whether or not you print this information, it all remains a permanent part of your Family Tree Maker historic record.

To help you do family research, Family Tree Maker can print customized tabular reports on any or all of the individuals in your family. It can print a Family Group Sheet which shows all the information recorded about a husband, a wife, and their children. It can print empty trees for you to fill out manually when you don't have your computer handy. And it can even print calendars of birthdays and anniversaries so you'll always know when to call or send cards to family members.

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Family Tree Maker requires a minimum of 512Kb of RAM (memory) and either a hard disk **or** a high density diskette (either 5.25" or 3.5") **or** two low density 3.5" diskettes. If your system has 640Kb of RAM, then you will be able to enter approximately 2400 names into each card file. Having more than 640Kb of RAM does not affect this limit.

If you want to see how much RAM is available to Family Tree Maker, press  +  from any Family Card to display the Card File Status screen. It will display total RAM on your computer system and the amount of RAM available to Family Tree Maker.

WHERE TO FIND WHAT YOU NEED TO KNOW

This manual is your main source of information about Family Tree Maker. Please read it while you use the program.

First, read Chapter 1, "Installation and Program Setup," to learn how to set up Family Tree Maker on your computer. (The rest of this manual assumes you've read that chapter and set up the program correctly.)

Chapter 2, "Tutorial," shows you how easy it is to use Family Tree Maker by leading you step-by-step through the experience of creating a family tree.

Chapter 3, "Entering Information," tells you how to enter all the information that you need in order to have Family Tree Maker create complete family trees. It ends with a description of the commands on the Command Menu.

Chapter 4, "Printing Trees," takes you through the simple process of customizing the six different kinds of trees so that they print exactly the way you want them to.

Chapter 5, "Other Printing," shows you how to print summaries of family information in a list format. It also shows you how to print custom reports of your family information. Finally, it shows how to print a calendar of birthdays and anniversaries, and how to print large quantities of family information at once, in batch print jobs.

Chapter 6, "The Data Exchange Utility," provides all the information you need to use this handy utility program. The Data Exchange Utility (DEU) is a separate program, included in this package, which converts Family Tree Maker card files to GEDCOM or ASCII format. It also converts GEDCOM files to Family Tree Maker card files.

Appendix A, "Researching Families," gives lots of tips, sources, and ideas for learning more about your family history. It also includes a bibliography of helpful publications.

Appendix B, "LDS Ordinance Information," tells you how and where to enter LDS ordinance data and how to print a Family Group Sheet with this information.

Appendix C, "Printers and Plotters," describes special settings you might need to set to make your printer or plotter work correctly with Family Tree Maker.

Appendix D, "Common Questions and Problems," covers the most common questions and problems you may have while using Family Tree Maker.

Appendix E, "How to Save Selected Descendants and Join Card Files," describes special features that you can use to save a part of your tree to a different card file or combine two card files into one.

Appendix F, "Using a Mouse," explains how to use a mouse with Family Tree Maker.

Appendix G, "Fixing Files With Duplicates Of The Same Person," describes how you can combine duplicate entries of the same person that you may have created if you were using version 1.0 or 1.01 of Family Tree Maker.

Appendix H, "Time-Saving Tips," gives a handy list of short-cuts and time-savers that you can use in Family Tree Maker.


Appendix I, "Importing Files from Roots III," explains how you can import Roots III files into Family Tree Maker, converting them into Family Tree Maker card files that you can then use just like any other Family Tree Maker file.

Appendix J, "Preserving Photographs," gives useful tips and techniques for handling and storing photographs.

Appendix K, "Accessories," tells you about several accessories you can use with Family Tree Maker that are available from Banner Blue.

The Picture Index has pictures of family trees with words describing the elements of a tree. Look there if you know what you want, but don't know what to call it.

The Index is a list of every important concept and feature that this manual talks about, with page numbers pointing you to the information. Look there to find out about something specific.

Family Tree Maker also has a special help feature which is available when you are running the program. Press  at any time to get on-screen help for what you are doing.

CUSTOMER REGISTRATION

Please fill out and return the Registration Card now! We offer registered users the following special benefits:

- Free telephone assistance on using Family Tree Maker.
- The Banner Blue Product Upgrade Plan.
- Information on Family Tree Maker accessory programs and services.

CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

If you have any problems using Family Tree Maker, take these steps in the order listed:

1. Check the Index in this manual for a listing of the subject you need help on.
2. Review Appendix D, "Common Questions and Problems."
3. Call Banner Blue Technical Support.

The hours are:

Monday through Friday, 8:00 AM to 5:00 PM, Pacific time.

Our number is:

510-794-6850 (ask for Technical Support)

We can help you best if you call while you're at your computer.

The Technical Support phone number is for questions dealing specifically with using Family Tree Maker. The person you speak to will not have information on conducting genealogical research. For help in this area, consult Appendix A of this manual or your local library, historical society, or genealogical society.

Note: You are automatically entitled to free assistance when you send in your Registration Card.

PRODUCT UPGRADE PLAN

Periodically we make new versions of our software available to registered owners at substantial discounts. If you return your registration card, we'll notify you about new versions as they become available.

ABOUT MAILING LISTS

We currently don't sell our registration list to other companies, and have no intention to do so. You can be assured that your name will be kept confidential and used only by Banner Blue.

WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Banner Blue is committed to continually improving its products. We encourage you to write us and share your ideas on how we can improve Family Tree Maker. Our address is:

Banner Blue
Technical Support
P.O. Box 7865
Fremont, CA 94537

510-794-6850 Phone
510-795-4488 Fax

Chapter 1

PROGRAM SETUP



Pictured here is Catherine (Skyles) Fineran—Banner Blue's Technical Support Manager—at age 7. Also pictured are her mother Nedra (Pardee), younger brother William (age 5), and older brother Gregory (age 9). Her father, Robert Skyles, took this picture in 1966 during one of their annual backpacking trips.



INSTALLATION AND PROGRAM SETUP


This chapter tells you how to set up and start Family Tree Maker on your computer and how to make it work correctly with your printer. Any time you'll have to type something into your computer, the letters are shown in **bold like this**.

INSTALLING AND STARTING FAMILY TREE MAKER ON A HARD DISK SYSTEM

Banner Blue recommends that you install Family Tree Maker in its own subdirectory on your hard disk. When you keep Family Tree Maker in its own subdirectory, you avoid mixing Family Tree Maker's card files with files produced by other programs.

The following process will also install the Data Exchange Utility program onto your hard disk in the same subdirectory as Family Tree Maker. See Chapter 6 for more information about this handy utility.


Follow these steps to install Family Tree Maker from drive A to your hard disk:

1. Place a write protect tab on the original Family Tree Maker diskette(s). On 3.5" diskettes, push the black tab up.
2. Insert the Family Tree Maker diskette 1 in drive A.
3. From the DOS prompt for your hard disk (normally C:\>), type **A: INSTALL** and press .

Note: If you are installing from another floppy drive, type the following:

X: INSTALL

where **X** is the floppy drive that contains the Family Tree Maker diskette. For example, if you are installing from the B drive, type **B: INSTALL**

A message appears on the screen to tell you that installation is taking place. Just follow the instructions on the screen. You will be prompted to insert a second diskette if necessary. When it asks which drives to install to and from, just press  to accept the choices it gives you.

Note: If this is the first time you have installed Family Tree Maker on your hard disk, the installation process will create a new subdirectory called "FTM" on your hard disk and the program will be installed there. We strongly recommend that you don't change this unless you are very comfortable using DOS commands. The

following start-up directions will tell you exactly how to start the program from this subdirectory.

When you have completed the installation process, store the original Family Tree Maker diskette(s) in a safe place.

Follow these steps to start Family Tree Maker from your hard disk:

1. Make sure the DOS prompt for your hard disk (normally C:\>) is on your screen.
2. If you installed Family Tree Maker into a subdirectory, make this subdirectory the current directory. For example, if Family Tree Maker is installed in a subdirectory called "C:\FTM," you would type `cd \ftm` at the C:\> prompt and press .
3. Type `FTM` and press . After several seconds you see the Family Tree Maker title screen (see Figure 1-1).



Figure 1-1. Family Tree Maker title screen

If this is the first time you have used Family Tree Maker, proceed to the section "Program Setup," on page 19.

4. If you have previously completed **Program Setup**, press . Family Tree Maker asks if you would like to start a new card file or if you would like to work on a card file that you have previously saved to disk.

For directions on starting the Data Exchange Utility, see Chapter 6.

INSTALLING AND STARTING FAMILY TREE MAKER ON SYSTEMS WITHOUT A HARD DISK

Note: You cannot run Family Tree Maker from the original Family Tree Maker diskette(s). You must install it first.

You can install Family Tree Maker on either 3.5" (high density or low density) or 5.25" (high density only) diskettes. **This version of Family Tree Maker WILL NOT WORK on systems with only one or two low density 5.25" diskette drives.** If you attempt to install the program onto low density 5.25" diskettes, the program will not function correctly.


You will need 1 or 2 blank formatted diskettes. See your DOS manual for help if you don't know how to format diskettes. The following table tells you exactly how many blank, formatted diskettes you will need for your system:

If you are installing TO	You will need
3.5" low density (720 Kb)	2 diskettes
3.5" high density (1.44 Mb)	1 diskette
5.25" high density (1.2 Mb)	1 diskette

Figure 3-2. How many diskettes to use

Note: The following process will also install the Data Exchange Utility program onto a diskette. See Chapter 6 for more information about this handy utility.

Proceed with the following steps to install Family Tree Maker on a two-diskette drive system.

1. Place a write protect tab on the original Family Tree Maker diskette(s). On 3.5" diskettes, push the black tab up.
2. Insert the Family Tree Maker diskette 1 in drive A.
3. Insert a blank, formatted diskette in drive B.
4. From the DOS A:\> prompt, type **INSTALL** and press . If you are installing from another floppy drive, type the following:

X : INSTALL

where **X** is the floppy drive that contains the Family Tree Maker diskette. For example, if you are installing from the B drive, type **B : INSTALL**


A message appears on the screen to tell you that the installation is taking place. Just follow the instructions on the screen. You will be prompted to insert other diskettes

when necessary. When it asks which drives to install to and from, confirm that the correct drives are listed.


When you have completed the installation process, store the original Family Tree Maker diskette(s) in a safe place.

To start Family Tree Maker on a system without a hard disk, follow these steps:

Note: Before starting Family Tree Maker, be sure you have a blank, formatted diskette available for saving card files. While using Family Tree Maker, never take the program diskette out of your floppy drive unless instructed to do so.

1. Make sure your installed copy of Family Tree Maker is NOT write protected. During **Program Setup**, Family Tree Maker will need to write information to your installed copy of the program diskette.
2. Insert your installed copy of Family Tree Maker in the default drive — usually drive A. Place the blank, formatted diskette for saving card files in the second drive — usually drive B.
3. At the default DOS prompt (usually A:\>), type **FTM** and press . After several seconds you see the Family Tree Maker title screen.

If this is the first time you have used Family Tree Maker, proceed to the section “Program Setup” on page 19.

4. If you have previously completed **Program Setup**, press . Family Tree Maker asks if you would like to start a new card file or if you would like to work on a card file that you have previously saved to disk.

For directions on starting the Data Exchange Utility, see Chapter 6.

PROGRAM SETUP

The first time you run Family Tree Maker it asks you questions about your printer and computer. This group of questions is called **Program Setup**. You only answer these questions once. Family Tree Maker remembers this information the next time you use it. If you make a mistake or need to change something later, you can go back into **Program Setup** by choosing **F – File**, then **P – Change program setup** from the Command Menu.

This section assumes you have already installed and started Family Tree Maker as described in earlier sections. If this is not the case, go back to the section for installing and starting the program on your computer.

Press **F10** from the title screen. You will see the first screen of Program Setup.

Note: As you set up the program, you can always press **Esc** to go back one step at a time and change any of your answers. Press **F10** or **Enter** to move forward.

Press **F10** again and Family Tree Maker will display “**Installing the Printer – Step 1 of 3.**”

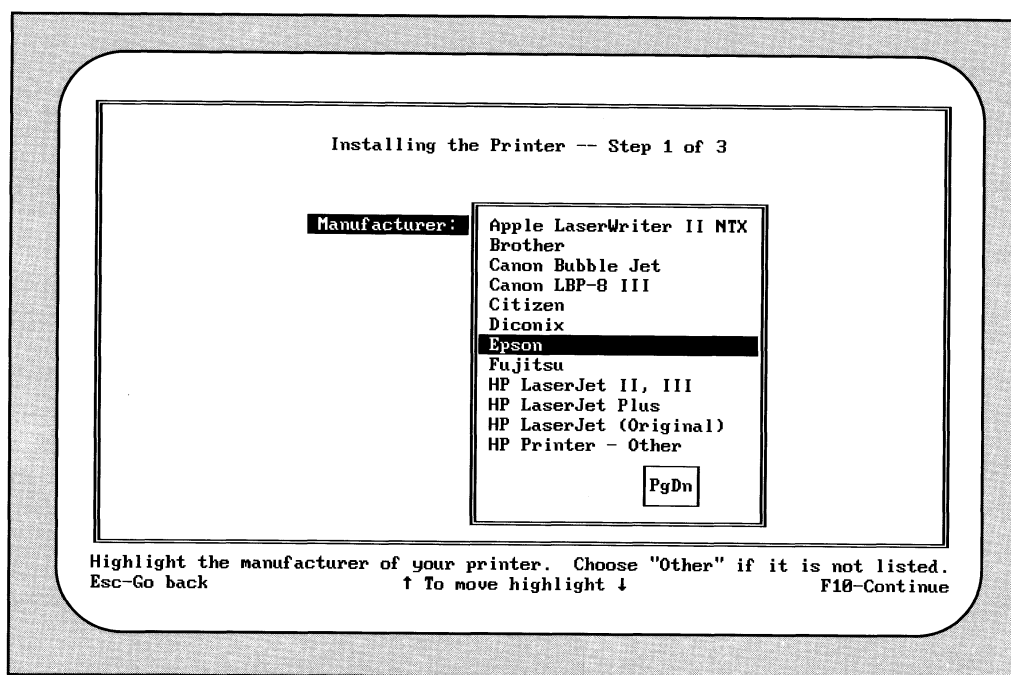





Figure 1-3. Installing the Printer – Step 1 of 3

Installing the Printer – Step 1 of 3

Step 1 is to select your printer's manufacturer. To make a selection, use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .




Not all manufacturers are listed. However, many printers emulate (behave like) ones that are listed. For example, a printer may emulate an Epson FX printer or an IBM Proprinter (just to name two).

If your printer manufacturer is not listed, but your printer emulates one that is, select that manufacturer. You can usually find this information in your printer manual.

In the unlikely event that your printer is not listed and does not emulate a printer that is listed, select **Other**. For more information, see “When You're Not Sure What Printer Setting to Use,” on page 241.

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Installing the Printer – Step 2 of 3.**”

Installing the Printer – Step 2 of 3

Step 2 is to select your printer's model. To make a selection, use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .

Not all models are listed. If your printer is made by the manufacturer you have chosen, but the model is not listed, select the closest description. For example, if your printer is an Epson LQ 1010, you will not see the specific model number, but there is a choice called **LQ Series**. Since your model number has LQ in it, you should choose this one.

Note: Sometimes there will be more than one choice that will work correctly with your printer. Usually these other choices are for special purposes. For example, there is a choice called **LQ Tiny Font** under the manufacturer **Epson**. This selection can be used by any Epson LQ series printer. It will cause the print to be much smaller (more characters per inch) than with the **LQ Series** setting.




Another choice you may have is called a “draft” setting. An example is the choice called **EX, FX, JX, LX Series – Draft** under the manufacturer **Epson**. This setting prints much more quickly than the other Epson settings, but the output is much less attractive. See “Draft Printing” on page 203 for more details.

After you have made your selection, you will sometimes see a special window containing information that is important for the choice you made. Please read this information carefully. It will often explain other steps you must take to make your printer work correctly with Family Tree Maker.

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Installing the Printer – Step 3 of 3.**”

Installing the Printer – Step 3 of 3

Your printer attaches to your computer via a cable connected to an outlet on the back of your computer. This outlet is called a “port.” In this step you tell Family Tree Maker which port the cable is connected to.

Use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .

If you don't know which connection to use, try **LPT1**. LPT1 is the most commonly used port for printers.




If you are using a plotter (or a serial printer), try **COM1**. COM1 is the most commonly used port for plotters.

If you select a serial port (COM1, COM2, COM3, or COM4), Family Tree Maker asks additional questions under Step 3.

For Serial Ports Only

The next four choices will only come up if you have selected one of the serial ports. **Baud rate**, **Parity**, **Data bits**, and **Stop bits** are communication parameters that help the computer “talk” to the plotter (or serial printer).

These four settings must match the settings your plotter or printer uses. The preset values (9600, None, Eight, and One) are common ones. Check your plotter or printer to make sure these preset values match the ones selected there.

As with previous choices, use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .

Note: If you have an HP 7470A, 7475A, or ColorPro plotter, Family Tree Maker displays an image of the plotter's switch block. The switches on the plotter should match the image on the screen.

Figure 1-4. For serial ports only

After you have completed making your selections here, Family Tree Maker will display “**Defining the Page – Step 1 of 2.**”

Defining the Page – Step 1 of 2

Step 1 is to select the size of paper that is currently in your printer.

Use or until your choice is highlighted, then press .

Note: If you are using a large format HP plotter (models 7580B, 7585B, 7586B, DraftPro, or DraftMaster) you must use D-size paper or larger.

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Defining the Page – Step 2 of 2.**”

Defining the Page – Step 2 of 2

Step 2 is to tell Family Tree Maker whether or not you are using continuous forms. If you select **No**, it will pause between printing each page to allow you to insert a new sheet of paper in your printer. If you select **Yes**, it will print from one page to the next without pausing.

If you are using continuous form paper (each sheet of paper connects to the next one), select **Yes**.

Or, if your printer has a tray that automatically loads the next sheet of paper (like most laser printers), select **Yes**.

If you must manually insert single sheets of paper into your printer or plotter, select **No**.

Use or until your choice is highlighted, then press .

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Preferences – Step 1 of 5.**”

Preferences – Step 1 of 5

Step 1 is to tell Family Tree Maker the location to use for saving and retrieving the files you create. You enter this location into the “**Save files to**” field.

As you enter family information into Family Tree Maker, it creates a card file that you then save in a location on a diskette or hard disk (see page 92 for more information on saving files).

For a hard disk system: you probably save your card files to the hard disk in the same place as the program. If this is the case, leave this line blank. If you want to save your card files to a different location on your hard disk, specify the complete drive and path on this line. Never type the card file name here.

For a two-diskette system: typically you use your installed copy of the program diskette in drive A and store your card files on a diskette in drive B. If this is the case, type **B:** then press . Never type the card file name here.

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Preferences – Step 2 of 5.**”

Preferences – Step 2 of 5




Step 2 is to select the palette of colors for your computer display. On some computer displays, all palettes look the same. If this is the case for your computer, Family Tree Maker tells you so.

Use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .


Family Tree Maker now displays “**Preferences – Step 3 of 5.**”

Preferences – Step 3 of 5

Step 3 is to select whether you want to use the LDS (Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints) format for your Family Group Sheets (see page 239 for more information on LDS Ordinance Information). Unless you intend to use the Family Group Sheets to submit names for temple ordinance work, you should choose **No**.




Use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .


Family Tree Maker now displays “**Preferences – Step 4 of 5.**”

Note to Users Without a Mouse: The following two options are for setting up a mouse. If you aren't using a mouse, press  twice and skip ahead to “Where To Go From Here,” on page 24.

Preferences – Step 4 of 5

Step 4 is to select the primary mouse button, or the mouse button you will use to perform most mouse functions. If you are right-handed, you will probably want to use the left mouse button. Select **Left**. If you are left-handed, use the right mouse button. Select **Right**.

Use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .

The secondary mouse button, or the button you did not select above, will display the Command Menu — no matter what your mouse cursor is pointing at. Use it just like you would use .

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Preferences – Step 5 of 5.**”

Preferences – Step 5 of 5

Step 5 is to select how quickly or slowly you want your mouse cursor to move. You can choose from the following options:

Slow2	—	your mouse cursor will move very slowly.
Slow1	—	your mouse cursor will move slowly.
Normal	—	your mouse cursor will move at an average speed.
Fast1	—	your mouse cursor will move quickly.
Fast2	—	your mouse cursor will move very quickly.

Use  or  until your choice is highlighted, then press .


Note: See Appendix F for instructions on using your mouse with Family Tree Maker.




Family Tree Maker now displays “**Final Setup**” to tell you that setup is complete. Press  when you’re ready to continue.

WHERE TO GO FROM HERE

When you have completed the setup process, your choices are automatically saved. The Program Setup screens do not appear the next time you use the program.

To change any of the choices you have made, from the Command Menu select **F – File**, then **P – Change program setup** (see page 94 for information on using the Command Menu).

You are now ready to work on your family tree. Press  to display the Family Card.

Note: If you have asked Family Tree Maker to save card files to one of the diskette drives on your computer, you will need to have a blank formatted diskette ready before you enter any family information. If you do not have one available, quit Family Tree Maker now and format a blank diskette. To quit Family Tree Maker, press , press , then press  twice.

The next time you start Family Tree Maker, the first screen you will see is the title screen. On the second screen, Family Tree Maker asks if you would like to start a new card file or if you would like to work on a card file that you have previously saved to disk.

A Brief Note About Saving Your Information

When you enter information into Family Tree Maker, you will be filling out electronic “cards” about each person and family. When you save these cards on your diskette or hard disk, you will save them in what’s called a “card file.” You will have many cards for different people and families, but you should only have **one** card file. The only exceptions are:

- If you’re starting a new card file for someone who’s completely unrelated to you, such as your neighbor, *or*
- If you have more than 2400 names to enter.

A card file is like a box of recipe cards. You write your recipes on 3 x 5" cards and keep them all together in a single box so you can find them easily. In the same way, you should keep all your family cards together in a single card file so that you can find your family members easily. Everyone in your family, whether they’re related by blood or by marriage, whether they’re closely related or very distantly related, should be stored together in one card file.

To use only one card file, follow these guidelines:

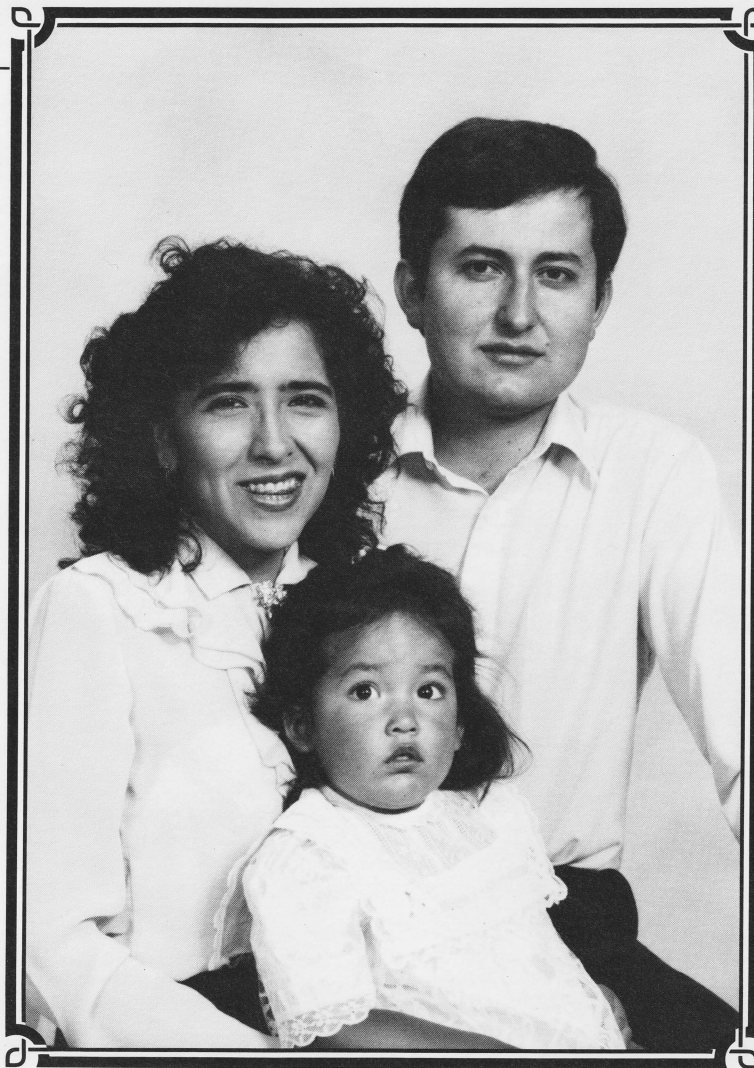
1. When you first start Family Tree Maker, a message appears asking, “Do you want to create a new card file or get an existing one?”

Always choose “Get existing.” Even if you’re adding new names, think of this process as adding new recipes to your existing file. The only time you won’t choose “Get existing” is the very first time you start Family Tree Maker. Every time after this first time, choose “Get existing.”

2. When you save your card file, do not give it a different name. Always choose the name that’s highlighted — the same name you used in “Get existing.”

Chapter 2

TUTORIAL



Hugo Paz, one of Family Tree Maker's programmers, is pictured here with his family. Hugo, his wife Elizabeth, and his daughter Elizabeth Christine had this picture taken in August 1989.



TUTORIAL

This tutorial shows you how easy it is to use Family Tree Maker by leading you step-by-step through the experience of creating a family tree. It uses as its example the ancestry of Abraham Lincoln, 16th president of the United States of America.

First you will enter information about Abraham Lincoln's family that goes back through his parents and grandparents. Then you'll enter a brief story about Abraham using free-form text. Finally, you'll print an ancestor tree, one of the six types of trees you can create with Family Tree Maker. This should take about an hour, so feel free to take a break between sections.

You will learn about many of Family Tree Maker's most useful commands and options as you go. You'll find out about even more features when you read the other chapters in this manual.

BEFORE YOU START

This chapter assumes a few things:

- You know how to use a typewriter or computer keyboard. (Hunt-and-peck typing is fine!)
- You've already read Chapter 1, "Program Setup."
- Family Tree Maker is set up and installed on your computer.
- The program has been started.

If you haven't done these things, go back and follow the instructions in Chapter 1. When you've done that, you'll be ready to begin the tutorial.

GETTING STARTED

You should see the Family Tree Maker title screen in front of you now. (If you have just completed Program Setup without quitting the program, you are already at an empty family card and you should skip the following two steps.)

- Press **F10** or any other key to start.
- Choose "Create new."

The Family Card appears (see Figure 2-1 on page 30).

The Family Card is made up of a series of **labels** and **fields**. A field is a place for you to type information. A label tells the purpose of a field. Tabs at the top of the card (**Family Card 2**, **Family Card 3**, and **F2 – Index of names**) name other cards that you'll read about soon. The line at the bottom of the screen (**F9 – Menu**, **PgDn – Individual cards**, and so on) names keys you can press to make certain things happen. You'll learn what these keys do as we go along.

Family Card 1	Family Card 2	Family Card 3	F2 - Index of names
Husband: _____ Date born: _____ in _____ died: _____ in _____			
Wife: _____ Date born: _____ in _____ died: _____ in _____			
Marriage date: _____		Status: _	
Marriage location: _____			
	Children	[F6] - Family card of child	Sex
1	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	_____	_____
F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help			

Figure 2-1. An empty Family Card

CREATING A NEW FAMILY TREE

You want to create a brand new family tree, so all the fields on the current Family Card should be empty. If the fields aren't all empty, someone might have been working on a family tree before you started this session.

Even if the fields are all blank, you should do the following steps just to learn how to create a new family tree using Command Menu choices. When you create a new family tree, you will see a Family Card with blank fields.

Note: Since computer keyboards are not all the same, we can't tell you exactly where to look for the keys you will have to press. But we'll try to give you a general idea where you might find them as we go along.

To create a new family tree:

1. Press **[F9]** to bring up the Command Menu (see Figure 2-2).

[F9] is one of the keys that runs along the left side or across the top of your keyboard.

The Command Menu appears. The Command Menu is a list of commands that you use to tell Family Tree Maker what you want to do.

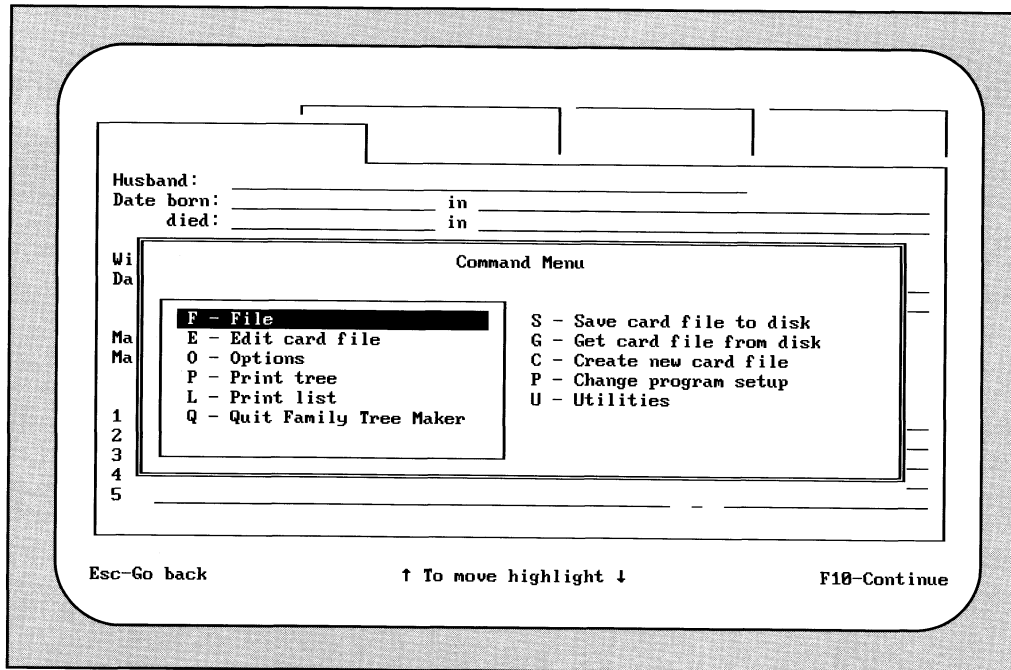


Figure 2-2. Command Menu with File highlighted

The item **F - File** is highlighted — shown in a bright rectangular bar on most computer screens, or in a different shade or color on others. To the right is a **submenu** of file-related commands.

If you see a screen other than the one in Figure 2-2, you probably pressed the wrong key. To go back to the Family Card and try again, press **Esc** (usually located at the top-left or top-right area of the keyboard), then press **F10**.

2. Press **↓** to see what happens.

As you can see, the highlight bar moves over **E - Edit card file**, and the submenu shows editing commands.

You can press **↑** and **↓** to move the highlight over any command in the menu. (Try it!)

To make a **selection** from a menu — to make Family Tree Maker do one of the things listed in the menu — you move the highlight over your choice and press **Enter**. Or, you can simply type the first letter of the command. (That's faster.)

3. Press **F** to select **F - File**.

The highlight moves to the first choice in the submenu.

4. Press **C** to select **C - Create new card file**.

A **card file** is the file in which you store all the information about your family, including all your relatives. Family Tree Maker takes all the information from this file to create your family trees.

You end up back at the Family Card, with all the fields empty. You are now ready to start entering information for the Lincoln family.

PART I: ENTERING FAMILY INFORMATION

In this section you'll be entering information about several generations of the Lincoln family. Follow all the steps exactly as outlined here; within an hour or so, you'll be printing your first family tree!

Filling Out The Family Card

On this Family Card you'll enter some facts about Abraham Lincoln's immediate family (his "nuclear" family, including himself, his wife, and his children), starting with Abraham Lincoln himself.

Figure 2-3 shows what you will end up with. The steps that follow tell you how to get your computer screen to look like the one in the figure.




Abraham & Mary		F4 - Parents of Mary	F5 - Parents of Abraham	F2 - Index of names
Husband: Abraham Lincoln _____ Date born: February 12, 1809 in Hardin County, Kentucky _____ died: April 15, 1865 in Washington, District of Columbia _____				
Wife: Mary Ann Todd _____ Date born: December 13, 1818 in Lexington, Kentucky _____ died: July 16, 1882 in Springfield, Illinois _____				
Marriage date: November 4, 1842 _____ Status: M Marriage location: Springfield, Illinois _____				
Children [F6] - Family card of child		Sex	Birth dates	
1	Robert Todd Lincoln _____	M	November 8, 1843 _____	
2	Edward Baker Lincoln _____	M	March 10, 1846 _____	
3	William Wallace Lincoln _____	M	December 21, 1850 _____	
4	Thomas "Tad" Lincoln _____	M	April 4, 1853 _____	
5	_____	-	_____	




F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help



Figure 2-3. Abraham Lincoln's Family Card, completely filled out

The cursor is already at the start of the “Husband” field. (The cursor is the blinking solid underbar. It marks where the next character that you type will appear.) The letters that you should type are shown in **bold letters like this**.




1. Type **Abraham Lincoln** into the “Husband” field.

If you make a mistake, use  to move the cursor back to the left, then type over your error. You can also use Backspace  (it will delete characters as it moves the cursor to the left). If you need to move the cursor back to the right, press .

The  and  arrow keys are usually on the right side of the keyboard; sometimes they’re part of the numeric keypad (the rectangular arrangement of number keys — not the ones across the top of your keyboard). If you press the arrow keys but you get numbers on the screen, press  to put the numeric keypad back into cursor-moving mode.

2. Press  or Tab  and watch the top of the screen.


The Tab  key is usually on the upper left corner of the keyboard next to  or .

If you notice a mistake in the “Husband” field after you have moved the cursor out of it, press  +Tab  to back up; then use  to move to your mistake.

As soon as you have provided the husband’s name, Family Tree Maker creates a card for his parents. You will enter information on that card later in this tutorial.

The cursor should now be in the “Date born” field.

3. Type **Feb 12 1809**

4. Press  and watch what happens.

When you leave a date field, Family Tree Maker automatically converts what you type to a standard date format. You can type the date almost any way that you like; Family Tree Maker can usually figure out what you mean. If it can’t, it puts a message on the screen to let you know.

Your cursor should be in the beginning of the field labeled “in.”

5. Type the place where Lincoln was born — **Hardin County, Kentucky**
6. Fill out the next two fields with this information: **15 Apr 1865** for the date of his death, and **Washington, District of Columbia** for the location.

Don’t be afraid of making mistakes. This is just a tutorial, nobody’s keeping score, and you can’t hurt the computer by typing something wrong.

-
-
7. Type the following information for Lincoln's wife into the proper fields (refer to Figure 2-3 on Page 32 if you need help):

Mary Ann Todd

born **Dec 13, 1818** in **Lexington, Kentucky**
died **July 16, 1882** in **Springfield, Illinois**

You fill in the information for a wife the same way you do for a husband, being especially careful to use the wife's maiden name (her last name before she was married).

Remember to press to move on when you've filled in the information for a particular field — don't try to type all that information into the same field! There are five fields worth of information here — "Wife," "Date born," "in" (for birth location), "died," and "in" (for death location).

As with Abraham, Family Tree Maker automatically creates a Family Card for Mary's parents, and reformats dates as you exit the date fields.

8. The Lincolns were wed on **November 4, 1842** — so type that into the "Marriage date" field.

As usual, press to move to the next field.

9. It turns out that the **default** is **M**, for Married; so you can press to skip over this field. A default is what's already in a field when you come to it. Family Tree Maker puts as many defaults in place as it can to make your work quicker and easier.

If they had been divorced, you'd type a **D** for "Divorced." Family Tree Maker also has status codes for annulments and separations, and for relationships in which the partners are unmarried. Since the Lincolns don't fall into any of these categories, move on to the next step.

10. Type **Springfield, Illinois** into the "Marriage location" field; then press to move on.

11. In the field where the cursor now lies (line 1 under "Children"), type **Robert Todd Lincoln** and press .

You enter information in the "Children" fields just like you entered the rest.

12. As soon as the cursor moves to the "Sex" field, an "F" appears: Type **M** then press to go on to the "Birth dates" field.

"F" for female is the default value for the "Sex" field.

13. Type **8 Nov 1843** into the "Birth dates" field and press .

Again, Family Tree Maker converts the date you type into a standard date format.

14. Type the following information for the Lincolns' other three sons:

Edward Baker Lincoln	sex M	born	March 10, 1846
William Wallace Lincoln	sex M	born	Dec 21, 1850
Thomas "Tad" Lincoln	sex M	born	April 4, 1853

The name "Tad" appears in quotes because it's a nickname, as opposed to a given name.









Be sure to enter all the information, including their full names (last name included).

As you can see, the information for the children isn't as extensive as the information for the parents — at least, not on this card. Later in this tutorial, you'll see that each child has its own Family Card, where he or she appears as a (potential) husband or wife, partner or friend.

Note: You don't have to enter children in their order of birth as shown here — Family Tree Maker has a special command that will do this for you. You'll find out about the **Arrange children by birth** command in the next chapter.

Saving Information


Congratulations! You've just finished filling out your first Family Card. To make sure all the information is correct, compare your Family Card to Figure 2-3 on page 32.

If any of the information is different, go back and change it. Use , Tab ,  + Tab ,  and  to move between fields; use  and  to move around within a field.



If you're comfortable with what we've covered so far, you may want to use other editing keys as well. See Figure 3-2 on page 57 in Chapter 3, "Entering Information," for a complete list of editing and cursor-moving keys.

Now it's time to save the information onto your disk in a **card file** — the file in which you save all the Family and Individual Cards you've filled in. It is not necessary to save after each Family Card is completed, but we'll do it now just to show you how easy it is.

To save the information onto the disk in a card file:

1. Press  to bring up the Command Menu.

The Command Menu appears (refer back to Figure 2-2 on page 31).

2. Press  to select **F – File** and to move the highlight to the top of the File submenu.
3. Press  to select **S – Save card file to disk**.

The Save Card File to Disk **window** appears with the cursor at the start of the "Card file name" field (see Figure 2-4 on page 36). A window is a boxed area on the screen that is used for a special purpose, such as saving card files.

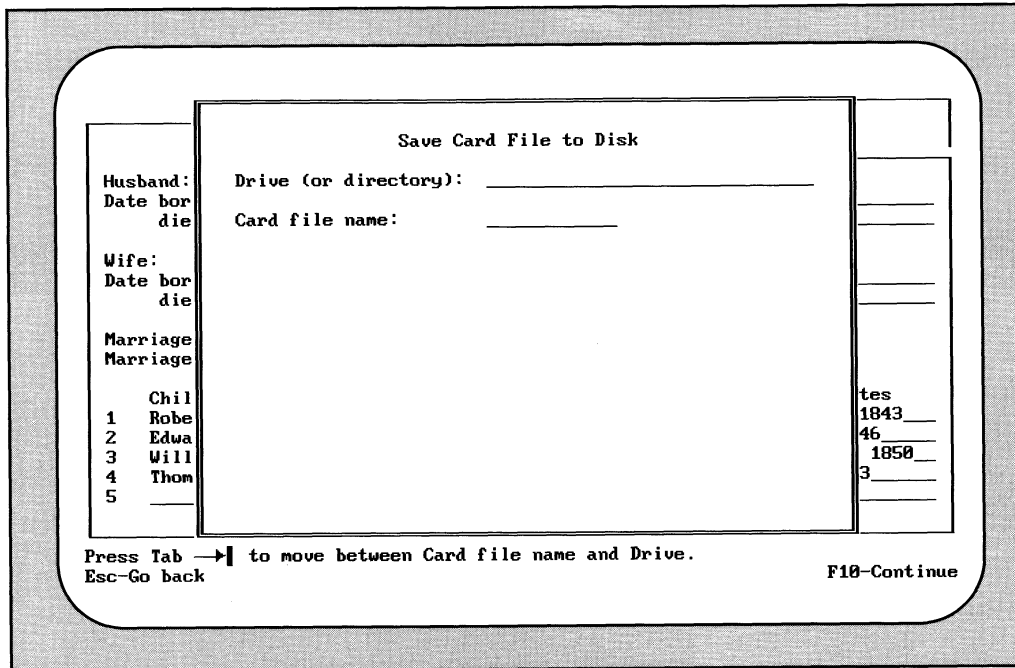


Figure 2-4. Save Card File to Disk window

4. Type **Lincoln** and press

The disk whirs a bit, and your information is now saved onto disk under the name “LINCOLN.FTM.” (The letters “.FTM” identify the disk file “LINCOLN” as being part of Family Tree Maker.)

This is just the first of many Family Cards that will be saved in the LINCOLN.FTM card file. Later in this tutorial we’ll save more cards in this same card file.

In the future, you can retrieve this information by choosing **G – Get card file from disk** from the File submenu.

You end up back on the Family Card.

Filling Out Other Family Cards

Look at the top of the screen — the tabs now have different information in them. The tab for the **current** Family Card (that is, the one you see in front of you now) says “**Abraham & Mary,**” and the old “**Family Card 2**” and “**Family Card 3**” tabs now say “**F4 – Parents of Mary**” and “**F5 – Parents of Abraham.**”

So the current Family Card is actually the Abraham & Mary Family Card. Each card holds two generations — a husband and wife (after whom the card is named), and their children. To have a real family tree, you need to fill out several Family Cards, going backward or forward in time.

For the purposes of this tutorial, you'll go backward in time and fill out the Family Cards for Abraham Lincoln's parents and grandparents. (To go forward in time, you'd fill out a Family Card for one of his children.) In your own card file you'll do both.

Lincoln's Parents' Family Card

Fill out the Family Card for Lincoln's parents:

1. Press **F5** to go to Lincoln's parents' Family Card.

The Family Card titled "Parents of Abraham" comes up. (That title appears on the tab at the upper-left corner of the screen.)

This Family Card is already partially filled out — one of the lines in the "Children" section has Abraham Lincoln's information already on it. (Family Tree Maker copied the information from the "Abraham & Mary" Family Card.)

2. Fill out information for Thomas Lincoln ("Husband"), Nancy Hanks ("Wife"), and the "Marriage" sections using the following information:

Thomas Lincoln
 born Jan 6 1778 in Rockingham County, Virginia

Nancy Hanks
 born Feb 5 1784 in Campbell County, Virginia
 died Oct 5 1818 in Spencer County, Indiana
 Married 12 June 1806

The screenshot shows a software interface for a family card. At the top, there are four tabs: "Thomas & Nancy", "F4 - Parents of Nancy", "F5 - Parents of Thomas", and "F2 - Index of names". The "Thomas & Nancy" tab is selected. The card contains the following information:

Husband: Thomas Lincoln
 Date born: January 6, 1778 in Rockingham County, Virginia
 died: _____ in _____


Wife: Nancy Hanks
 Date born: February 5, 1784 in Campbell County, Virginia
 died: October 5, 1818 in Spencer County, Indiana

Marriage date: June 12, 1806 **Status:** M
Marriage location: _____

Children [F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1 Abraham Lincoln	M	February 12, 1809
2 _____	-	_____
3 _____	-	_____
4 _____	-	_____
5 _____	-	_____

At the bottom of the window, there is a menu bar with the following options: F9-Menu, PgDn-Individ'l cards, F3-Other spouses, F7-Find individ'l, F1-Help.

Figure 2-5. Filled-out card for Thomas and Nancy


You don't have the information for the death of Thomas Lincoln, or for the location of Thomas and Nancy's wedding, so you could leave those fields blank or type "Unknown" in them. For now, leave them blank and skip over them by pressing . (For this tutorial, you don't need to enter any more information about their children either.) They weren't divorced, so you can leave the "Status" field value that's there. If you want, check what you've typed against Figure 2-5 on page 37.

You need to go back one more generation and fill out two more Family Cards — one card for the President's paternal grandparents (the parents of his father, Thomas), and one card for his maternal grandparents (the parents of his mother, Nancy).

Because this is just a tutorial, you won't have to enter a lot of information; but you'll see some things you haven't seen yet.

Lincoln's Paternal Grandparents' Family Card

In this section you'll type brief information about Abraham Lincoln's paternal grandparents, and you'll learn how to add information if either the husband or wife has had additional marriages:


1. Press  to go to Thomas' parents' Family Card.

The Family Card titled "Parents of Thomas" comes up.

2. Enter the information below about Lincoln's grandparents into the appropriate fields.

Lincoln's paternal grandfather was also named **Abraham Lincoln**, and was also born in **Kentucky**. His paternal grandmother was **Bathsheba Herring**. (That's all the available information; leave blank the fields for which you have no information. Ordinarily, however, when you don't know the date of a person's death, you should enter "Unknown" in the date of death field.)

Check what you've typed against Figure 2-6 to make sure it's accurate. If necessary, go back and make changes.

3. Press  to add information about Grandfather Abraham's other wife.

It turns out that Grandfather Abraham was married before. You can enter up to 99 spouses for each individual in Family Tree Maker. The selection window in Figure 2-7 appears.

4. Press  to select **H – Create another spouse** for Abraham.

(The "H" is for "Husband.") The cursor appears in the "Wife" field of a new Family Card.

5. Type in the name of Abraham's first wife, **Mary Shipley**.

There are no children to list on this card because Thomas was the child of Abraham and Bathsheba not Abraham and Mary.

Abraham & Bathsheba	F4 - Parents of Bathsheba	F5 - Parents of Abraham	F2 - Index of names
---------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------

Husband: Abraham Lincoln
Date born: _____ in Kentucky _____
died: _____ in _____

Wife: Bathsheba Herring
Date born: _____ in _____
died: _____ in _____

Marriage date: _____ Status: M
Marriage location: _____

Children	[F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1	Thomas Lincoln	M	January 6, 1778
2	_____	-	_____
3	_____	-	_____
4	_____	-	_____
5	_____	-	_____

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Figure 2-6. Filled-out card for Abraham and Bathsheba

Husband: Abraham Lincoln	Date born: _____	died: _____
--------------------------	------------------	-------------

Spouses

1 - Abraham & Bathsheba

H - Create another spouse for Abraham

W - Create another spouse for Bathsheba

Wife: _____
Date born: _____
died: _____

Marriage date: _____ Status: M
Marriage location: _____

Children	[F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1	Thomas Lincoln	M	January 6, 1778
2	_____	-	_____
3	_____	-	_____
4	_____	-	_____
5	_____	-	_____

Highlight your choice and press Enter to display a different family card.
Esc-Go back ↑ Scroll spouses ↓ F10-Continue

Figure 2-7. Spouses selection window showing one Family Card

- Press **F3** again to bring up the “Other spouses” selection window

The selection window looks different than it did a moment ago — it now lists two Family Cards for Abraham. See Figure 2-8, below.

Husband: Abraham Lincoln F3-Other spouses

Date born: _____
 died: _____

Wife: **1 - Abraham & Bathsheba**

Date born: Z - Abraham & Mary
 died: H - Create another spouse for Abraham
 W - Create another spouse for Mary

Marriage d: _____
 Marriage location: _____

Children	[F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1	_____	-	_____
2	_____	-	_____
3	_____	-	_____
4	_____	-	_____
5	_____	-	_____

Highlight your choice and press Enter to display a different family card.
 Esc-Go back ↑ Scroll spouses ↓ F10-Continue

Figure 2-8. Spouses selection window showing two Family Cards

- Press **F1** to go to the Abraham & Bathsheba Family Card.

Now there’s additional information at the end of the “Husband” field — a new label that says “**F3 – Other spouses**” to let you know that Abraham has (or had) another wife.

Lincoln’s Maternal Grandparents’ Family Card

In this section you’ll fill in information about President Lincoln’s maternal grandparents, and learn how to go from card to card quickly in Family Tree Maker.

To enter information about Lincoln’s maternal grandparents, first display the Family Card of his mother, Nancy Hanks. This is because Lincoln’s grandparents are not already entered, and Nancy is the closest relative who is entered.

To find Nancy’s Family Card, you’ll use the **Index of Names**

- Press **F2** to display the Index of Names.

The Index of Names appears (see Figure 2-9), listing all the names in this card file.

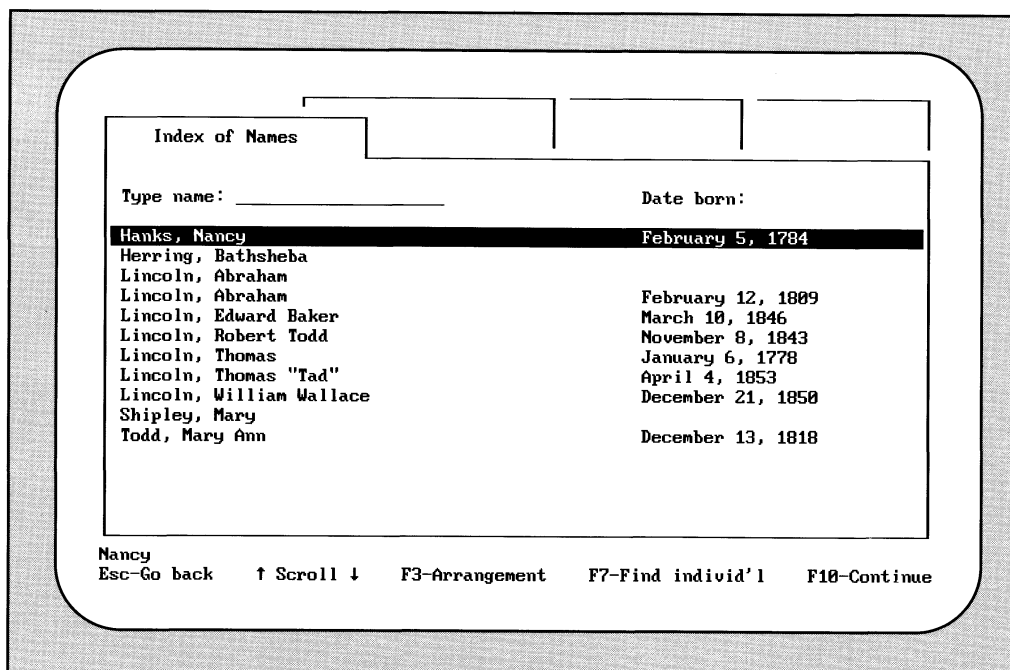


Figure 2-9. Index of Names.

2. Press until the name “Hanks, Nancy” is highlighted.

It happens to be the first name on the list, by chance, so you don’t have to move at all!

3. Press to go to her Family Card.

The Family Card of Thomas & Nancy appears (see Figure 2-5 on page 37).

Now you’re ready to fill in information about the President’s maternal grandparents. The only information you have is the name of his maternal grandfather — Joseph Hanks.

1. Press to bring up the Family Card “Parents of Nancy.”
2. Type **Joseph Hanks** into the “Husband” field.
3. Use the Index of Names to return to the President’s Family Card (two generations earlier).

There are two Abraham Lincolns in the Index of Names; the President is the one who was born in 1809. Select him and press .

You end up back at President Lincoln’s Family Card.

PART II: THE INDIVIDUAL CARDS

Family Tree Maker provides four other cards for each individual in your card file, giving you the opportunity to add all kinds of interesting information about your relatives.

Entering Brief Information

Next, add a bit more information about Lincoln — specifically, that he was a rail splitter in his youth:

1. Press **F3** to bring up the Individual Cards selection window.

The Individual Cards selection window lists the names of all the people on this Family Card. Ordinarily, you'd type the number to the left of the name you wanted to select; but in this case, the President's name is already highlighted so you only have to press **Enter** to select his Individual Card (see Figure 2-10).

Husband: Abraham Lincoln _____ **F3-Other spouses**
Date born: _____
died: _____
Wife: _____
Date born: _____
died: _____
Marriage d _____
Marriage l _____
Childr
 1 Robert Todd Lincoln _____ **M** November 8, 1843
 2 Edward Baker Lincoln _____ **M** March 10, 1846
 3 William Wallace Lincoln _____ **M** December 21, 1850
 4 Thomas "Tad" Lincoln _____ **M** April 4, 1853
 5 _____ - - - -
dates

Individual Cards for:
 1 - Abraham Lincoln
 2 - Mary Ann Todd
 3 - Robert Todd Lincoln
 4 - Edward Baker Lincoln
 5 - William Wallace Lincoln
 6 - Thomas "Tad" Lincoln
 M - Marriage Card

Press Enter to display the individual cards of the highlighted individual.
Esc-Go back **↑ Scroll individuals ↓** **F10-Continue**

Figure 2-10. Individual Cards selection window

2. Press **Enter**. The first Individual Card for Abraham Lincoln appears.

This is the first of four cards for individual information; you want the card that has a space for "Occupation" on it (the next card).

3. Press **F3** again to go to the next Individual Card. The second Individual Card comes up — it's the one you want (see Figure 2-11).

Abraham Lincoln
Card 2 of 4

Occupation: _____

Personality/Interests: _____

Place of residence: _____

Ethnic group/Religion: _____

Comment 1: _____

Comment 2: _____

Comment 3: _____

Comment 4: _____

Esc-Return to family card PgUp-Prev page PgDn-Next page F1-Help

Figure 2-11. Individual Card 2 for Abraham Lincoln

Abraham Lincoln
Card 4 of 4 - Notes

A Self-Motivated Man

Abe Lincoln had a passion for learning. He only had one year of formal schooling, but he would walk for miles to borrow books to teach himself math, science, and law.


He volunteered and became a Captain in the Black Hawk War of 1832. He commented afterwards that he saw no live, fighting Indians, but had a good many bloody struggles with the mosquitoes.

Row 9 Col 48

Normal
F9-Notes menu Esc-Family card PgUp-Prev page PgDn-Next page F1-Help

Figure 2-12. Individual Card 4 - Notes for Abraham Lincoln

-
4. Type **Rail splitter** into the “Occupation” field.

There’s a third Individual Card for adding physical and medical information, but you’ll skip over it for now. Press  twice to go to Individual Card 4 – Notes.

Entering Lengthy Information Into Individual Card 4 – Notes




Individual Card 4 is just like a mini word processor. On it you can enter and organize virtually any information you’d like, including a family member’s favorite recipes, jokes, or even their complete biography. You can enter up to 5 pages of free-form, typewritten text. Then you can print it out on a separate piece of paper for easy filing.

This section shows you how easy it is to enter notes by leading you step-by-step through the experience of creating the notes shown in Figure 2-12 on page 43. You’ll learn how to:

- Enter text and make corrections
- Make text bold and centered
- Rearrange the order of paragraphs
- Create titles



You’re now ready to enter biographical information about Abraham Lincoln.

1. Type **He volunteered**


If you make a mistake, use  to move the cursor back to the left, then type over your error. You can also use Backspace  (it will delete characters as it moves the cursor to the left). If you need to move the cursor back to the right, press .

2. Continue typing on the same line: **and became a Captain in the Black Hawk War of 1832.**


3. Press the space bar twice.


Do *not* press . If you do, press Backspace  to move the cursor back to the end of the sentence you typed in step 2.

4. Type **He commented**

Notice that when you type the word “commented,” it jumps down to the beginning of the second line. As you can see, if a word doesn’t fit at the end of a line, Family Tree Maker automatically moves it to the beginning of the next line. You should only press  when you reach the end of a paragraph.

5. Type the remainder of the paragraph: **afterwards that he saw no live, fighting Indians, but had a good many bloody struggles with the mosquitoes.**

6. Press  to end the paragraph.

7. Press  to create a blank line.

8. Type the second paragraph:

Abe Lincoln had a passion for learning. He only had one year of formal schooling, but he would walk for miles to borrow books to teach himself math, science, and law.

Your screen should now look like the one shown in Figure 2-13.

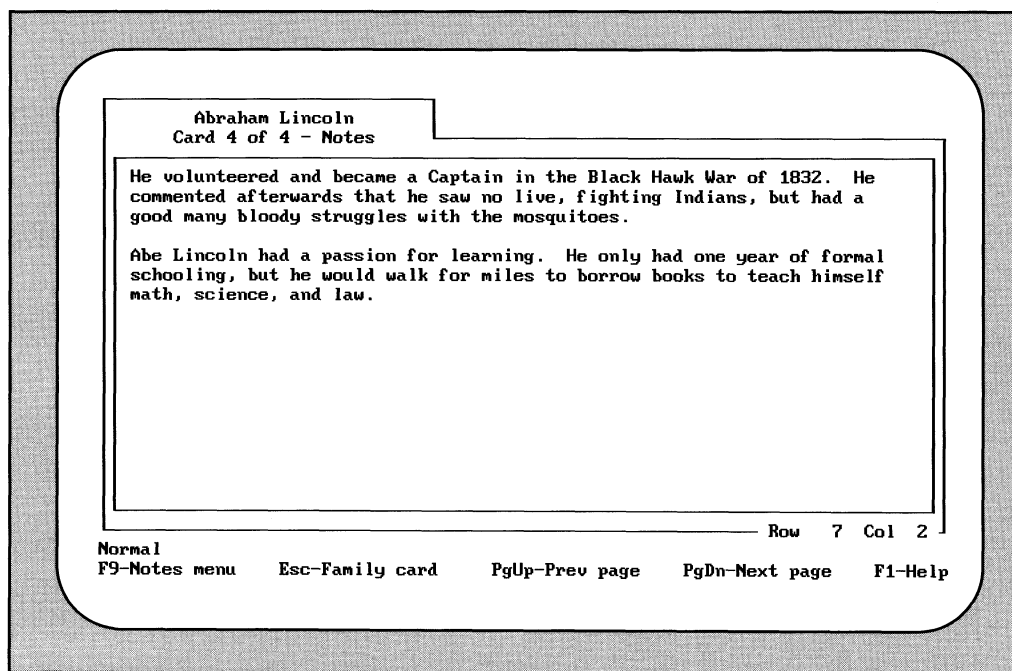



Figure 2-13. Abraham's Individual Card 4 – Notes

Changing Text

You may want to change notes after entering them. In the following steps, you'll make a simple text change and find that Family Tree Maker automatically reformats your notes for you.

1. Use your arrow keys to move the cursor underneath the "l" in "learning."


"learning" is in the first line of the second paragraph.

2. Press Insert  to turn on insert mode.

Notice that the cursor is now larger.

3. Type **knowledge**






Notice that the words "of formal" have jumped down to the next line. Family Tree Maker reformats each paragraph for you automatically as you insert or delete words.

4. Press Delete  until all of “learning” is deleted.

Since there is now room on the line, the words “of formal” come back up to the current line.

Moving Paragraphs

The paragraphs in our example are really in the wrong order. The next few steps show you how to rearrange them.

1. Press  to position the cursor at the beginning of the second paragraph, under the “A” in “Abe.”
2. Make sure your  key is off.
3. Press and hold  with your left hand.
4. With your right hand, press  three times. (Hold down  as you do so.)

Notice that characters become highlighted, or **selected**, as you press .

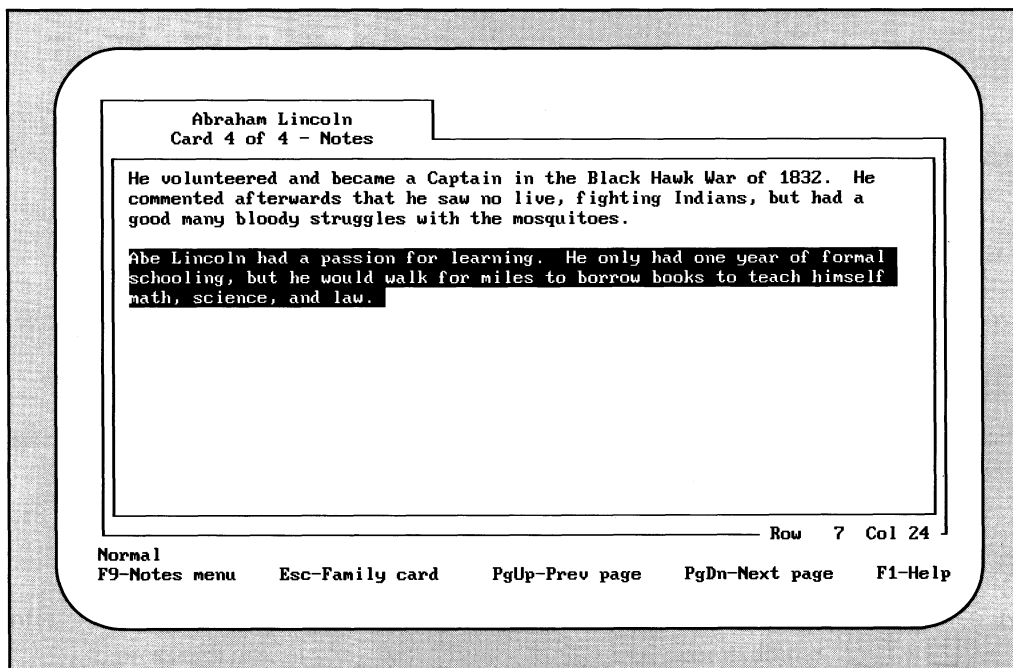






Figure 2-14. A highlighted, or *selected*, paragraph

5. Press  two times.
6. Press  repeatedly, until the cursor appears after the period at the end of the paragraph.





-
-
7. Release , being careful not to press another key.

The second paragraph should be completely highlighted, as shown in Figure 2-14. If it isn't, start over from step 1.

If you have a mouse, you can highlight a paragraph much more easily. Simply move the mouse pointer over the first character you want to select (the "A" in "Abe" in our example). Press and hold the primary mouse button while you drag the mouse until the cursor appears after the period at the end of the paragraph. Release the mouse button. Proceed with the next step.

8. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
9. Select **E – Edit note**.
10. Select **T – Cut**.





The paragraph disappears from the screen, but it's not gone. It's in a temporary storage place in memory called the **Clipboard**. Using the **Paste** command, you can insert the paragraph back into your notes wherever you like.

11. Press  to position the cursor at the top of the screen, under the "H" in "He."
12. Press  twice to make space for the paragraph you're about to paste in.
13. Press  to move the cursor up one line.
14. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
15. Select **E – Edit note**.
16. Select **P – Paste**.

Family Tree Maker now pastes the paragraph from the clipboard into your notes. In a few simple steps, you moved an entire paragraph from being last to being first.

Adding A Title

Now let's add a title, center it, and make it bold. To do this:

1. Press  to move the cursor to the top of the screen, on the blank line just on top of the first paragraph.
2. Type the title: **A Self-Motivated Man**
3. With your left hand, press and hold .
4. With your right hand, press  until the title is completely highlighted.
5. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
6. Select **T – Text styles**.

7. Select **B – Bold**.

Your title is now bold. Centering it is just as easy.

Note: On color monitors, text styles are shown with colors. On monochrome monitors, all styles are shown with brighter letters. Brighter text may not be visible on your monochrome monitor if it isn't adjusted properly. No matter what type of monitor you have, you can position the cursor under a character and look in the lower left corner of the screen to see what style it has.

8. Make sure your cursor is still blinking on the line with the title. If it isn't, move it back up there.

9. Press **F9** to display the Notes Menu.

10. Select **A – Align paragraph**.

11. Select **C – Center**.

Your title is now centered.

12. Press **→** to position the cursor at the end of the current line, just after the “n” in “Man.”

13. Press **Enter** to add another blank line between the title and the first line of text.

Your Individual Card 4 should now look like the one in Figure 2-12, on page 43.

Saving Your Notes

It's a good idea to save your work about every half-hour. This way, if you have a power loss or other catastrophe, you'll never lose more than half an hour of work.

To save your notes, just save your card file. Notes are stored in the same card file as the rest of your information. This way, you can keep all of your information in one place.

You don't need to go all the way back to the Family Card to save your notes. From any Individual Card 4:

1. Press **F9** to display the Notes Menu.

2. Select **F – File**.

3. Select **S – Save card file to disk**.

4. Press **Enter** to accept the highlighted name as the name of the file in which you want to save the Lincoln family information. Since you are still working on the same family, you want to add the new information you just entered to what you saved earlier. To do this, you save using the same card file name you used the last time you saved (i.e., LINCOLN.FTM).

The disk whirs a bit once more as your information is saved to disk again. Now the LINCOLN.FTM card file contains all the Family Cards and Notes you've entered so far.

Printing Your Notes

Now you're ready to print these notes about Abraham Lincoln. To do this:

1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F9** to display the Notes Menu.
4. Select **F – File**.
5. Select **P – Print individual notes**. Family Tree Maker then asks if you want to print page numbers.
6. Press **F10** to begin printing your notes. (Go ahead and change the page number settings first if you like.)

The printer starts printing, and in a few moments you'll have a printed copy of your notes on Abraham Lincoln.

7. Press **ESC** to return to Lincoln's Family Card.

PART III: PRINTING A FAMILY TREE

Now you're ready to print the family tree of President Lincoln.


If this were your own family tree, you'd probably want to add more complete information. And if you knew more about your relatives, you'd likely want to go forward or back several more generations as well as fill in information for aunts, uncles, and cousins. But you've entered enough information about the Lincoln family to get an idea of what Family Tree Maker can do.

Now Print The Tree


Follow these steps to print out an ancestor tree. If you make a mistake, press the **ESC** key to go back until you find the screen where you're supposed to be:

1. Press **F9** from President Lincoln's Family Card to bring up the Command Menu.
2. Press **P** to select **P – Print tree** and to move the highlight to the top of the proper submenu.
3. Press **A** to select **A – Ancestor tree**.


The screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 1 of 5**” appears so that you can select the **primary individual**. This is the person whose ancestors will be printed. The name of the current individual is already highlighted — in this case, Abraham himself.

4. Press  to select Abraham as the primary individual.

The screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 2 of 5**” appears. You can choose to print a tree on one page or across several pages. To keep things simple for this tutorial, you’ll use the default choice, “**Single page**” (already highlighted).


5. Press  to select the highlighted choice “**Single page**” and to go to the next screen.

The screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 3 of 5**” appears. Here you decide how many generations you want to have in your printed tree. To keep things simple for this tutorial, you’ll use the default choice, “**3 – Individual through Grandparents**” (already highlighted).










6. Press  to select “**3 – Individual through Grandparents**” and to go to the next screen.

The screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5**” appears. The choices on this screen bring up submenus that you use to customize nearly everything about your tree, from the border that’s printed around the outside edges to the kind and amount of information that’s printed for each individual in the tree.

You can come here and experiment later. For this tutorial, however, you’ll take the quick way out.

7. Press  to preview how the tree will look when you print it on paper.


The Preview screen appears. It isn’t labeled “**Ancestor Tree – Step 5 of 5**,” but previewing is the fifth and final step before printing the tree. This screen gives you the chance to make sure that everything is to your liking before you commit your tree to paper. If you see something you want to change — you don’t like the border, or you forgot to tell Family Tree Maker to print a particular piece of information, or you spelled someone’s name wrong — you get the chance to go back and fix it.

You can press , , ,  to move the preview screen to see other parts of the tree. Try it. You can also hold down the  key and press , , , or  to move the screen a little bit at a time. Try that too.

Even if you print a tree with mistakes in it, you can always make corrections later on the Family or Individual Cards and print the tree again. Once a card file is saved on the disk, you can print trees again and again.

8. Turn the printer on if it isn’t on already.

9. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)

10. Press  to print the tree.

You may notice that the information is abbreviated in order to get the tree to fit on a single page, as you requested.

The printer starts printing, and in a few minutes you have a beautiful family tree! What's more, you can print different kinds of trees, and a variety of other kinds of reports, using the information already contained in the card file. You will learn how to do this in Chapter 4, "Printing Trees," and Chapter 5, "Other Printing."

What To Do Next

To learn more about Family Tree Maker, read the rest of this manual. Go through the various printing screens again, this time trying all the options. Add a few more generations to the Lincoln family and experiment with different print settings.

Finally, start a new family tree — this time using information about your own family. Before you know it, you'll be creating beautiful family trees to send as gifts to everyone in your family.

Chapter 3

ENTERING INFORMATION



This is George Franklin Hess, his son Franklin, and an unknown pilot sometime in the early 1900's. George was an executive with the Wabash Railroad. It was a Wabash passenger train, the Banner Blue Limited, that provided the name for the company that makes this program.



ENTERING INFORMATION

Before you can print a tree, you need to enter information about your family. This chapter describes how to enter and change information, and how to save it on disk. (Chapters 4 and 5 describe how to print the information you've entered for your family tree.)

This chapter concludes with a brief description of all the commands on the Command Menu. You need to know these to get the most out of Family Tree Maker.

A QUICK OVERVIEW


To enter information, you fill out an electronic "card" (called a **Family Card**) for each family (see Figure 3-1 on page 56).

You can add more details about each family member by filling out a series of **Individual Cards**. There are four cards for each family member.

From time to time as you're filling out information, you save the information on disk in a **card file**. A card file is the place on your disk where you store all the family and individual cards that you have filled out on your relatives.

In most cases you will save your information over and over to the same card file. (Saving information is a very fast operation. You should do it often.) (See Figure 3-20 on page 93.)

To save, edit cards, print trees (described in Chapter 4), and perform other program functions you will make selections from the **Command Menu**.

Reminder: You can press  at any time to get on-screen help.

THE FAMILY CARD

The **Family Card** shows all the members of a nuclear family: a husband, a wife, and their children. On this card you add new family members and new information about existing family members. It's the first screen that you see after the Family Tree Maker title screen, and it's the primary screen for entering family information.

The Family Card screen shows one card on the screen at a time. At the top of the card you can see the tabs of three other cards, labeled to show what those cards are about.

Note: Even though you see only the tabs for three other cards your card file can contain many others (see "Displaying a Different Family Card" on page 78).

Family Card 1 Family Card 2 Family Card 3 F2 - Index of names

Husband: _____
Date born: _____ in _____
died: _____ in _____

Wife: _____
Date born: _____ in _____
died: _____ in _____

Marriage date: _____ Status: _
Marriage location: _____

Children	IF6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1	_____	-	_____
2	_____	-	_____
3	_____	-	_____
4	_____	-	_____
5	_____	-	_____

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Figure 3-1. An empty Family Card

A line at the bottom of the screen shows the names and functions of important keys that you can press.

Printing Tip: You can also press **Alt** + **P** (hold down the **Alt** key while you press **P**) to print the current Family Card. To print a blank Family Card, first press **Alt** + **P** then press **Alt** + **F10**.

Entering Family Information

You enter information into the Family Card much as you write information on a paper form or card.

Like a paper form, the Family Card consists of labels and blanks to fill with information. The blanks are called **fields** and the labels that describe the blanks are called **field labels**.

You type information into the fields, and you move from field to field using **Tab** **→**, **Enter** **↵**, or the cursor keys **↓** or **↑**. Some fields only allow you to enter certain kinds of information. For example, date fields only allow you to enter a date or a question mark (?). You can try to enter something else, but you won't be able to continue until you type a real date.

When you start a new **card file** — the file in which all Family and Individual Cards are stored — the Family Card appears as it does in Figure 3-1. It is ready for you to start entering family information.

You can start by entering information about your immediate family. Because you probably know them best, you might want to start with your own mother and father. As you will see, every additional person you enter must be a spouse, parent, or child of someone you have already entered. If you are not sure how to enter information about a distant relative, see “Entering Information About Other Relatives” on page 61.

Moving the Cursor and Editing Information

You can move the cursor around the screen using many of the keys on your computer keyboard. Figure 3-2 shows the keys and how they work.






















Press this key	To do this
	Move the cursor to the field above the current field
	Move the cursor to the field below the current field
	Move the cursor one character to the left
	Move the cursor one character to the right
 (tab)	Move the cursor to the next field
 + 	Move the cursor to the previous field
	Move the cursor to the beginning of the current field
	Move the cursor to the end of the current field
	Move the cursor to the next field
 + 	Move to the previous word
 + 	Move to the next word
 (backspace)	Back up and erase the previous character
	Turn on insert mode for placing characters between those already there; press again to turn insert off
	Delete characters to the right, one by one
 + 	Delete the word to the right of the cursor
 + 	Clear the field

Figure 3-2. Keys for moving the cursor and editing information

Note to Mouse Users: See Appendix F (page 273) for instructions on using your mouse with Family Tree Maker.

Entering Names

Type a person's name into the "Husband," "Wife," or "Children" fields. In a family tree, one normally uses an individual's full name including first, middle, and last. Enter names first-name-first. Don't use initials. When entering the names of women, always use the maiden name (her name before she was married). Be sure to include the last names of children in addition to their first and middle names.

Note: You can **print** names differently than the way you entered them (for example, with the last name first). You can also print the last names in all capital letters. Let the program do the hard work for you. See "Selecting Information to Print" in the index. If Family Tree Maker needs to shorten names to make them fit in the tree when printed, it will take out the middle names. You can change the labels "Husband" and "Wife" to anything you want. See "Utilities" on page 96 to change field labels.

Nicknames: It's quite acceptable to include nicknames. They should be enclosed in quotation marks to distinguish them from individuals' legal names. For example:

Laurence "Larry" Stevens

Unusual last names: Family Tree Maker can usually tell the last name from other parts of a person's name. If at some point you notice that it has incorrectly identified someone's last name, place the entire last name between back slash characters. In this example, Family Tree Maker interprets the last name as "Irish Hess."

Connie \Irish Hess

Last names with suffixes: If a suffix is attached to the last name (for example, Jr. or Ph.D.) be sure to separate it from the last name by a comma (John Smith, Jr.). The comma lets Family Tree Maker know that the suffix is not actually the last name and it will therefore sort the name correctly.

Missing last names: In some cultures last names aren't used. To show that a person has no last name, place two back slash characters together without a space between them at the end of the name. In this example, the individual Running Bear has no last name.

Running Bear

Entering Dates

The **date fields** in Family Tree Maker are very smart and very flexible, and can handle any date after 100 A.D. You can type a date almost any way you want. When you move the cursor out of the field, Family Tree Maker automatically puts each date in the same format. Figure 3-3 shows some of the ways you can enter date information.

You type this	You get this
7/4/1776	July 4, 1776
Jul 4, 76	July 4, 1776
4 Jul 1776	July 4, 1776
7-4-1776	July 4, 1776
July 4, 76	July 4, 1776

Figure 3-3. Different ways to enter dates

Family Tree Maker can display dates with the three letter abbreviation for the month instead of the full spelling, and it can display dates in day-month-year format. See “Utilities” on page 96 if you want to change Family Tree Maker’s date format.

There may be events for which you don’t know an exact date. Or, you may be certain of the year, but not certain of the day and month. Figure 3-4 shows how you can handle estimated dates.

You type this	You get this
1776	1776
Jul 1776	July 1776
4 Jul	July 4
EST 7/4/1776	ABOUT July 4, 1776
ABT 7/4/1776	ABOUT July 4, 1776
CIRCA 7/4/1776	ABOUT July 4, 1776
BEF 7/4/1776	BEFORE July 4, 1776
AFT 7/4/1776	AFTER July 4, 1776
?	UNKNOWN

When printed, the words ABOUT, BEFORE, and AFTER are sometimes abbreviated.

Figure 3-4. How to handle estimated dates

Note: You can change the word “about” to anything you want. See “Utilities” on page 96 to change field labels.

If someone is not dead or married, leave the date field for that event blank. Leaving a field blank means the event hasn’t happened. If they died, but you don’t know the date of death, type a question mark ?. Entering a question mark or “unknown” means you know the event happened but not when it happened.

Family Tree Maker also handles special codes used by the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. See Appendix B, “LDS Ordinance Information,” for details.

Note to Advanced Users: Family Tree Maker can display double dates to account for the crossover between the Julian and Gregorian calendars. If you enter a date that's earlier than the changeable double date cutoff, described in "Utilities" on page 96, you can specify the second year using one to four digits. For example, you can type either Jan 1, 1493/4 or Jan 1, 1493/1494; both display as January 1, 1493/94. If you don't enter two years, Family Tree Maker assumes the date you type is the second one. For example, if you type January 1, 1494, it's displayed as January 1, 1493/94.

Entering Locations

You use **location fields** to enter a person's place of birth, death, or marriage. (These fields are usually preceded by the field label "in.") Normally you enter the city and state. You might also want to enter the county if it's important.

To conserve space, enter the nation name only if it's unusual. For example, if most family members were born in the United States, don't enter the country. You would enter the country for the occasional relative born outside the United States.

When Family Tree Maker prints some single page trees, it has limited space for the location fields. If Family Tree Maker needs to abbreviate a location, it will always try to keep the last word in the location field. If a country is the last word in the field, it prints the country, but may drop the state.

Be sure to put commas between the city, county, state, and country names. Correct punctuation allows Family Tree Maker to abbreviate correctly when necessary.

Note: Your trees will look better if you enter information in a consistent way. For example, either abbreviate states or spell them out — but don't abbreviate in some cases and spell them out in other cases.

Entering Information About Marriages, Partnerships, and Friendships

Marriage fields record the date and location of the marriage. The **Status field** records the current or most recent status of the relationship. Family Tree Maker allows the following status codes:

Code	Meaning
M	Married
D	Divorced
A	Annulled
S	Separated
F	Friends
P	Partners
O	Other
?	Unknown
	Blank (when only husband OR wife is present)

Figure 3-5. Marriage field codes

For example, if a couple has divorced, you would type **D** in the “Status” field records. If the marriage was annulled, you would type **A**. The default for the status field is **M** (Married) when both a “Husband” and a “Wife” are present.

You can record additional information about a marriage in the Marriage Card. When you enter **P** (for partner) or **F** (for friend), Family Tree Maker automatically substitutes “Meeting card” for “Marriage card” and “Meeting date” for “Marriage date” in the records you’re keeping about those two people. See “The Marriage Card” on page 78.

Entering Information About Children

The list of fields at the bottom of the Family Card is for the names, sexes, and birth dates of children. The name and date fields work just as they do for the husband and wife.

The sex field accepts the letters **M** or **F** for male or female. The default is **Female**. Because the sex of a child determines where he or she appears in the construction of family trees, it’s important that you fill in the sex correctly.


Important: You can only change a person’s sex if he or she is not married or has only one spouse who also has no other marriages. This is because when you change the sex of one spouse the sex of the other is automatically changed.

Enter only the names of children born to the current husband and wife. Don’t enter step-children unless you want the current husband or wife to print in your trees as their parent. You can enter adopted and foster children if you want, but keep in mind that a family tree is usually meant to show an individual’s blood line.

When you enter children in a Family Card it's good practice to list them in the order they were born. The oldest child goes first. Sometimes you'll uncover new children that need to go between two already listed. Other times you may find errors in the birth dates of children and need to rearrange their order. Family Tree Maker provides commands (including Move, Insert, and Arrange) that let you adjust the order of children. See "E - Edit card file" on page 97 for details.

Caution: Never attempt to rearrange the order children are listed in by typing over names that are already there. Use the **Arrange children by birth** command instead (see page 97).

If you type over a name, all information associated with that individual (spouse, children, individual cards, etc.) remains with the **new** name you entered. You will quickly end up with brothers married to their sisters-in-law (or brothers-in-law!).

You can add up to 99 children on each Family Card. The Family Card appears to only allow 5, but when you press  after the fifth child, the list scrolls up to reveal space to add more children to that card.

Entering Information About Other Relatives

Family Tree Maker automatically creates Family Cards for the parents and children of every individual you enter on the current Family Card. It doesn't automatically create Family Cards for the cousins, great uncles, and so on. To enter family information for other relatives, you must first fill in the Family Card of your common ancestor, then fill in the cards of your common ancestor's descendants — your relatives.

For example, to enter information about your paternal uncle's family, you first fill in your father's Family Card, then fill in his father's (your grandfather's) Family Card. Your grandfather is your father's and your uncle's common ancestor. On your grandfather's Family Card you'll enter your uncle's name as a child. From your grandfather's card, you can then go directly to your uncle's card and enter his family information.

In other words, you can get to any relative's family by going through a parent, spouse, or child of someone already in your card file. Once you have created a card for a relative, you can go directly to their card in other ways (see "Displaying a Different Family Card" on page 78).

Recording Sources

One of the first commandments of genealogy is to thoroughly document the sources of family information. That way you can return to the source if you have to, and you can know what sources you've already checked.

You can record a source for most date/location fields. To record a source:

1. Press **Alt** + **S** from anywhere in the Family or Individual Cards to bring up the Sources selection window. (Hold down the **Alt** key while you press **S**.)
2. Use **Up** and **Down** to highlight the name of the person for whom you want to enter sources. (If the cursor is on an individual's name on the Family Card, that person's name is already highlighted in the selection window.) Highlight Marriage Source if you want to enter source information for the marriage.
3. Press **Enter** to display the source information screen for the selected person.
4. Use the cursor keys to move to the fields you want to type into.
5. Type your source information into the appropriate fields.
6. When you are finished entering source information, press **Esc** to return to the Family Card.

Kenneth & Constance		F4 - Parents of Constance	F5 - Parents of Kenneth	F2 - Index of names
Husband: Kenneth Lafferty Hess				
Date born: January 22, 1953 in Warren, Trumbull Co., OH				
died: _____ in _____				
Wife: Constance Louise Irish				
Sources for Kenneth				
Ma	Birth date/location: _____			
Ma	Death date/location: _____			
	Event 1 date/location: _____			
	Event 2 date/location: _____			
1	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	_____	_____	_____
5	_____	_____	_____	_____
Esc-Go back		F10-Continue		

Figure 3-6. Source information screen for a selected individual

THE INDIVIDUAL CARDS

The Individual Cards are where you place all additional information about a person. You can keep track of events such as a baptism, emigration, or high school graduation. You can record physical, and medical information. You can even record stories, biographical sketches, and other lengthy paragraphs of information. With this and other information of your choice, you can create a concise picture of what the person was like.

There are four Individual Cards. The information on cards 1, 2, and 3 can print in family trees, in reports, or separately. Individual Card 4 always prints separately because there's too much information to fit on a tree.

To display someone's Individual Cards:

1. From the Family Card, press **PageDown** to bring up the Individual Cards selection window.
2. Use **Up** and **Down** to highlight the name of the person whose cards you want to work with. (If the cursor is on an individual's name on the Family Card, that person's name will be highlighted in the selection window.)
3. Press **Enter**.

Special Tip: You can go directly from the Family Card to any Individual Card by holding down **Alt** and pressing the number of the Individual Card. For example, position your cursor on an individual and press **Alt** + **3** to go directly to their Individual Card 3.

Each individual has four cards as described below. Use **PageDown** and **PageUp** to move among an individual's cards. The tab in the upper left corner of the screen shows what card you're on, and whose card it is.

You can also use the Individual Cards selection window to go to a special Marriage Card or Meeting Card. See "The Marriage Card" on page 78.

To return to the Family Card from any Individual Card, press **Esc**.

Printing Tip: To print a person's first three Individual Cards, display Individual Card 1 for that person and then press **Alt** + **P** (hold down the **Alt** key while you press **P**). To print blank Individual Cards, display any Individual Card 1, press **Alt** + **P**, then press **Alt** + **F10**.

To print Individual Card 4, display it and press **Alt** + **P**.

Individual Card 1

Individual Card 1 summarizes all the events recorded about an individual (see Figure 3-7 on page 65). It includes the birth, death, and sex information that you entered on the Family Card. If you edit any of that information on this card, the changes are automatically entered on the Family Card.

You can use the “Event” date and location fields on this card to record any events you choose. You can change the field labels if you like (see “Utilities” on page 96), but keep in mind that the changed field labels appear on the first card for every individual. Only the first two event fields can have sources (described earlier in this chapter).

The reference number field can contain any number (not letters or leading zeros) that you choose. You might use this number as part of a paper filing system. Its use is entirely optional. Use a comment field if you want to use a numbering scheme that employs letters or leading zeros.

Note to Advanced Users: Ahnentafel numbers can be created automatically when you print ancestor trees. They have nothing to do with what you enter here. See “For Advanced Users” on page 122 for information about Ahnentafel numbering.

Kenneth Lafferty Hess
Card 1 of 4

	Dates	Locations
Born:	January 22, 1953	Warren, Trumbull Co., OH
Died:	_____	_____
Event 1:	_____	_____
Event 2:	_____	_____
Event 3:	_____	_____
Event 4:	_____	_____
Event 5:	_____	_____
Sex (M)ale, (F)emale:	M	
Reference number (optional):	_____	
Individual is (N)atural child, (A)dopted, (F)oster, (?)Unknown:		N

Esc-Return to family card
PgDn-Next page
F1-Help

Figure 3-7. Individual Card 1 filled in

The last field on Individual Card 1 records whether the individual is natural, adopted, foster, or unknown. Type the letter **N**, **A**, **F**, or **?** to record your choice. The letter “N” is automatically placed in this field unless you change it.

If you enter a letter other than “N,” Family Tree Maker displays the message, “Do you want this individual to print in trees and show in relationships (with the Kinship command) as if he/she is a blood relative?” Select **Yes** to treat this individual the same as a natural child in printed trees and when using the Kinship command. Select **No** if you don’t want this person to print in trees or to show up when using the Kinship command.

Kenneth Lafferty Hess
Card 2 of 4

Occupation:	Businessman; software developer_____
Personality/Interests:	History; physics; trains_____
Place of residence:	Fremont, California_____
Ethnic group/Religion:	_____
Comment 1:	_____
Comment 2:	_____
Comment 3:	_____
Comment 4:	_____

Esc-Return to family card
PgUp-Prev page
PgDn-Next page
F1-Help

Figure 3-8. Individual Card 2 filled in

Individual Card 2

Individual Card 2 contains fields to record biographical information (see Figure 3-8). Enter comments or phrases here that you can later print in your trees. If you want to enter larger stories or biographical sketches to store separately from your trees, see Individual Card 4 on page 68.

When printing some single page trees, Family Tree Maker has limited space for these phrases. If Family Tree Maker needs to abbreviate these fields it will simply shorten them during printing.

Individual Card 3

Individual Card 3 contains fields where you can record physical and medical information, including cause of death (see Figure 3-9).

Kenneth Lafferty Hess
Card 3 of 4

Adult height: 6 feet 0_ inches

Adult weight: 155_ pounds

Cause of death: _____

Medical information (Y)es, (N)o, (?)Unknown

Heart disease: N	Addictions: N
High blood pressure: N	Alzheimer's: N
Stroke: N	Mental illness: N
Cancer: N	Diabetes: N

Esc-Return to family card PgUp-Prev page PgDn-Next page F1-Help

Figure 3-9. Individual Card 3 filled in

Use these fields to track medical information about your family. You can choose different diseases to track (see “Utilities,” page 96). You can also use Individual Card 2 or Individual Card 4 to track additional medical information. You might not get a disease just because an ancestor had it, but the odds might be higher. With the advice of your doctor, you might want to adjust your personal habits based on your family history.

The names of some diseases have changed over time. See “Outdated Medical Terminology” on page 231 for more information.

Note: The people who wrote this program are not medical professionals. The listing of a disease on Individual Card 3 isn’t meant to imply that a genetic basis exists for that disease. The diseases shown were chosen based on their rate of occurrence and people’s interest in them.

Individual Card 4 – Notes

Individual Card 4 is just like a mini-word processor. On it you can enter and organize virtually any information you'd like, including a family member's favorite recipes, jokes, or even a small biography. You can enter up to five pages of free-form, typewritten text. Then you can print it out on a separate piece of paper for easy filing. See Figure 3-10 for a sample Individual Card 4, and see Figure 3-11 for a summary of what you can do there.

Note: If you're not familiar with word processors, you'll find it helpful to do Part II of the Tutorial, page 42 in Chapter 2.

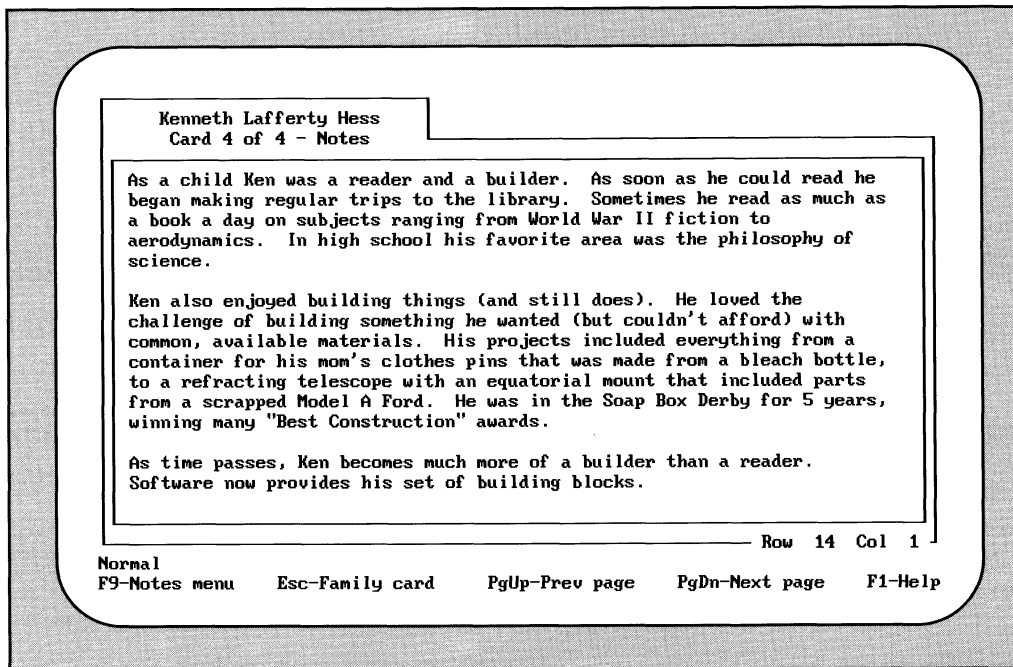


Figure 3-10. A Sample Individual Card 4 – Notes

Note: If you need ideas to help you write about a family member's life, or if you would like to write more than 5 pages of notes about a person, see page 287 for information about *Biography Maker*, a program designed for Family Tree Maker customers who are interested in writing biographies of their relatives or of themselves.

To do this turn to this section
Use your keyboard or your mouse to move your cursor anywhere in your text	“Moving Around...” page 70
Insert new text, delete old text, and type over existing text	“Editing Text...” page 71
Restore text that you accidentally deleted	“Undeleting Text...” page 71
Rearrange text by cutting it from one place and pasting it to another	“Rearranging Text...” on page 72, and “Moving Text From One Individual Card 4 to Another” on page 73
Avoid retyping information by copying it from one place and pasting it to another	“Copying Text...” page 73
Make titles, names, and other important text stand out by using a text style such as bold, underline, or italics	“Changing Text Styles...” page 75, and “Entering Emphasized Text...” page 75
Center titles or even entire paragraphs. Align paragraphs against the left margin or the right margin	“Aligning Paragraphs...” page 76
Save your notes — and all the other information in your card file — at any time	“Saving Your Notes” page 76
Print your notes on paper	“Printing Your Notes” page 77
Get information you’ve typed into another program and insert it directly into Individual Card 4 without retyping	“Importing Text From Another Program Into Individual Card 4” page 77

Figure 3-11. A summary of what you can do in Individual Card 4 – Notes

Moving Around In Individual Card 4

You can enter much more text into Individual Card 4 than can appear on the screen at any one time. To edit your text, you'll need to move around the current screen, and to other screens. Figure 3-12 shows all of the keys you can use to move around.

Note to Mouse Users: You can move your cursor directly to any character in your text simply by clicking it with your mouse. You can also click the words "PgUp – Prev page" and "PgDn – Next page" at the bottom of the screen to move up or down a screen's worth of text.





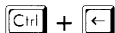
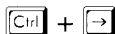





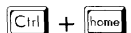
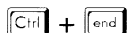



Press this key	To do this
	Move the cursor one character to the left.
	Move the cursor one character to the right.
	Move the cursor up one line.
	Move the cursor down one line.
	Move the cursor one word to the left
	Move the cursor one word to the right.
	Move up a whole screen's worth of text. If the cursor is at the top of Individual Card 4,  will take you to Individual Card 3.
	Move down a whole screen's worth of text.
	Move the cursor to the beginning of the line.
	Move the cursor to the end of the line.
	Move the cursor to the beginning of Individual Card 4.
	Move the cursor to the end of Individual Card 4.

Figure 3-12. How to move around in Individual Card 4

Note: The  key is a key that's always used in combination with another key. To use it, press and hold it while you press the other key. For example, " + 

Editing Text In Individual Card 4

You can perform most editing functions with either one key, or a two-keystroke combination. To enter a keystroke combination, press and hold the first key while you press the second one. Figure 3-13, below, summarizes the standard editing operations. Notice that many of these are identical to what you press to edit on the Family Card.

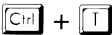
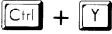



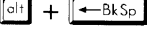




Press this key	To do this
	Delete the word above the cursor.
	Delete the entire line above the cursor.
 (backspace)	Delete the character to the left of the cursor.
	Toggles between inserting characters between those already there, and overwriting characters already there.
	Delete the character above the cursor.
	Undelete. Restore the text you just deleted.
 (tab)	Enter a tab into the text and move the cursor to the next tab stop.
	End a paragraph and move the cursor to the beginning of the next line. At the beginning of a paragraph or blank line,  inserts a blank line.

Figure 3-13. Keys for editing information

Undeleting Text In Individual Card 4

You can restore text that you accidentally deleted, by using the **undelete** command.

To undelete text that you've just deleted in Individual Card 4:



1. Don't type any new text. If you do, you won't be able to undelete anymore.
2. Press  to display the Notes Menu.

It doesn't matter where your cursor is — Family Tree Maker will remember where your text was and will put it back in the correct location.

3. Select **E – Edit note**.
4. Select **U – Undelete**.

Your text is now restored.

Note: To replace text that you accidentally deleted using the “Cut” command, position your cursor where you wish to replace the text, and choose **P – Paste** from the **E – Edit note** submenu.






Note: You can also recover deleted text by holding  while you press Backspace .

Rearranging Text In Individual Card 4


You can move any amount of text from one place in your text to another. This is referred to as **cutting and pasting**.

To cut and paste text in Individual Card 4, do the following:


1. Position your cursor at the beginning of the text you wish to move.
2. Select the text you wish to move.

To select text with the keyboard, first make sure that your  key is off. Then press and hold  while you press  or any other arrow key until all the text is highlighted. If you want to select large amounts of text, you can also use  and .

To select text with a mouse, simply move the mouse pointer over the first character you want to select. Press and hold the primary mouse button while you drag the mouse until the last character you want is highlighted. Release the mouse button.

3. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
4. Select **E – Edit note**.
5. Select **T – Cut**.

The text disappears from the screen, but it’s not gone. It’s in a temporary storage place in memory called the **Clipboard**. You can use the Paste command to insert the contents of the Clipboard back into your notes wherever you like.

6. Position your cursor where you wish to insert the text.
7. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
8. Select **E – Edit note**.
9. Select **P – Paste**.






Family Tree Maker now pastes the text from the Clipboard into your notes, and reformats text as necessary.

Copying Text In Individual Card 4


You can copy any amount of text and insert it any place you want.

To copy text in Individual Card 4:


1. Position your cursor at the beginning of the text you wish to copy.
2. Select the text you wish to copy.

To select text with the keyboard, first make sure that your  key is off. Then press and hold  while you press  or any other arrow key until all the text is highlighted. If you want to select large amounts of text, you can also use  and .

To select with a mouse, simply move the mouse pointer over the first character you want to select. Press and hold the primary mouse button while you drag the mouse until the last character you want is highlighted. Release the mouse button.

3. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
4. Select **E – Edit note**.
5. Select **C – Copy**.

A copy of the selected text is placed in a temporary storage place in memory called the Clipboard. You can use the Paste command to insert the contents of the Clipboard back into your notes wherever you like.

6. Position your cursor where you wish to insert the text.
7. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
8. Select **E – Edit note**.
9. Select **P – Paste**.

Family Tree Maker now pastes the text from the Clipboard into your notes, and reformats text as necessary.

Since the clipboard is not erased until you cut (or copy) more text onto it, you can paste the same text as many different times as you like.






Moving Text From One Individual Card 4 To Another

You can move or copy any amount of text from one person's Individual Card 4 to another person's Individual Card 4.


To perform this operation, start with the person who has the text you wish to move:

1. Display that person's Individual Card 4.

-
2. Position your cursor at the beginning of the text you wish to move.
 3. Select the text you wish to move.


To select text with the keyboard, first make sure that your  key is off. Then press and hold  while you press  or any other arrow key until all the text is highlighted. If you want to select large amounts of text, you can also use  and .

To select with a mouse, simply move the mouse pointer over the first character you want to select. Press and hold the primary mouse button while you drag the mouse until the last character you want is highlighted. Release the mouse button.



4. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
5. Select **E – Edit note**.
6. Select **T – Cut**.

Or, select **C – Copy** if you wish to copy this text to another Individual Card 4.


You can now use the Paste command to insert the contents of the Clipboard back into anyone's Individual Card 4 wherever you like.

7. Press  to exit this person's Individual Cards.
8. Move to the second person's Family Card.

Note: You can use the Find individual command to move quickly to someone's Family Card. See page 81.


9. Press  to display the Individual Cards selection window.
10. Highlight the person you want and press .

The first Individual Card for that person appears.

11. Press  three more times to skip through Cards 2 and 3.

You're now at Individual Card 4 – Notes.

12. Position your cursor where you wish to insert the text.

13. Press  to display the Notes Menu.

14. Select **E – Edit note**.

15. Select **P – Paste**.

Family Tree Maker now pastes the text from the Clipboard into the notes for this person, and reformats text as necessary.

Since the clipboard is not erased until you cut (or copy) more text onto it, you can paste the same text to other people's Individual Card 4 as many times as you like.






Changing Text Styles In Individual Card 4

You can give text multiple text styles (such as **bold and underline**), change existing styles back to normal, or replace existing styles with different ones. From Individual Card 4:


1. Position your cursor at the beginning of the text whose style you want to change.

The text can be anything from a few letters to a few words to a few paragraphs or more.

2. Select the text you wish to change.

To select text with the keyboard, first make sure that your  key is off. Then press and hold  while you press  or any other arrow key until all the text is highlighted. If you want to select large amounts of text, you can also use  and .

To select with a mouse, simply move the mouse pointer over the first character you want to select. Press and hold the primary mouse button while you drag the mouse until the last character you want is highlighted. Release the mouse button.

3. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
4. Select **T – Text styles**, and then select a style.



Select **N – Normal** if you want to remove any styles from the selected text.

You can apply as many styles to the selected text as you wish. For example, you can make the selected text bold, underline, and italics by repeating steps 1 through 4 above for each text style you want.

Entering Emphasized Text (Bold, Underline, Italics) Into Individual Card 4

If you know beforehand that you want text to be emphasized, you can select a **text style** first and then enter the text. You can make names, titles, and other important text stand out by using bold, underline, or italics. (If you want to emphasize text you've already entered, see "Changing Text Styles..." above.)

To select a text style first, from Individual Card 4:

1. Pause just before you type the text you want to be emphasized.
2. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
3. Select **T – Text styles**, and then select the style you want (**B – Bold**, **U – Underline**, or **I – Italics**).
4. Type the text you want to emphasize.
5. When you're finished entering the text, press  to display the Notes Menu.
6. Select **T – Text styles**.

7. Select **N – Normal**.

You can also select the text and choose the text style a second time to turn it off.

You can give text any combination of styles. For example, you can make text both bold and underline. See “Changing Text Styles...” on page 75.


Note: Not all printers will print italics. On some italics will appear as an outline style and on others it will appear normal.

On color monitors, text styles are shown with different colors. On monochrome monitors, all styles are shown with brighter letters. Brighter letters may not be visible on your monochrome monitor if it isn’t adjusted properly. No matter what type of monitor you have, you can position the cursor under a character and look in the lower left corner of the screen to see what style it has.

Aligning Paragraphs In Individual Card 4

Family Tree Maker allows you to align your paragraphs against the left margin, against the right margin, or centered between the two margins. You can also use this command to center titles.

For example, to center a title in Individual Card 4:

1. Position your cursor anywhere on the line you wish to center.
2. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
3. Select **A – Align Paragraph**.
4. Select **C – Center**.

Your title is now centered.


To turn off the centering, simply repeat steps 1 through 3 above. Then choose **L – Left align**.



Saving Your Notes

It’s a good idea to save your work about every half-hour. This way, if you have a power loss or other catastrophe, you’ll never lose more than half an hour of work.

To save your notes, just save your card file. Notes are stored in the same card file as the rest of your information. This way, you can keep all of your information in one place.

You don’t need to go all the way back to the Family Card to save your information. From Individual Card 4:




1. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
2. Select **F – File**.

-
-
3. Select **S – Save card file to disk**.
 4. If you are saving your card file for the first time, type the name of your card file and press . Otherwise, simply press .






Your whole card file, including your notes, is now saved.

Printing Your Notes

To print your notes for the current individual:

1. Go to Individual Card 4 for the individual whose notes you want to print.
2. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
3. Turn your printer on.
4. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
5. Select **F – File**.
6. Select **P – Print individual notes**.
7. Use  or  to choose whether or not to print page numbers on the bottom center of each page. Then, enter a starting page number if appropriate.

At this point, you have two options to begin printing:

-  will print the current individual's notes, with his or her name at the top of each page.
-  +  (hold down the  key and press ) will print the current individual's notes, omitting his or her name from the top of the paper.


Choose one of these to begin printing your notes.

You may notice that a text style you chose is not appearing on your print-out. This is because some printers cannot print every type of text style.


Importing Text From Another Program Into Individual Card 4

If you've entered information about your family into another program such as a word processor, you may be able to copy that information into Individual Card 4 without retyping. To do this, the other program must be able to copy, or **export**, your information to an ASCII file. An ASCII file is a generic file that many programs can read and create. Check the manual for your other program to see if and how you can export your information for an individual to an ASCII file. Look under "ASCII" or "Export" in the Index of the other program's manual.

Once you've created the ASCII file in the other program, you can import its contents into someone's Individual Card 4. To do this:

1. Go to that person's Individual Card 4.
2. Position the cursor where you want to insert the information you're importing.
3. Press  to display the Notes Menu.
4. Select **F – File**.
5. Select **I – Import text file**.


Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Import Text File from Disk**” window.

6. Select the ASCII file that you want to import into your Notes.
7. Press .

Family Tree Maker inserts a copy of the information in the ASCII file into Individual Card 4.

Note: To export your notes to an ASCII file for use in *Biography Maker* or another program, see Chapter 6, “The Data Exchange Utility.”

The Marriage Card

The Marriage Card contains fields where you can record information about a marriage event such as a divorce or a special anniversary, or record information about meeting events for partners who are not married. You can get to the Marriage Card by pressing  from the Family Card, and selecting Marriage Card from the Individual Card selection window.

DISPLAYING A DIFFERENT FAMILY CARD

A complete family tree is, of course, made up of more than just one nuclear family. Once you fill out your first Family Card, you need to continue filling out Family Cards to finish describing your ancestors and descendants. Family Tree Maker makes it easy for you to get to other Family Cards so that you can quickly see or change them.

Note: Be sure to save all of these Family Cards in one card file so the information contained on them can be printed in the same family tree.

You can display the Family Cards of parents, children, and siblings by pressing keys from any Family Card. There's an index of all the individuals in your card file that you can use to find and display any Family Card almost instantly, no matter how many cards you have. This section tells you how to get to all these cards.

Kenneth & Constance F4 - Parents of Constance F5 - Parents of Kenneth F2 - Index of names

Husband: Kenneth Lafferty Hess
 Date born: January 22, 1953 in Warren, Trumbull Co., OH
 died: _____ in _____

Wife: _____
 Date born: _____
 died: _____

Marriage date: _____ Status: _____
 Marriage location: Warren, Trumbull Co., OH

Children [F6] - Family card of child Sex Birth dates

1	Amber		
2			
3			
4			
5			

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Richard & Phyllis F4 - Parents of Phyllis F5 - Parents of Richard F2 - Index of names

Husband: Richard Morton Hess
 Date born: February 23, 1925 in Fort Wayne, Allen Co., IN
 died: _____ in _____

Wife: Phyllis Irene Lafferty
 Date born: July 17, 1928 in Harrisburg, Dauphin Co., PA
 died: _____ in _____

Marriage date: December 9, 1951 Status: M
 Marriage location: Warren, Trumbull Co., OH

Children [F6] - Family card of child Sex Birth dates

1	Kenneth Lafferty Hess	M	January 22, 1953
2	Jeffrey Richard Hess	M	August 12, 1955
3	Linda Elaine Hess	F	March 28, 1962
4			
5			

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Figure 3-14. An individual is on two Family Cards

Note: Every individual appears on at least two Family Cards. An individual appears as a child at the bottom of his or her parents' Family Card and also as a husband or wife (or potential husband or wife) on a different Family Card. When you enter an individual on one card, Family Tree Maker automatically places that individual on the other card to make it easy for you to add new information as it's required (see Figure 3-14).

Family Tree Maker doesn't consider someone to be married until you enter a spouse.

An individual appears on additional Family Cards if that individual has had (or currently has) more than one spouse. An individual appears on one additional Family Card for each additional spouse. Enter children on the Family Cards with their biological parents. Do not enter them on cards with their step-fathers or step-mothers. For information on how to create additional Family Cards for additional marriages, see "Other Spouses" on page 80.

Parents' Family Card

To add the parents of an individual to your stack of Family Cards, display the parents' own Family Card.

To display the parents of the wife, press **F4** from her Family Card. To display the parents of the husband, press **F5**.

Child's Family Card

To see the Family Card of a child:

1. Place the cursor on the child in the list at the bottom of his/her parents' Family Card.
2. Press **F6**.

If the cursor isn't on the name of a child, you'll see the Family Card of the first child listed in the Family Card when you press **F6**. If there is no first child, a message is displayed telling you so.

Siblings' Family Card

A sibling is an individual's brother or sister. To move to the Family Card of a husband's or wife's sibling:

1. Place the cursor on the name of the husband or wife.
2. Press **alt** + **F8** to see the previous sibling of the husband or wife.
3. Press **F8** to see the next sibling of the husband or wife.

If there is no next or previous sibling, pressing **alt** + **F8** or **F8** displays a message.

Other Spouses

When an individual has more than one marriage, you must create a separate Family Card for each additional spouse.

Creating Additional Spouses

To create the Family Card for another spouse:

1. Bring up the Family Card that shows the husband or wife for whom you're creating another spouse. (Use either the Index of Names, page 86, or Find individual, page 81, to change Family Cards.)
2. Press **F3**.
3. Select **Create another spouse** for the husband or wife.
4. Enter the name of the new spouse in the new Family Card.

The message “F3 – Other spouses” appears following the name of a husband or wife with additional spouses.

Displaying the Family Card of Other Spouses

To see the Family Cards from other marriages:

1. Press **F3** from the Family Card to see the list of spouses for the current husband and wife.
2. Highlight one of the couples on the list and press **Enter**.

Family Tree Maker displays their Family Card.

Find Individual

Using the **Find individual** feature, you can quickly find anyone in your card file. You can search for individuals using names, dates, events, comments, or even phrases in Individual Card 4 – Notes. You can also search for individuals using parts of information. For example, you can type “jo” and find the name “Jonathan.” Additionally, you can search for all people with common information, such as a last name, and you can edit their information along the way.

Searching By Name

To search for a certain person’s name in your card file, from any Family Card:

1. Press **F7** to choose Find individual.

Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Find Individual**” screen, shown in Figure 3-15 on page 82.

2. Type the name of the person you wish to find.

If you’re not sure of the exact name, type any part of the name. Family Tree Maker will find any name containing those same letters. For example, if you type **hess**, Family Tree Maker will find “Kenneth Hess,” “Hessel Smith,” “George Chess, III,” and so on.

3. Press **F7** to begin searching.

Family Tree Maker displays the “**FOUND!**” message and the Family Card of the first person who matches your request.

If you like, you can edit this Family Card, and then continue your search by pressing **F7** twice.

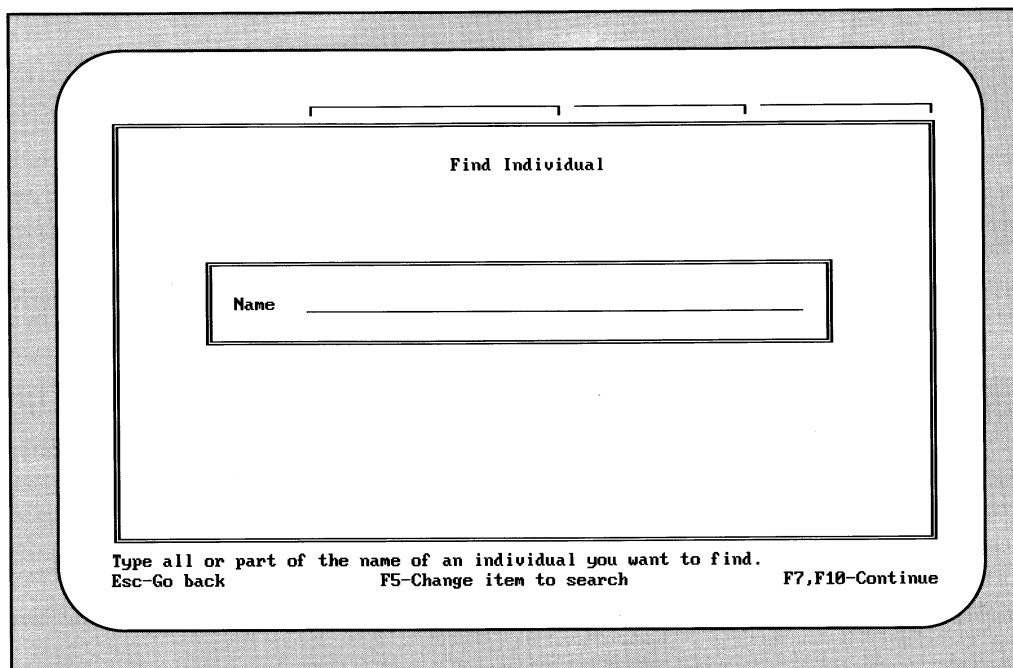


Figure 3-15. The Find Individual screen

In fact, you can do anything in the program — move to different Family Cards, print trees, display the Index of Names, etc. No matter what editing you do, Family Tree Maker will always continue the search from the last match found when you press **F7** twice.

4. Press **F7** to find the next match.

Continue pressing **F7** until you're done searching, or until Family Tree Maker runs out of matches. Or, press **Ctrl** + **F7** to go back to previous matches.

5. Press **Esc** to quit searching.

If you didn't find the name you were looking for, try typing a smaller portion of the name. You can search on any part of a word. For example, type **sm** to look for the last name "Smith."

Searching For Other Items

Family Tree Maker can also search for dates, locations, and comments. For example, to search for all individuals born at a certain time, from any Family Card:

1. Press **F7** to choose Find individual.

Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Find Individual**” screen, shown in Figure 3-15.

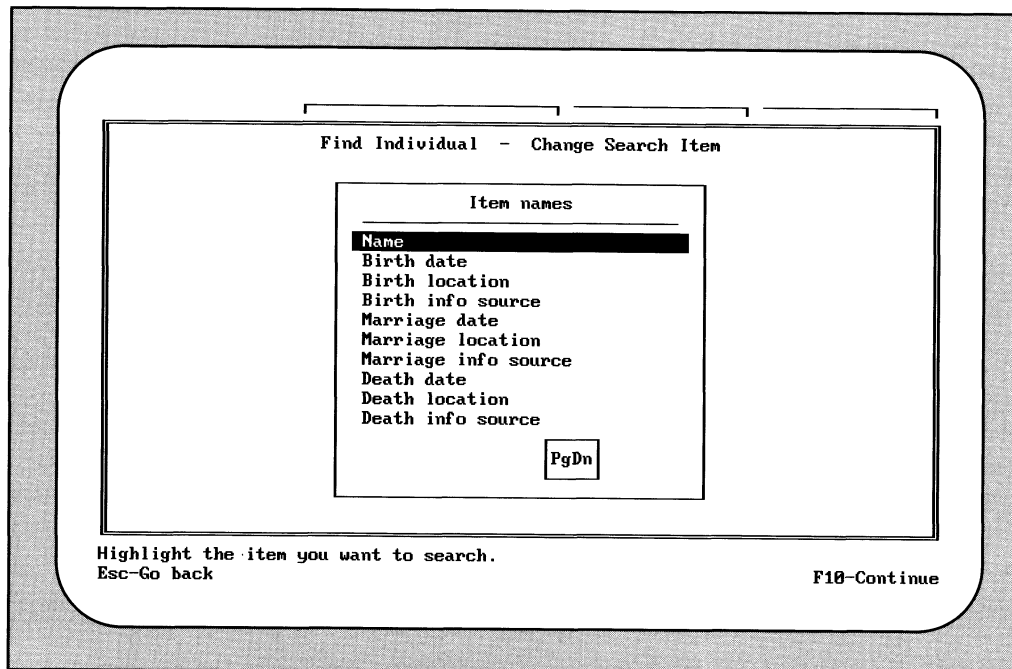


Figure 3-16. Finding other types of information

2. Press **F5** to change the item you wish to search. Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Find Individual – Change Search Item**” screen, shown in Figure 3-16.
3. Highlight “Birth date” and press **Enter**.

Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Find Individual**” screen again. It’s very similar to the screen in step 1, except now it prompts you for a birth date instead of a name.

4. Type a date.

If you want to find people born in October, type **October**. If you want to find people born before October of 1988, type **<October 1988**. You can type a whole date, or a partial date. See Figure 3-17 on page 85 for other ways to search for dates.

-
-
5. Press **F7** to begin searching.

Family Tree Maker displays the Family Card of the first person born on the date or range of dates you specified. The bottom of the screen shows the “FOUND!” message, and counts the number of people who have been found so far.

If you like, you can edit this Family Card, and then continue your search by pressing **F7** twice.

6. Press **F7** to find the next match.

Unless there is only one person meeting your request, the second person’s Family Card is displayed.

7. When you’re done editing, press **F7** to find the next match.

8. Continue searching for individuals until Family Tree Maker displays the message, “FOUND! This is the last one.”

9. Press **alt** + **F7** to go back to previously found cards, or press **esc** to quit searching.

Searching Tips

- Don’t worry about capitalization. Family Tree Maker ignores capitalization when searching.
- Don’t worry about punctuation. Family Tree Maker ignores punctuation when searching.
- You can use any allowable date format. Even though we used only one format in Figure 3-17, feel free to experiment with different date formats, and even partial dates. See page 58 for a list of allowable date formats.
- You can use Find individual to find and fill in the empty fields in your card file. Simply type = instead of a name, date, comment, etc. For example, to find all empty marriage date fields, pick “Marriage date” from the “Find Individual – Change Search Item” screen and type = into the field. Then press **F7**.
- If you’re using a mouse, you can click **<** or **>** in the lower right hand corner of the Family Card to search for the previous or next match.

You type this	Family Tree Maker finds this in the fields you specify
=	All occurrences where that field is empty
10/2/1988	All occurrences of the date October 2, 1988
<10/2/1988, or BEFORE 10/2/1988, or BEF 10/2/1988	All dates before October 2, 1988, including dates entered as "Before October 2, 1988"
<=10/2/1988	The date October 2, 1988 and all dates before it, including dates entered as "Before October 2, 1988"
>10/2/1988, or AFTER 10/2/1988, or AFT 10/2/1988	All dates after October 2, 1988, including dates entered as "After October 2, 1988"
>=10/2/1988	The date October 2, 1988 and all dates after it, including dates entered as "After October 2, 1988"
ABOUT 10/2/1988, or CIRCA 10/2/1988, or EST 10/2/1988	All dates entered as "About October 2, 1988," "Circa October 2, 1988," or "Est October 2, 1988"
10/2/1988..10/2/1990, or >=10/2/1988..<=10/2/1990	All dates between October 2, 1988 and October 2, 1990 including those two days
>10/2/1988..<10/2/1990	All dates between October 2, 1988 and October 2, 1990 not including those two days
UNKNOWN or ?	All dates entered as "Unknown" or "?"

Figure 3-17. Searching for dates

Index Of Names

The **Index Of Names** lists every individual in your card file alphabetically by last name. It's often the quickest way to display a different Family Card. Just highlight an individual's name and press **Enter**.

To bring up the Index of Names, press **F2** from the Family Card.

To move through the list, use **↑**, **↓**, **PgUp**, and **PgDn**.

To rearrange the list:

1. Press **F3**.
2. Use **↑** or **↓** to highlight a different arrangement. The index works much more quickly when names are arranged by last name.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Index of Names". Inside the window, there are two columns: "Type name:" and "Date born:". The following table represents the data shown in the screenshot:

Type name:	Date born:
Hess, Walter Eugene	December 20, 1947
Hess, William Jacob	October 31, 1873
Hill, Margaret	January 8, 1912
Hoffman, Anna Elisabeth	October 10, 1826
Hubbard, Clarissa	July 18, 1820
Hughfield, Catherine	June 24, 1832
Irish, Constance Louise	August 25, 1947
Jett, Zephora Ann Elizabeth	March 12, 1876
Jr., Robert Randall Hancock	December 19, 1975
Juliana	1804
Kelly, James	1842
Kelly, William	1792

Below the table, there are two buttons: **PgUp** and **PgDn**. At the bottom of the window, the following text is displayed: "Constance Louise 1st Spouse: Kenneth Lafferty", "Esc-Go back", "↑ Scroll ↓", "F3-Arrangement", "F7-Find individ'l", and "F10-Continue".

Figure 3-18. The Index of Names

3. Press **Enter**.

To quickly find an individual, just start typing his or her last name . . . and, with each character you type, you get closer to the name you are looking for. The name will appear, as you type, on the "Type name: _____" line. You can type part or all of the name, as long as it is in the same format as the Index of Names (Last name, First name Middle name). Press **Enter** when you reach the correct individual. See Figure 3-18, above.

Note: If you try this when the Index of Names is arranged by birthdate order rather than last name, you will get an error message. If you still want to use this feature, simply change the arrangement in the Index of Names back to Last name. Otherwise, you can utilize one of the other search methods described in “Searching Tips,” earlier in this chapter.

Family Tree Maker shows you the Family Card with the selected individual as a husband or wife. If the individual has been married more than once, Family Tree Maker shows you the Family Card of the first marriage.

Another way to display an individual quickly is to use the **Find individual** command from within the Index of Names. Using this feature, you can jump right to someone using their full name, or you can use a partial name to help remind you of someone’s full name (e.g., if you forget Ken’s last name, you can search through all the names with “Ken” in them until you arrive at the one you want — Kenneth L. Hess).

To quickly find an individual’s name in your Index of Names:

1. Press **F7**.

The Find individual screen appears, prompting you for a name.

2. Type an individual’s name.

If you’re not sure of the exact name, type any part of the name. Family Tree Maker will find any name containing those same letters. For example, if you type **hess**, Family Tree Maker will find “Kenneth Hess,” “Hessel Smith,” “George Chess, III,” and so on.

3. Press **F7** to begin searching.


The name of the first individual meeting your request is displayed.

If this is the person you’re looking for, you can press **Enter** to display his or her Family Card and skip the next step.

4. Press **F7** to continue searching. Or, press **Off** + **F7** to go back to previous matches.

Note: If you didn’t find the name you were looking for, try typing a smaller portion of the name. You can search on any part of a word. For example, type **sm** to look for the last name “Smith.”


TYPING SAVER

One of the best ways to save time and avoid making mistakes is to let Family Tree Maker do some of your typing for you. Using the **Typing saver** feature, you can assign the words or phrases that you type repeatedly to function keys (F1, F2, etc.). Thereafter, you simply hold down  and press the function key whenever you want Family Tree Maker to type the word or phrase for you. It's perfect for names and locations that are common in your family.

Here are the basic steps needed to use the Typing saver (details follow):


1. Choose **Typing saver** from the **Edit card file** submenu.
2. Enter the words or phrases that you want to have Family Tree Maker type for you.
3. Escape back to the Family Card.
4. Position your cursor where you want your text to appear.

This can be on any field in any card: a Family Card, an Individual Card, a Marriage Card, a Meeting Card, etc.

5. Press and hold down  while you press the function key (F1, F2, etc.) for the word or phrase you want to enter.

How To Use The Typing Saver

The following example shows how to use the Typing saver to enter a last name automatically. From any Family Card:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **E – Edit card file**.
3. Select **V – Typing saver**.

The “**Typing Saver**” screen appears, as shown in Figure 3-19.

Notice that your cursor is blinking in the field labeled “Shift+F1.”

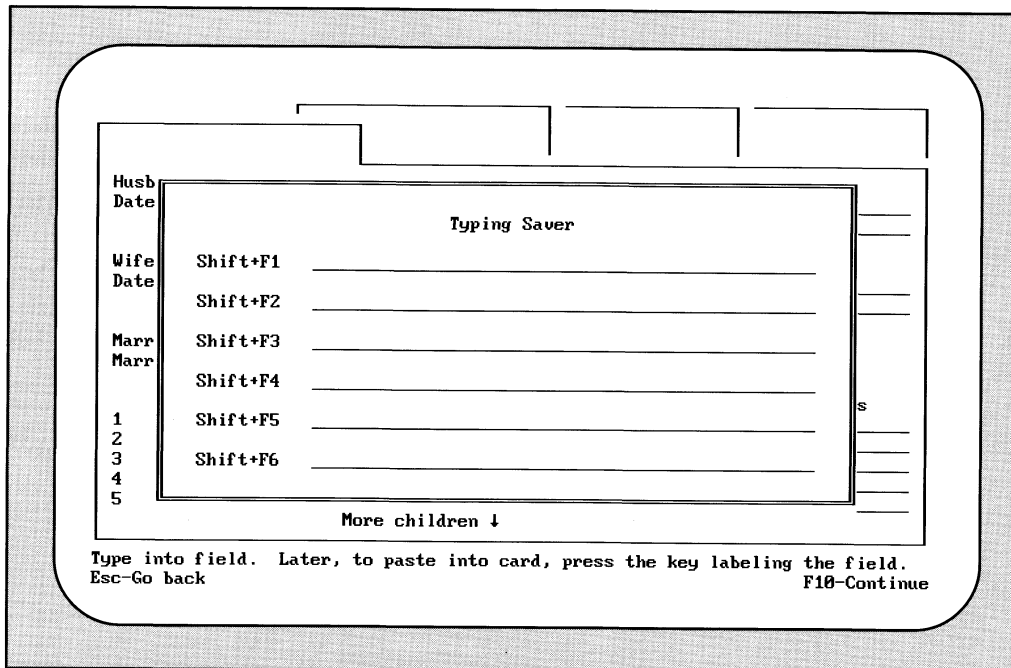


Figure 3-19. The Typing Saver screen

4. Type your last name.
5. Press **F10** to exit the Typing saver.
6. Display the Family Card where you are the husband or wife.
7. Position the cursor under your name.

Next, you'll temporarily delete your name.

8. Hold down **Ctrl** and press **Y**.

Your name should disappear. Now you'll see how easy it is to enter information using the Typing saver. Please follow the next steps **exactly**, and **do not** press **Enter**.

9. Type your first name.
10. Press the space bar once.
11. Hold down **Shift** and press **F1**.

Presto! Your last name appears automatically. Once you enter text into the Typing saver, you can have Family Tree Maker "type" it for you as many times as you like.

Special Tips

Once you've entered information into the Typing saver, there are a few things to note as Family Tree Maker "types" that information for you:

- If you're in overwrite mode (if your cursor is small), the text that Family Tree Maker "types" for you will write over any text to the right of your cursor.
- If you're in insert mode (if your cursor is larger), the text that Family Tree Maker "types" for you will be inserted between your cursor and any text to the right.
- If the text that Family Tree Maker is trying to "type" for you won't fit between the cursor and the end of your line, Family Tree Maker will "type" as much text as possible, leaving off any characters that don't fit.

A Typing Saver Short-Cut

To save time, you can insert information into the Typing saver without actually going to the "Typing Saver" screen. To do this:

1. Position your cursor in a field containing information you need to type repeatedly.
2. If the field is empty, type your information now.
3. When the information is correct, hold down **Ctrl** and press **F1**.

This step replaces going to the "Typing Saver" screen. Family Tree Maker asks you to assign the information in the current field to a function key.

4. Choose a function key, and press **Enter**.
5. Move your cursor to another field where you want to enter this information.
6. Hold down **Shift** and press that function key.

Family Tree Maker "types" your information for you.

KINSHIP

Use the Kinship feature to see how people are related to each other. All you do is select two people, and Family Tree Maker will tell you how they are related.

To see how two people are related, from any Family Card:

1. Press **F6** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **O – Options**.

3. Select **K – Kinship**.

The first of three Kinship screens appears.

4. Select the first of the two individuals whose kinship you want to identify.

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find Individual command in this list. Simply press **F7** and type the individual's name. Press **F7** to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g. type **sm** to find "Smith").

5. Press **F10** to continue.

The screen "**Kinship – Step 2 of 3**" appears.

6. Select the second of the two individuals whose kinship you want to identify.

7. Press **F10** to continue.

Family Tree Maker displays the relationship between the two people. If they are related in more than one way, Family Tree Maker displays each relationship separately. For example, if cousins marry, they are both cousins and spouses.

Family Tree Maker also displays the degree of the relationship. The degree of a relationship is actually a legal term. It simply refers to the number of "steps" between two people who are related by blood.

Canon law is used in most of the U.S.A. It measures the maximum number of steps from the nearest common ancestor. In a lineal relationship, each generation is one degree. For example, you are 2 direct steps away from your first cousin, so the degree is 2.

The degree in civil law represents the total number of steps through the blood line that separate two individuals. For example, there are 4 steps from you to your grandparent and then back down to your first cousin, so the degree is 4.

8. When you are done, press **F10**.

Or, if you wish to see how a different person is related to the primary individual, press **esc** and repeat steps 6 and 7 above.

Note: Adopted, foster, and children of "unknown" status will show up in Kinship only if you have selected them to print in trees. See "Individual Card 1" on page 64 for details.


SAVING YOUR INFORMATION

You must permanently save your information on your disk before you quit Family Tree Maker or turn off your computer. Once the information is on disk, you can get it again and again. If you take good care of your disk and computer, you'll never have to re-enter the information.


Always save your information in a single card file. The only exceptions are:

- If you're starting a new card file for someone who's completely unrelated to you, such as your neighbor, *or*
- If you have more than 2400 names to enter.


If you have never saved your information, follow these steps to safely save your information. From any Family Card:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu. (See page 94 for a complete description of the Command Menu.)
2. Select **F – File**.
3. Select **S – Save card file to disk**. The “Save Card File to Disk” screen appears, with the cursor at the beginning of the “Card file name” field (see Figure 3-20 on page 93). All your family information is stored in a single card file whose name you enter here. (For information on the “Drive (or directory)” field see page 94.)
4. Type the name for your new card file in the “Card file name” field. The name must be in the standard DOS file name format (8 letters or numbers or less with no blank spaces). Family Tree Maker automatically adds the letters “.FTM” to all your file names if you don't.

Note: A card file will contain information (Family Cards) on all your relatives, so be sure the card file name you choose is one that makes you think of the **whole** family.

5. Press . The file is saved on disk, and you go back to the Family Card you were working on.

If you have saved your card file before, do the following:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **F – File**.
3. Select **S – Save card file to disk**. The “Save Card File to Disk” screen appears, with the cursor at the beginning of the “Card file name” field. The card file you have been working on should appear here. For information on the “Drive (or directory)” field see page 94.

Save Card File to Disk

Husband: _____
Date born _____
die _____

Wife: _____
Date born _____
die _____

Marriage _____
Marriage _____

1 Chil _____
2 Ambe _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

_____tes
1987 _____

Drive (or directory): _____

Card file name: _____

Press Tab → to move between Card file name and Drive.
Esc-Go back

F10-Continue

Figure 3-20 Saving your card file

Since you are still working on the same family, you want to add the new information you just entered to what you saved earlier. To do this, choose the same card file name you used the last time you saved.

4. Press **no** to accept the highlighted name as the name of the file in which you want to save your information. The file is saved, and you go back to the Family Card you were working on.




If you select one of the other names (different from the one you are working on) listed on the “**Save Card File to Disk**” screen a warning message appears. If you select **Yes** to overwrite the file, everything in that file will be *replaced* with what you are currently working on. Selecting **No** returns you to the “**Save Card File to Disk**” screen to save under a different name.

Important: Save your work often (at least every 1/2 hour). If you suddenly lose electrical power (somebody stumbles over your power cord or lightning strikes a neighborhood power line) you will lose all the information you entered since you last saved your card file.

The Drive (or directory) Field

The “Drive (or directory)” field is at the top of the “**Save Card File to Disk**” screen. It contains the location where you store your card file; the drive and subdirectory you specified, if any, during **Program Setup** (see Chapter 1, page 22).


To save the card file to a different drive (or directory):

1. Press Tab  from the “Card file name” field. The cursor moves to the start of the “Drive (or directory)” field.
2. Type the correct drive (or directory). If you receive an error message, it usually means you’ve typed the drive or directory name incorrectly, or specified a location that does not exist. Use the  key to backspace over your typing and type in the correct drive or directory name.
3. Press .

If the “Drive (or directory)” field is empty, the card file is stored in the same place as the Family Tree Maker program. This is where you want it if you are using a hard disk.




The “Drive (or directory)” field tells Family Tree Maker where to look for your card file. If you keep your card file on a diskette, you normally won’t need to specify a directory, just a drive (**B:** for example).


THE COMMAND MENU

The Command Menu is a list of commands that you use to tell Family Tree Maker what you want to do. You bring up the Command Menu by pressing  from any Family Card (see Figure 3-21 on page 95).

To make Family Tree Maker do something usually takes two steps. For each item on the left there is a group of associated commands in the menu on the right. To make a selection, first select an item from the list on the left, then select from the list on the right. The box always moves to surround the list you are selecting from.

To make a selection from the Command Menu (or from any of the other menus), do either of the following:

- Use  and  to move the highlight bar until your choice is highlighted; then press , *or*
- Press the letter or number in front of your choice.

The fastest way to make a selection is to press the letter or number in front of your choice. Press  if you want to change your selection. The rest of this section tells what each menu command is for.

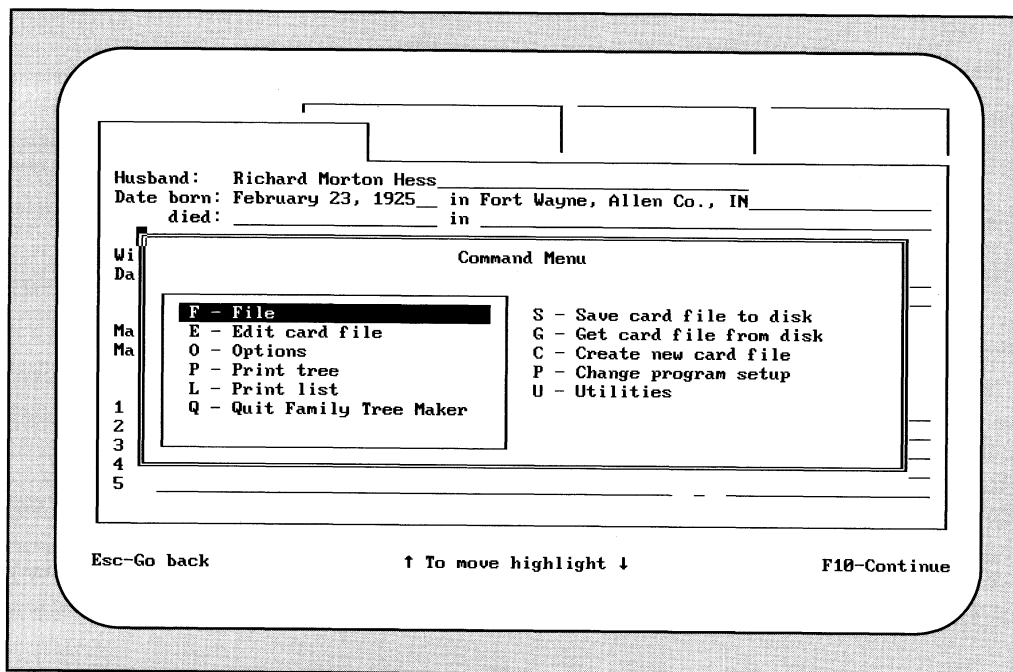


Figure 3-21. The Command Menu with file commands shown

F - File

Select **File** for commands (described below) that affect the program itself or that affect your card file as a whole.

S - Save card file to disk

A **card file** is the file in which all your family information is stored. Select this command to save your card file to disk. Do this periodically while you're entering information, and always one last time before you quit the program or turn off your computer. For details, see "Saving Your Information" on page 92.

Warning: Never turn your computer off before you've saved the card file to disk! All information that isn't saved to disk will be lost. Family Tree Maker warns you if you try to quit the program without saving your card file, but it can't help you if you ignore the warning or turn off your computer without first saving.

G - Get card file from disk

Select this to get your family's card file from disk, or to change the card file you're working on. If you've been working on one family's card file, be sure to save it before you get another one. (For information on the "Drive (or directory)" field see page 94.)

C – Create new card file



Select this to start a new card file from scratch.

P – Change program setup

Select this to change any of the information you originally told Family Tree Maker about your computer system. For details, see Chapter 1, “Program Setup.”

U – Utilities

Utilities let you perform miscellaneous seldom-used tasks such as erasing files from your disk and changing Family Tree Maker’s date format and field labels. A menu appears with five choices.

- E – Erase card file:** Select the card file to erase from the list that appears (or type in a file name). Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm the deletion. Once a file is deleted, it’s gone forever!
- D – Change date format:** What you select from the list that appears determines what the date looks like in all date fields throughout Family Tree Maker. You can also change the double date cutoff year with this utility. The default cutoff year is 1752, the year that the change was made in Britain and the colonies.
- L – Change field labels:** You can change the field labels for the fields that appear on the Individual Cards (occupation, events, medical information, comments, etc.). You can also change the labels “about,” “in,” “Husband,” “Wife,” and “Marriage.” Press  or  to move between the lists of field labels. Move the cursor down the list until you come to the label you want to change; then type over the old label. Repeat this for all of the labels you want to change.
- S – Save selected descendants:** Select this to save part of your family tree to a new card file. See Appendix E for details.
- J – Join card files:** Select this to combine two card files into one. See Appendix E for details.
- R – Get Roots III file:** Select this to import limited information from your Roots III file. See Appendix I for details.

E – Edit card file

Use **Edit card file** to perform certain editing functions (described below) that you seldom need to do.

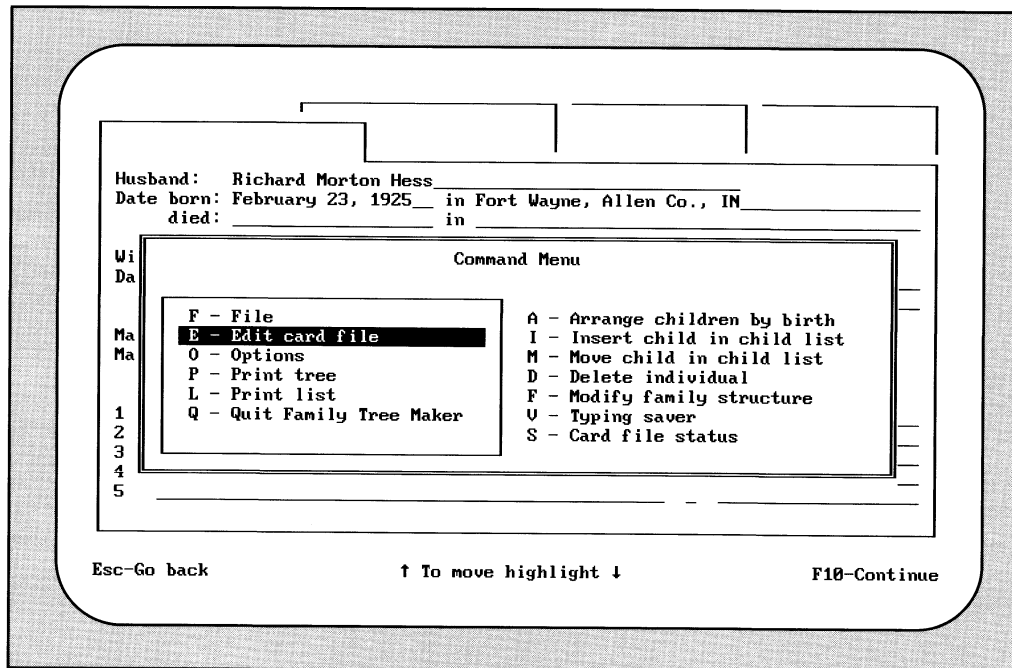


Figure 3-22. The Command Menu with edit commands shown

A – Arrange children by birth

This command arranges the children on the current Family Card by birth date. To do this:


1. Press **F10** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **A – Arrange children by birth**.
3. A message appears notifying you that the children of this marriage will be arranged in order of birth. Press **F10** to continue or **Esc** to cancel and return to the Family Card.

The oldest child's information appears at the top of the list, and the youngest child's information appears at the bottom. Twins or triplets stay in the order in which you entered them.

Note: If a date field is left blank, that child appears at the top of the list. If a question mark (?) is entered, that child appears at the bottom of the list.

I – Insert child in child list



Use this command to place a new child between two existing children on a Family Card. To insert a new individual:

1. Place the cursor on the row where you want the new child's name to appear.
2. Press  to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **I – Insert child in child list**.

The individual whose name the cursor is on moves down (as do the individuals below), leaving the cursor at the beginning of a new empty line. You may now enter the new child's name, sex, and birth date on the new line.

M – Move child in child list

Use this command to rearrange the children within a Family Card. Moving an individual is a two step process. First you identify the person you want to move. Then you say where you want the person to end up. To move an individual:

1. Place the cursor on the individual's name in the list of children on the Family Card.
2. Press  to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **M – Move child in child list**. Family Tree Maker displays an asterisk next to the name of the person you want to move.
4. Place the cursor in the list of children on the Family Card where you want the individual to end up.
5. Press  to display the Command Menu.
6. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **M – Move child in child list** again. Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm the move.

The child whose name the cursor is on moves down (as do the individuals below), and the individual you want to move ends up at the cursor.

Note: To exchange two adjacent children in the list of children on a Family Card, select the lower child as the one to move; then move that child upward.

D – Delete individual

Occasionally you might find that you have added a person to your card file by mistake. **Delete individual** removes people you have added but no longer want in your card file. See "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D for details.

F – Modify family structure

Sometimes you find out that you have to change the relationships you've created in Family Tree Maker. You might find out that two spouses weren't married to each other after all, but to other people in your card file. Or you might need to assign a child to different parents than the ones you've given it. See "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D for details.

C – Detach child (*child does not belong with these parents*): Occasionally you might find that a child doesn't belong with the parents you've assigned it. When that happens, use the **Detach child** command to separate the child from those parents. See "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D for details.

R – Detach spouse (*spouses are incorrectly shown as married*): Occasionally you might find that you have married two people by mistake. When that happens, use the **Detach spouse** command to separate the spouses from each other. See "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D for details.



A – Attach child (*child and parents both in card file, but not attached*): Occasionally you might find that you have neglected to join a child to its parents. **Attach child** is the command you use to do this. See "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D for details.

P – Attach spouses (*both spouses in card file, but not attached*): Occasionally you might find that you have neglected to join two people in your card file as spouses. **Attach spouses** lets you join them. See "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D for details.

V – Typing saver

This feature saves you time and helps prevent mistakes by typing common words and phrases for you. See page 88 for details.

S – Card file status

This command brings up summary information about Family Tree Maker, including the version number, the printer selected, and available memory. It also displays the number of individuals you've entered so far. A quicker way to access this screen is to hold down  and press  from any Family Card.

O – Options

Use **Options** to control how lines are drawn (solid or dotted), to specify plotter pens, and to find out how two people are related.

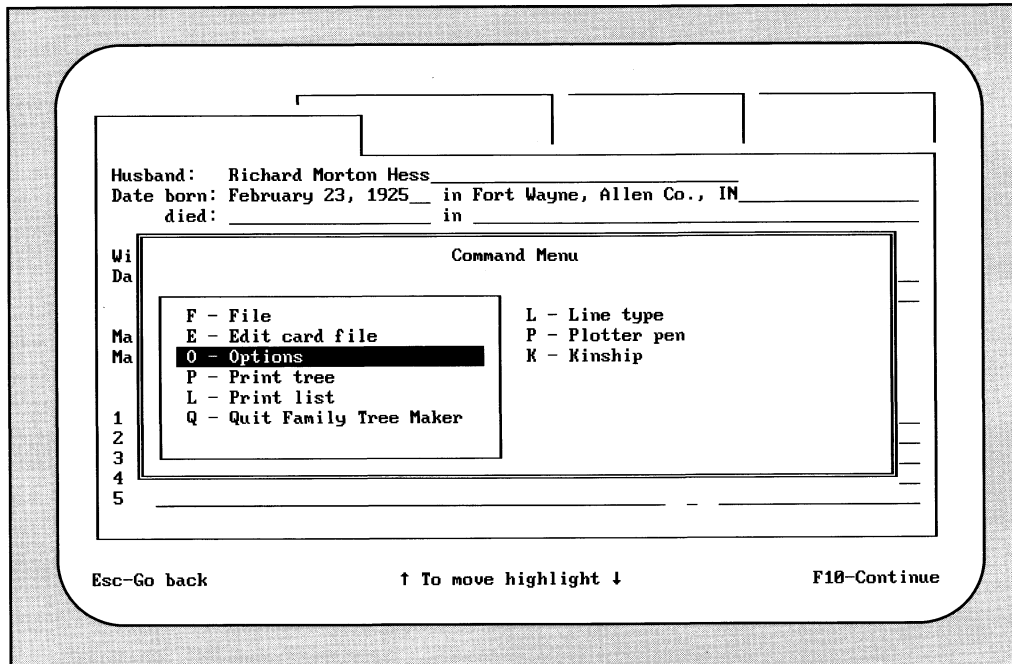







Figure 3-23. The Command Menu with Options commands shown


L – Line type

Sometimes you're not completely sure who the children's parents are, but you make the best guess you can. In order to show uncertain lineage in the family tree, you can use **Line type** to draw a dotted line instead of the usual solid one from the parent to the children. You can use Line type again to change the line back to solid if you later confirm your guess about who is the true parent.

To change the line type from a parent to the children:

1. Make sure that the current Family Card has the names of the children on it.
2. Press  to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **O – Options**, then select **L – Line type**. A list of all the members on the current Family Card appears. (If the cursor was on the name of an individual on the Family Card, that individual appears highlighted.)
4. Use  and  to highlight the parent whose line type you want to change.


5. Use  or  to choose the kind of line you want to use.

6. Press .





The next time you print a tree, the line between that individual and the children will reflect your choice.

P – Plotter pen

Use this command only if you're using a multiple pen plotter to draw trees. You use this command to determine which pen draws lines and boxes, which pen draws text, which pen draws borders, which pen draws enhancements (such as the shading on a box), and whether text is to be slanted (giving it the appearance of italics).

1. Press  to bring up the Command Menu.

2. Select **O – Options**, then select **P – Plotter pen**. A box appears listing pen choices.

3. Use , , , and  to move through the five items. For each item, choose the pen number to use.

4. Press .

K – Kinship

Use this command to find out how two people are related. You pick two people, and Family Tree Maker will tell you how closely, or distantly, they're related. See page 90 for details.

P – Print tree

Use this command to print your family tree in the style and with the options that you choose. Described briefly here, you'll find details about printing a family tree in Chapter 4.

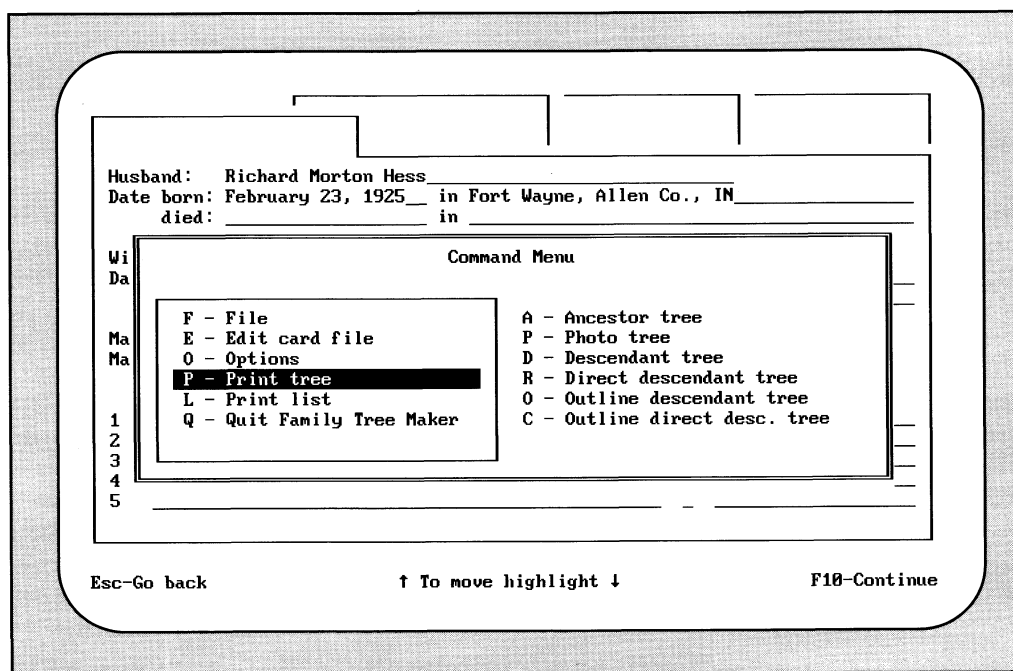


Figure 3-24. The Command Menu with Print Tree commands shown

A – Ancestor tree

Ancestor tree prints a tree showing a person's direct ancestors moving backwards in time. Your own ancestor tree would show you, your parents, grandparents, great-grandparents, and so on. (This type of tree doesn't include your brothers, sisters, aunts, uncles, nieces, nephews, or cousins.) (See Figure 4-1 on page 110.)

P – Photo tree

Photo tree prints an ancestor tree with enough blank space on the page for you to attach photographs of family members (see Figure I-2 on page 5).

D – Descendant tree

Descendant tree prints a tree showing a person's descendants moving forward in time. Your own descendant tree would show you, your children, your grandchildren, and so on. Your great grandfather's descendant tree would show all his descendants — you, your brothers, sisters, aunts, uncles, nieces, nephews, and cousins (see Figure 4-14 on page 128).

R – Direct descendant tree

Direct descendant tree prints a tree showing a person's direct descendants. These trees are similar to descendant trees, but they're much smaller. They start with a relative in the distant past and show the line of descent to a relative in a later generation. Siblings can be shown, but sibling's spouses, cousins, and others who aren't direct descendants are not (see Figures 4-26 and 4-27 on page 143).

O – Outline descendant tree

Outline descendant tree prints the same information as the descendant tree, but in a compact, outline form. You can see the relationships between many generations and individuals in your family tree at a glance with the outline format. See Figure 4-35 on page 154.

C – Outline direct descendant tree

Outline direct descendant tree prints the same information as the direct descendant tree, but in a compact, outline form. You can see the relationships between many individuals in your family tree at a glance with the outline format. See Figure 4-45 on page 168.

L – Print list

Use this command to print lists of family members, Family Group Sheets, calendars, and Custom Reports. Described briefly here, you'll find details about printing these documents in Chapter 5.

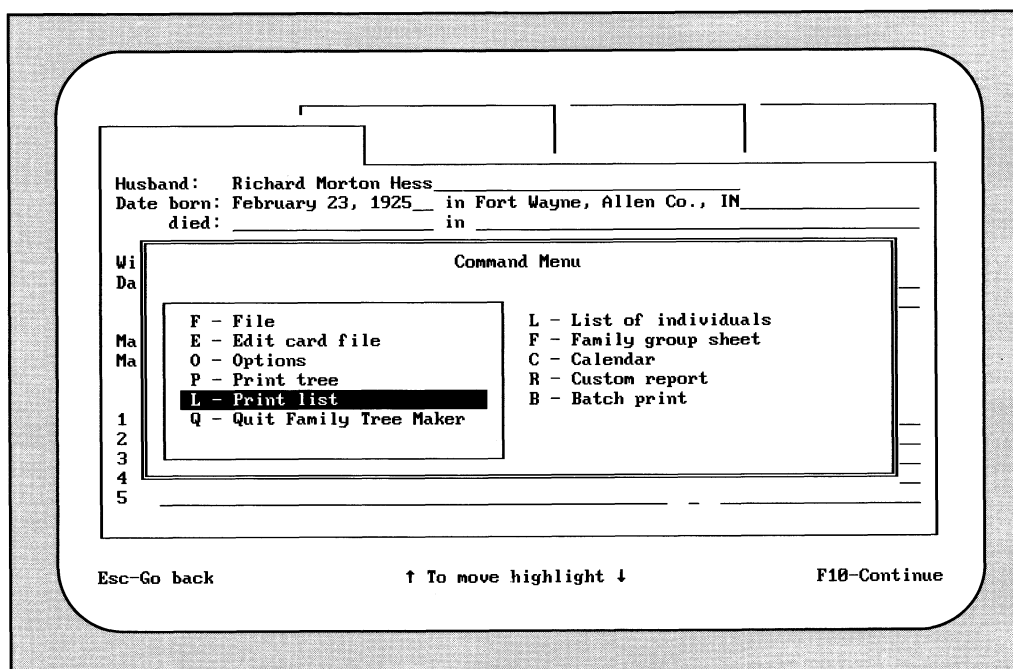


Figure 3-25. The Command Menu with Print List commands shown

L – List of individuals

List of individuals produces a list of all the family members in the card file, along with their birth dates. You can sort the list by name or birth date (oldest first or youngest first). (See Figure I-4 on page 7.)

F – Family group sheet

Family group sheet produces a detailed report on a single nuclear family (husband, wife, and children) including names, event dates, and locations (see Figure I-4 on page 7).

C – Calendar

Calendar produces a real calendar showing your relatives' birthdays, anniversaries, or both (see Figure 5-2 on page 187).

R – Custom Report

Custom report lets you create columnar reports with your choice of information. You can also choose who to include in your custom report: include information about everyone in your card file or only about selected individuals. See Figure 5-3 on page 188.

B – Batch print

Batch print lets you print several Family Cards (or Individual Cards or Family Group Sheets) all at once, for any group of individuals you select. See Figure 5-10 on page 199.

Q – Quit Family Tree Maker

Select this to quit Family Tree Maker. If you've made any changes or additions to the cards in the card file since the last time you saved, Family Tree Maker warns you and gives you the chance to save again before quitting. The next time you get that card file, you will see the last Family Card you were working on.

Chapter 4

PRINTING TREES



Alma Cecilia Mazza and Clorindo Joseph Bloom were married on July 22, 1909 at the church of "Our Lady of Lourdes" in Olema, California. Banner Blue's General Manager was named after Alma, her maternal grandmother.




PRINTING TREES

Printing beautiful family trees is what Family Tree Maker is all about. The six kinds of trees you can print are:

- An **ancestor tree** shows a person and that person's parents, grandparents, great-grandparents, and so on (see below).
- A **photo tree** is an ancestor tree with room for photographs of each individual (see page 125).
- A **descendant tree** shows a person and that person's children, grandchildren, great-grandchildren, and so on (see page 128).
- A **direct descendant tree** is also similar to a regular descendant tree, but takes much less space because it shows direct descendants only (see page 142).
- An **outline descendant tree** contains the same information as a regular descendant tree, but presents it in outline form so you can fit more information on a single page (see page 153).
- An **outline direct descendant tree** is also similar to a regular descendant tree, but it takes the least space of all because it lists only direct descendants, in outline form (see page 167).

You can decide what your tree will look like. You can put titles and notes on your tree, choose styles for the tree's border and its boxes, and select what family information you want to print in those boxes. You can even decide whether your tree will be small enough to fit on a single sheet of paper or big enough to cover a wall.

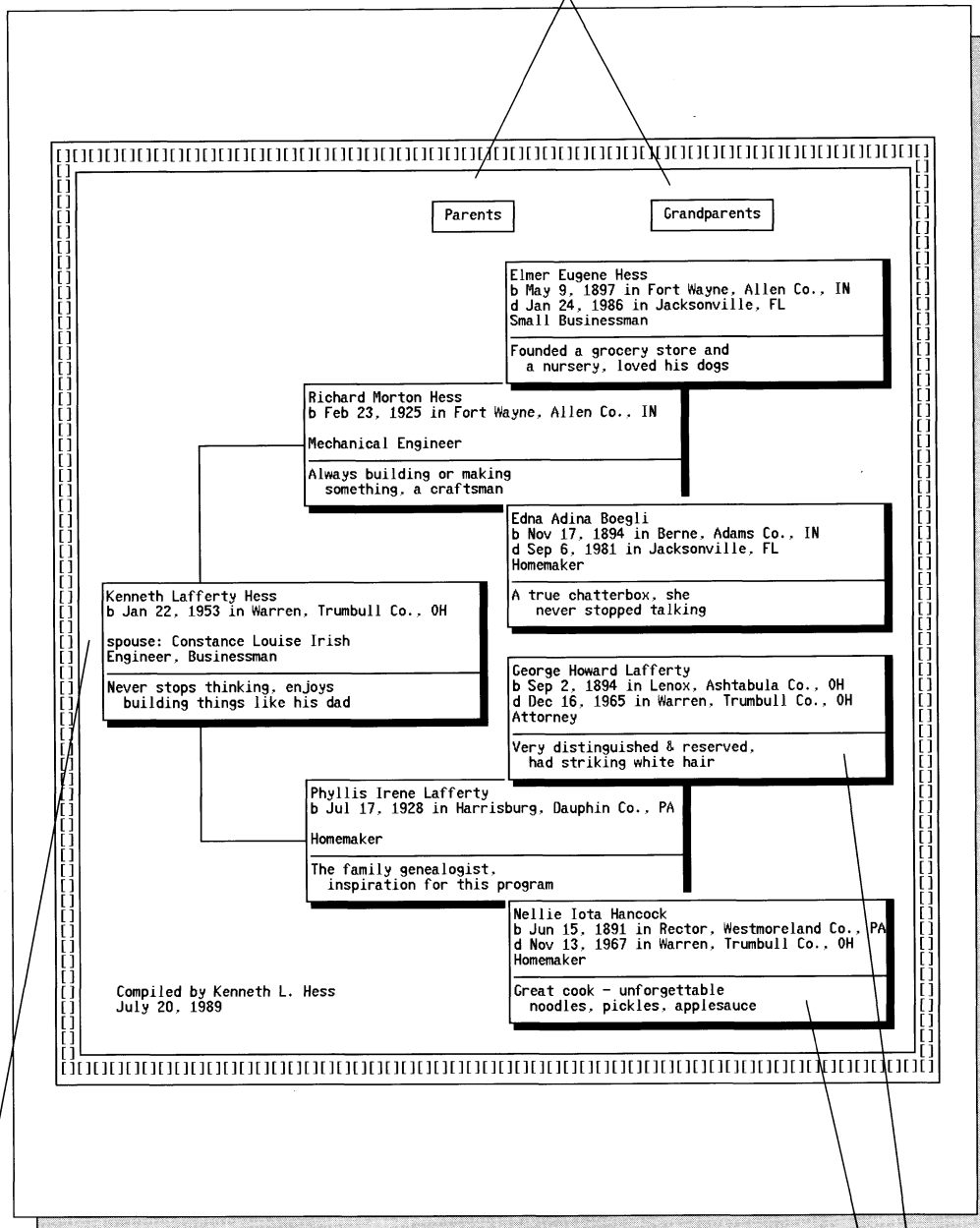
To print trees much faster, see "Draft Printing" on page 203.

Reminder: You can press  at any time to get on-screen help for what you are doing.

PRINTING AN ANCESTOR TREE

An ancestor tree shows a person's direct ancestors moving backwards in time. Your own ancestor tree would show you, your parents, grandparents, great-grandparents, and so on. (It wouldn't include your brothers, sisters, aunts, uncles, nieces, nephews, or cousins — but a descendant tree, described later in this chapter, would.) A sample ancestor tree is shown in Figure 4-1 on page 110.

Each column represents
one generation of ancestors
as shown by these column labels



It is common to print the spouse of the primary individual here

Each husband and wife print opposite one another with the husband on top

Figure 4-1. An ancestor tree

Here are the basic steps to take to print an ancestor tree (details follow):

1. Select the primary individual (the person whose ancestors you want to print).
2. Choose whether you want to print the tree on one page of paper or on more than one.
3. Select the number of generations you want to include.
4. Preview your family tree on-screen before you print it on paper. Optionally, you can change print settings for border style, box style, information to print in each box, and more.
5. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your tree on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press **ESC** to go back to the previous screen.

Selecting The Primary Individual

The first step is to select the primary individual:

1. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **P – Print tree**.
3. Select **A – Ancestor tree**. The first of five Ancestor Tree screens appears.
4. Highlight the person who is to be the primary individual (see Figure 4-2 on page 112).

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press **F7** and type the individual's name. Press **F7** to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g., type "sm" to find "smith").

5. Press **F10**.

Choosing The Tree Size

When the primary individual is selected, Family Tree Maker displays the second Ancestor Tree screen (see Figure 4-3 on page 112). You are now ready to choose the tree size:

1. Use **↑** and **↓** to highlight the size you want.
2. Press **F10** to confirm your choice and to go on to the next screen.

Single page trees can show a maximum of 5 generations and a limited amount of information for each person. A single page tree is convenient to handle, but keep in mind that there is a limit to the amount of information that can be shown on one page!

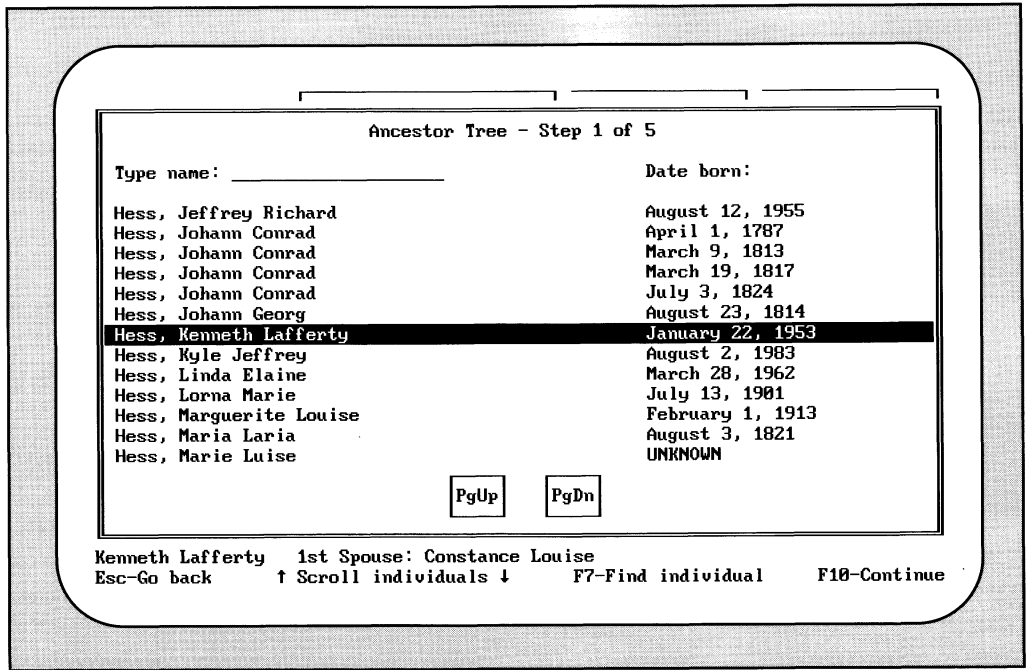


Figure 4-2. Selecting the primary individual

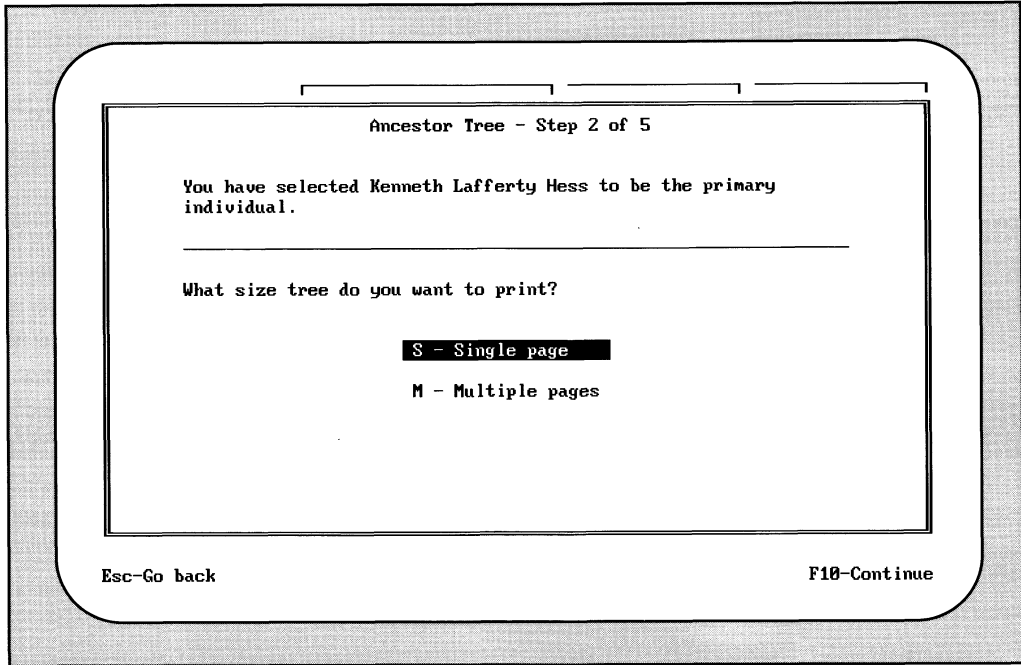


Figure 4-3. Choosing the tree size

Multiple page trees let you print as much information as you want, going back a maximum of 10 generations. Family Tree Maker prints the tree on as many pages as it takes to show the information you ask for. You can then piece the pages together to create one large, beautiful tree.




Note: Multiple page trees can be quite large. For tips on reducing tree size, see “Making Your Multiple Page Trees Smaller” on page 124. You can also create a set of small trees instead of one big tree (see “Creating a Set of Trees” below).

Choosing The Number Of Generations

After you choose the tree size, Family Tree Maker asks how many generations to include in your tree. The screen you see here varies depending on whether you chose **Single page** or **Multiple pages** on the previous screen (see Figures 4-4 and 4-5 on page 114).

Single page trees can have from three to five generations. Multiple page trees can have up to 10 generations. Trees can become huge because each of us has 512 seventh great-grandparents (assuming no one married a cousin) so a 10-generation ancestor tree has 512 boxes in its rightmost column. Each generation makes the tree approximately twice as tall.

To make your choice:

1. Use  and  to highlight the number of generations you want.
2. Press  to confirm your choice and to go on to the next screen.

Occasionally Family Tree Maker may need to abbreviate names, locations, and biographical information to make all the information fit on single page trees (especially in 5-generation trees).

Creating a Set of Trees

Rather than print a tree on multiple pages and then piece the pages together to form a single, large tree, consider printing a set of single page trees. Each page will show 3 generations. Print one tree to show you through your grandparents. Then print additional trees for each grandparent each going back 3 generations. You will end up with a set of trees showing exactly the same information as you would have had with a single, large tree (see Figure 4-6 on page 115).

To print a set of single page trees, each showing 3 generations, do the following:

1. Choose **Single page** for the tree size.
2. Choose **3 generations** for the number of generations.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 as often as you like, with a grandparent on one tree becoming the primary individual on a succeeding tree.

You end up with a set of trees instead of one big tree.

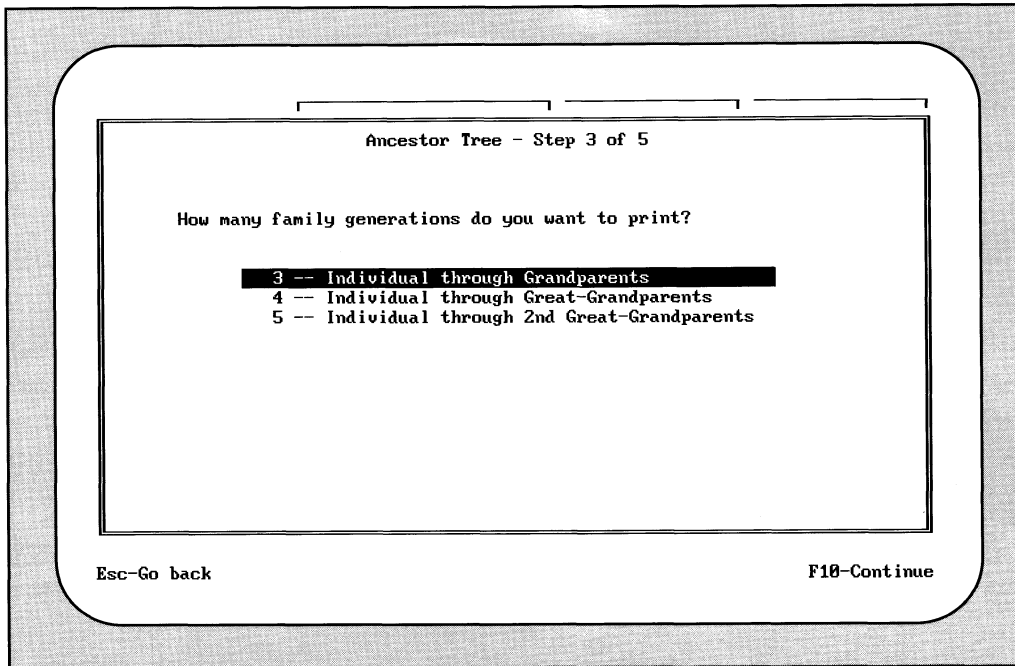


Figure 4-4. Choosing generations for a single page tree

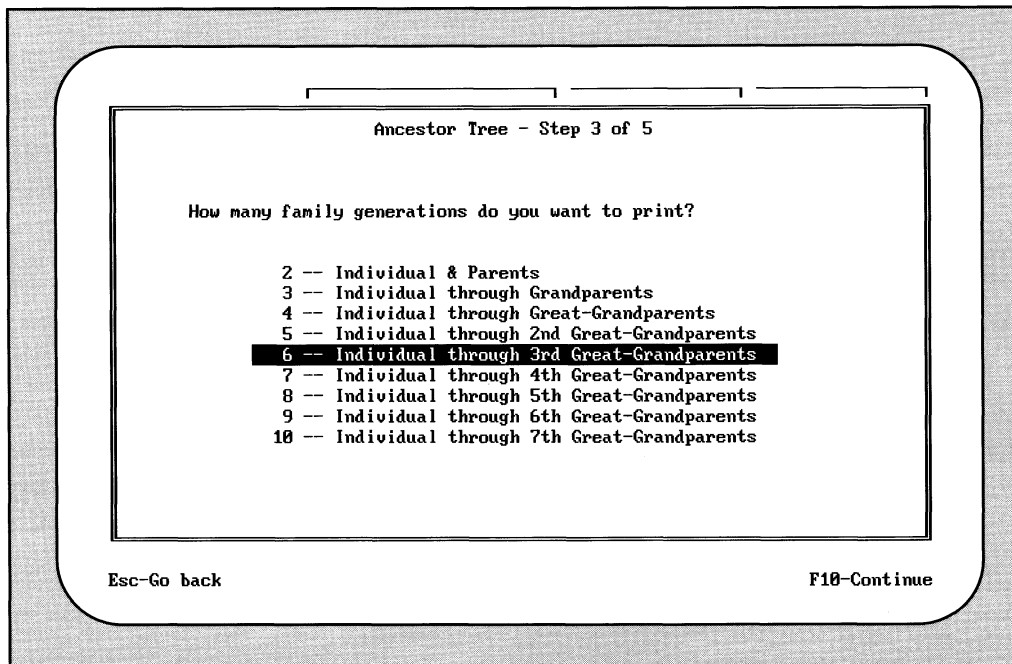


Figure 4-5. Choosing generations for a multiple page tree

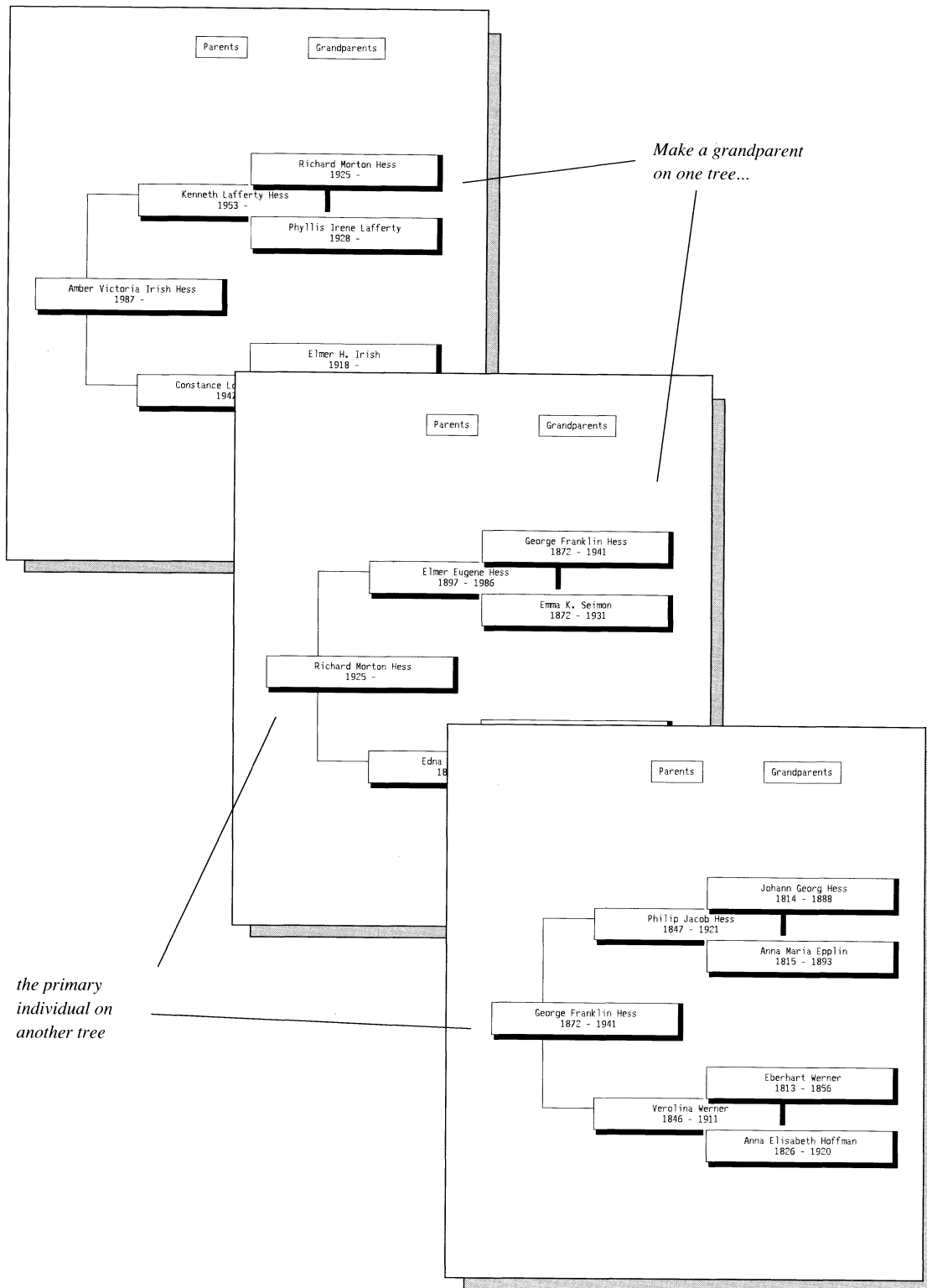


Figure 4-6. A set of ancestor trees

Getting Ready To Print

Family Tree Maker brings you to the screen labeled “Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5.” You can customize how your tree will look by changing the print settings (see Figure 4-7), or you can print your tree immediately (details below).

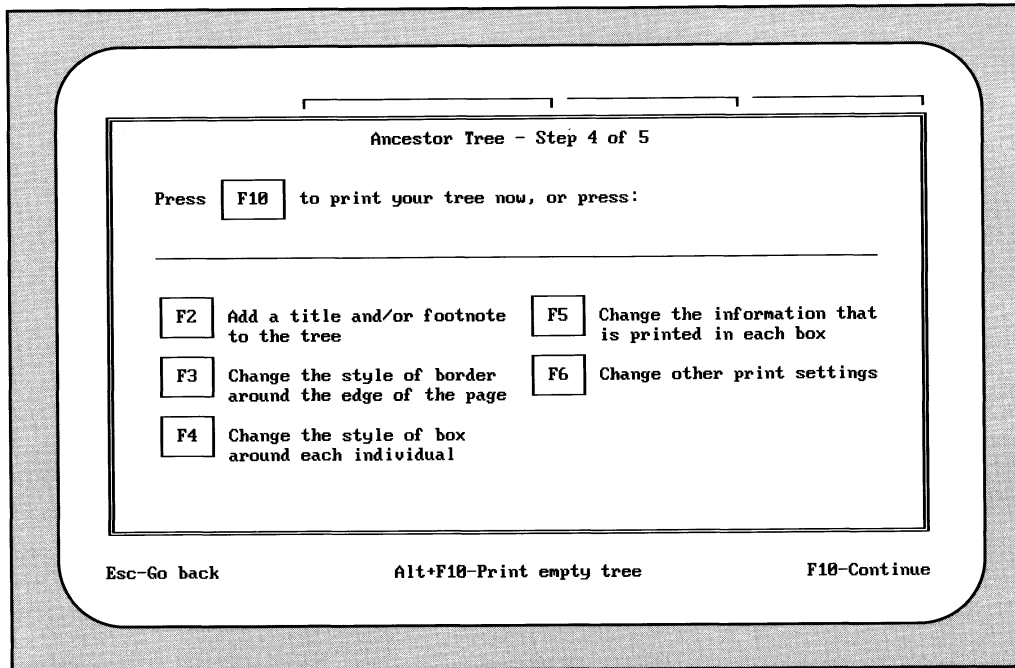


Figure 4-7. Customize your tree or go ahead and print

To print your tree immediately:

1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F10**. The Preview screen appears (the fifth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire tree before printing (details follow).
4. Press **F10** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your tree.

Previewing Your Tree

Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the tree on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your tree will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper.

To go to the primary individual, press **Home**.

To move a full screen in any direction, press **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

To move a little bit to the left or right, press **Ctrl** + **←** or **Ctrl** + **→**.

To move a little bit up or down, press **Ctrl** + **Page Up** or **Ctrl** + **Page Down**.

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction, hold down the **Ctrl** key and click **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

If you want to change what you see here, press **Esc** to go back to the screen labeled “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5**” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your tree in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.

When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press **F10** to print your tree on paper.

Note: When you print some especially large trees, Family Tree Maker might “print” some blank sheets of paper. This is normal; you’ll need these blank sheets when you piece together the sheets into one big tree.

Printing an Empty Ancestor Tree

You can also print an empty ancestor tree. An empty ancestor tree is useful when you’re doing research — you can fill it in by hand when you don’t have your computer with you.

To print an empty ancestor tree, press **Alt** + **F10** from the screen labeled “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5.**” (Press and hold down **Alt** while you press **F10**.)

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your trees. You control graphic elements like borders and box styles, as well as what information to print.

You can use these print-setting features to personalize trees that you give as gifts. Each tree can be a little bit different — there are hundreds of combinations.

Note: You can also control the size of multiple page trees with these print-setting features. See “Making Your Multiple Page Trees Smaller” on page 124.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your tree, press **F2** from the screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5.**” See Figure 4-8, below.

You can type a title that prints at the top center of your ancestor trees. The default title is “Ancestors of *NAME*.” (When Family Tree Maker sees *NAME* in the title, it automatically substitutes the name of the primary individual.) You can have any title you like.

Your footnote can be up to four lines long. It prints in the lower left corner of your ancestor tree, with or without a box around it.

Column labels identify each generation of your tree as the parents, grandparents, or great-grandparents of the primary individual. These labels appear at the top of each column and make it easy to understand the tree at a glance.

To change any of these settings:

1. Use **↑** or **↓** to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, just type it in. If the line requires a yes-no answer, use **←** or **→** to move between choices.

When you’ve finished making changes, press **F10**.

You end up back at the “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Ancestor Tree Title and Footnote

Title: Ancestors of *NAME* _____

Footnote: _____

Draw box around footnote? **Yes** No

Label columns as "Parents," "Grandparents," etc. ? **Yes** No

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-8. Creating a title and footnote

Border Style

To see or to change the border to be drawn around the outside edge of your entire tree, press **F3** from the screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5.**” See Figure 4-9, below.

To see what different borders look like, use **↑** or **↓**. When you’ve found a border you like, press **F10**. Or press a number, both to choose a border style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Note: Different borders look better with different printers. Experiment!

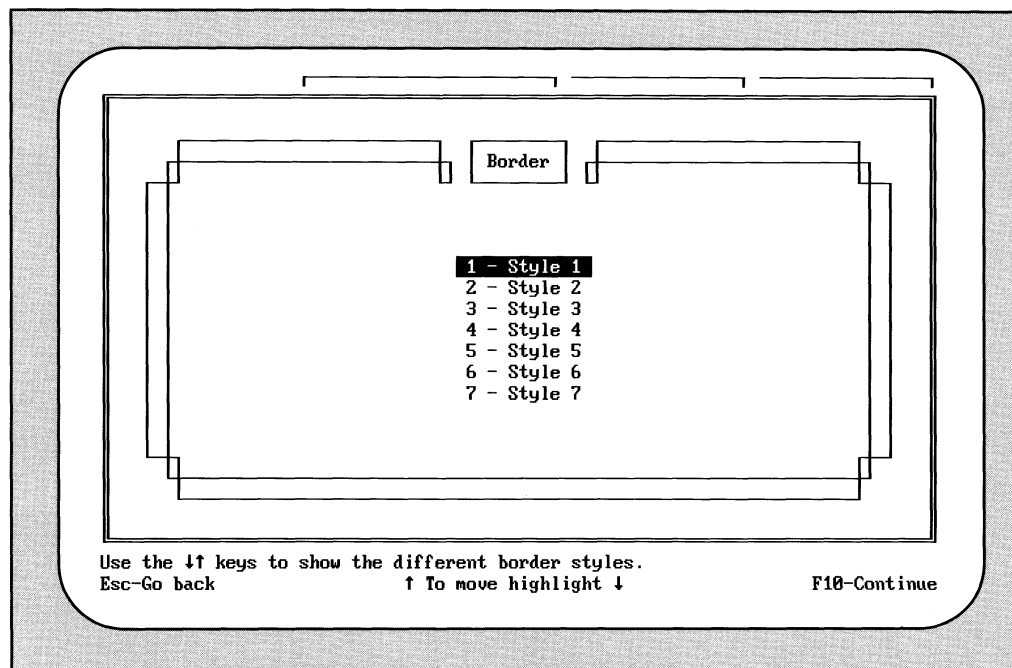


Figure 4-9. Choosing page borders for your tree

Box Style

To modify or examine the style of box for your tree, press **F4** from the screen “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5.**”

Each individual in your tree appears in the box style that you choose. See Figure 4-10 on page 120.

Use **↑**, **↓**, **←**, and **→** to choose a box style you like; then press **F10** to confirm your choice. Or press a number, 1 through 6, both to choose a style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

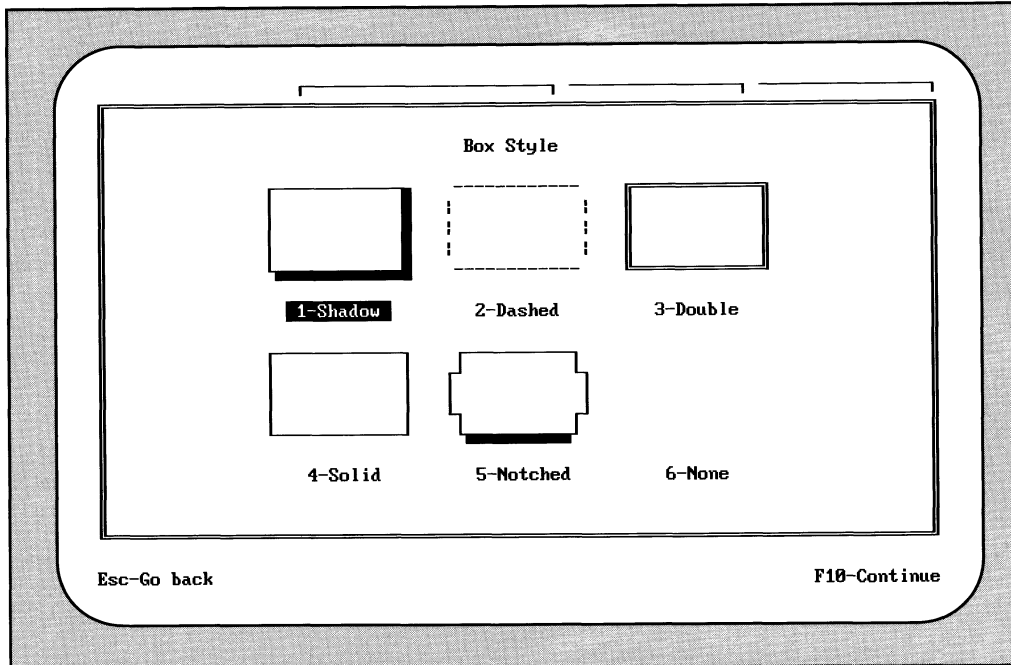


Figure 4-10. Choosing box styles

You end up back at the “Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Selecting Information to Print

To modify or examine the information to print in each box of your tree, press **F5** from the “Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5” screen. See Figure 4-11 on page 121.

The box on the left shows the information to be printed. You can add items to this list or delete them, one at a time, by pressing **F7**. You can also erase them all and start over by pressing **F8**. The message line at the bottom of the screen shows you how many items you can have in total.

To add an item to print in each box of your tree:

1. Use **↓** or **↑** to highlight your choice in the box on the right side of the screen.
2. Press **Enter**.

Names, dates, and locations can appear in a variety of formats and arrangements. Reselect the name or date item to see and/or change its format.

Some formats allow you to print the date and location on the same line (making the box height shorter but the width wider) and others allow you to print them on separate lines (making the box taller but thinner). By carefully choosing the date/location format, you can help control the height and width of your trees.

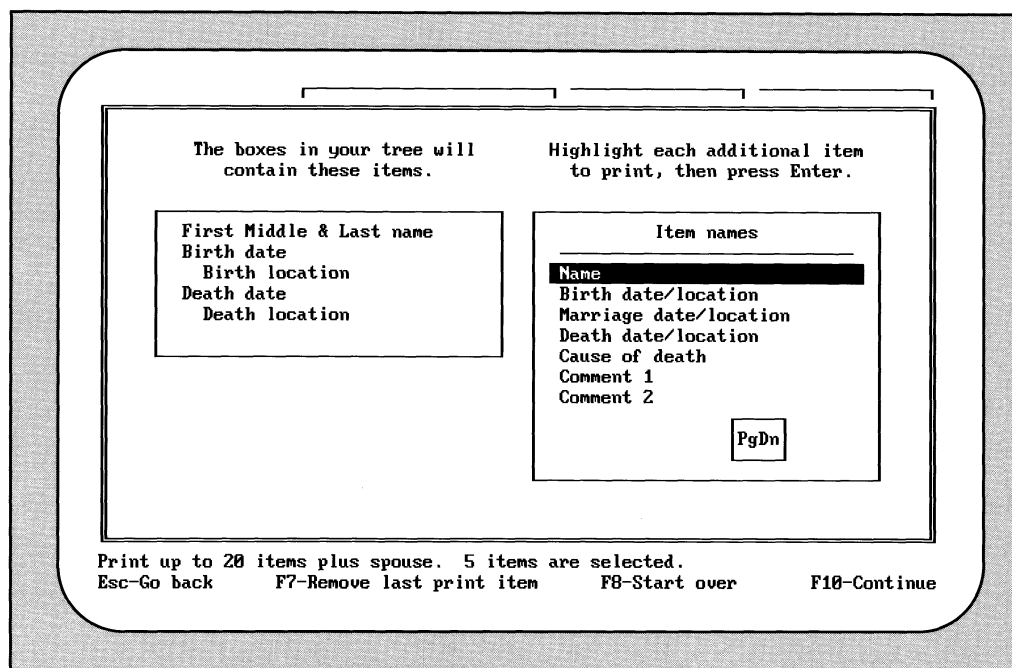


Figure 4-11. Selecting information to print

Event 3, Event 4, Event 5, and Event 6 dates always print on the same lines with their locations.

Statistics, such as age at birth of children, age at death, and age at first marriage, always print with their field labels (for example, “Age at death: 40”). If a “?” prints, it means that there is no information in a date field. If “est” prints, as in “Age at death: 40 est,” it means that a date was uncertain. (A date that is uncertain contains a modifier such as “about,” “before,” or “after.” As always, you should enter an uncertain date instead of nothing.)

You can even place lines between items by selecting **Line across box**, or blank rows between items by selecting **Blank row**. Both choices are near the bottom of the **Item names** box — press **PgDn** several times to see them. You can have as many lines or blank rows in a box as you like. All other items can appear only once.

Note: The spouse of the primary individual prints in the same box as the primary individual, if you select **Spouse** (it’s optional). The spouse of every other individual already appears in its own box. The name of the primary individual’s spouse doesn’t count in the total number of items you can print.

If **Marriage date/location** is selected, it will print as an item in the Husband’s box, and the number of children for that marriage will print as an item in the Wife’s box.

Press **F10** when you’ve finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

For Advanced Users: The Reference number and/or Standard number items can appear in front of an individual's name, or a number can have its own separate line. Standard numbers (Ahnentafel numbers) are generated by a formula; they have nothing to do with reference numbers. The formula states that a person's father is twice that person's number, and a person's mother is twice that person's number plus 1. If your Ahnentafel number is 1, your father's number is 2, and your mother's is 3. After choosing **Standard number** from the **Item names box**, you can specify the starting Ahnentafel number for the primary individual; Family Tree Maker calculates the other numbers.

Other Print Settings

To modify or examine other print settings, press **F6** from the "Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5" screen.

The "Other Print Settings" screen gives you several choices. Figure 4-12 shows the choices available for multiple page ancestor trees.

Other Print Settings

Print empty branches? Yes No

Print labels of empty fields? Yes No

Justify text: Left Center

Maximum box width:
(bigger number makes tree wider)

25 characters 30 characters 35 characters Unlimited

Characters per inch:
(bigger number makes tree narrower)

17.00 17.00

Lines per inch:
(bigger number makes tree shorter)

6.00 6.00

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-12. Other Print Settings (for multiple page trees)

Print empty branches — Do this to help you collect information when you are away from your computer. The empty boxes can be filled out by hand as you find additional information; later you can transfer the information into your computer.

Print labels of empty fields — Field labels for birth, death, marriage, event, medical, location, source, and statistical fields always print if there is information in the field. Choose this if you want the field label to print when the field is empty.







Justify text — “Left” lines text up in a column along the left edge of the box. “Center” centers each line of text in the box.



Maximum box width — This choice tells Family Tree Maker what the largest allowable box size is. Pick a smaller number for a smaller tree. This setting is only available for a multiple page tree (single page trees control this setting for you automatically).

Note: If necessary, Family Tree Maker will abbreviate your information to make it fit in the box size you specify. For example, if you select a very long name format, but a small maximum box width, Family Tree Maker may have to change the name format to a smaller one.

Characters per inch and Lines per inch — If you’ve called for a multiple page tree, you have the options of choosing both the size and line spacing of the characters your printer uses. (Single page trees control these settings for you automatically.)

To change any of these settings:

1. Use , , , and  to move to the line you want to change.
2. Use  or  to highlight your choice on a given line.

Press  when you’ve finished making changes. You end up back at the “Ancestor Tree – Step 4 of 5” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your tree, then print.

You can use the print settings to help control the size of multiple page trees. The longest line of information you print determines the width of the boxes in your tree. The number of items you print in each box determines the height of the boxes. Keeping these facts in mind, a combination of some or all of the following tips will help make your ancestor trees smaller:

- Choose the largest available number for **Characters per inch** and **Lines per inch** (see “Other Print Settings” on page 122).
- If you print dates, choose a format that puts the date and location on separate lines or prints the date only (see “Selecting Information to Print” on page 120).
- Choose a name format that omits middle names (see “Selecting Information to Print” on page 120).
- If you print “Comment” fields, shortening the information entered in them will make your tree narrower (see “Individual Card 2” on page 66 in Chapter 3).
- Printing fewer items per box will reduce the height of your tree (see “Selecting Information to Print” on page 120).
- Omitting borders, titles, and footnotes also makes your tree smaller (see “Changing Print Settings” on page 117).
- Reducing the width of the boxes around individuals will reduce the width of your tree, so you can fit more individuals on each page (see “Maximum box width” on page 123).

Figure 4-13. Making your multiple page trees smaller

PRINTING A PHOTO TREE

Photo trees are special ancestor trees that leave room in each box for photographs. A sample photo tree is shown in Figure I-2 on page 5.

Special Tip: You can create descendant trees with space for photographs by printing lots of blank rows in your descendant tree. See page 152 for more information.


Here are the basic steps to take to print a photo tree:


1. Select the primary individual.
2. Select the number of generations you want to include.
3. Preview your family tree on-screen before you print it on paper.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your tree on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press  to go back to the previous screen.

Selecting The Primary Individual

The first step is to select the primary individual:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **P – Print tree**.
3. Select **P – Photo tree**. The first of four Photo Tree screens appears.
4. Highlight the person you want to be the primary individual.




If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press  and type the individual's name.

5. Press .

Choosing Number Of Generations

After you choose the primary individual, you are ready to tell Family Tree Maker the number of generations you want to appear on the page. Choose 2 generations to accommodate three photos per page; choose 3 for five photos per page. Photo trees only print on one page.

To choose the number of generations:

1. Use  or  to highlight the number of generations you want.
2. Press  to confirm your choice and to go on to the next screen.

Getting Ready To Print

Family Tree Maker brings you to the screen labeled “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4.**” You can customize how your tree will look by changing the print settings (see page 127), or you can print your tree immediately.

To print your tree immediately:

1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F10**. The Preview screen appears (the fourth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire tree before printing (details follow).
4. Press **F10** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your tree.

Previewing Your Tree

Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the tree on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your tree will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper.

To go to the primary individual, press **home**.

To move a full screen in any direction, press **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

To move a little bit to the left or right, press **Ctrl** + **←** or **Ctrl** + **→**.

To move a little bit up or down, press **Ctrl** + **PgUp** or **Ctrl** + **PgDn**.

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction, hold down the **Ctrl** key and click **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

If you want to change what you see here, press **esc** to go back to the screen labeled “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4**” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your tree in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.

When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press **F10** to print your tree on paper.

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your trees. You control graphic elements like borders and box styles, as well as what information to print. You can use these print-setting features to personalize trees that you give as gifts. Each tree can be a little bit different — there are hundreds of combinations.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your tree, press **F2** from the screen “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4.**” For detailed information, see “Title and Footnote” on page 118 in the Ancestor Tree section.

Border Style

To see or to change the border to be drawn around the outside edge of your entire tree, press **F3** from the screen “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4.**”

To see what different borders look like, use **↓** or **↑**. When you’ve found a border you like, press **F0**. Or press a number, both to choose a border style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can modify other settings, or press **F0** to preview your tree, then print.

Note: Different borders look better with different printers. Experiment!

Box Style

To modify or examine the style of box for your tree, press **F4** from the screen “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4.**” Each individual in your tree appears in the box style that you choose.

Use **↑**, **↓**, **←**, and **→** to choose a box style you like, then press **F0** to confirm your choice. Or press a number, both to choose a style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F0** to preview your tree, then print.

Selecting Information to Print

To modify or examine the items printing in your tree, press **F5** from the “**Photo Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen.

For detailed information, see “Selecting Information to Print” in the Ancestor Tree section on page 120. (Note that the **F6** option, Other Print Settings, isn’t available for Photo trees.)

PRINTING A DESCENDANT TREE

Descendant trees show a primary individual (the progenitor) and all his or her children, grandchildren, and so on. Assuming you are not the primary individual, this kind of tree shows more of your family than an ancestor tree — nephews, nieces, and cousins included. A sample descendant tree is shown in Figure 4-14.

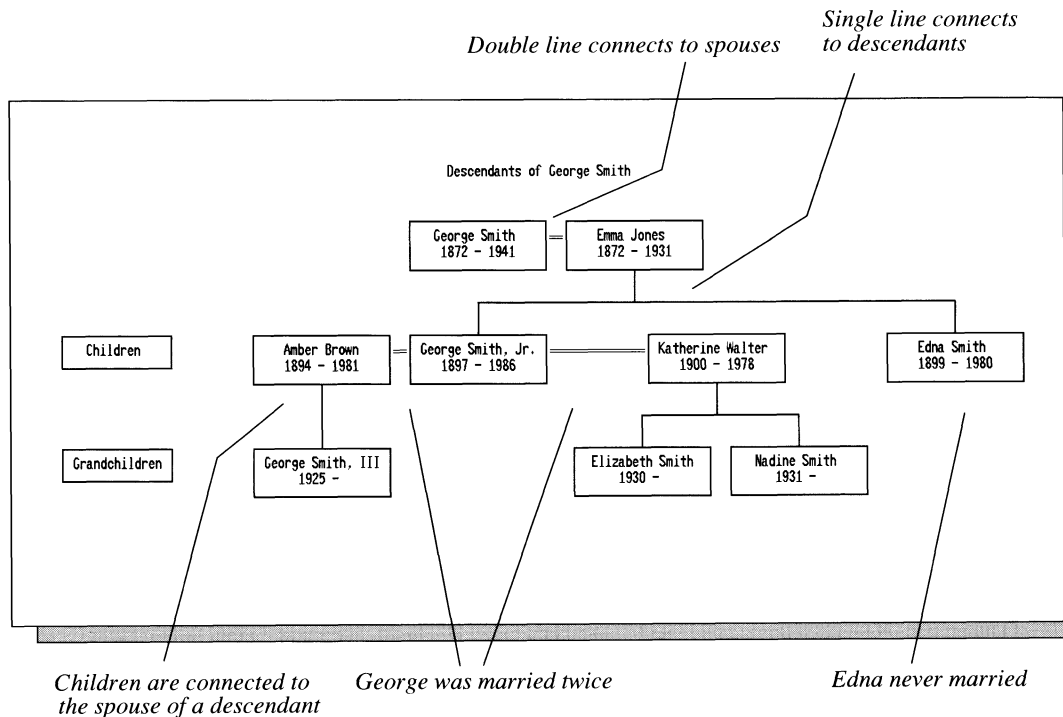


Figure 4-14. A descendant tree

Special Tip: You can create a descendant tree with room for photographs by printing lots of blank rows in your descendant tree. See page 152 for more information.

To print a descendant tree you go through the following steps:

1. Select the primary individual. Typically, you would select one of your ancestors.
2. Select the number of generations you want to include.
3. Preview your descendant tree on-screen before you print it on paper. Optionally, you can change print settings for border style, box style, information to print in each box, and more.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your tree on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press  to go back to the previous screen.

Selecting The Primary Individual

The first step is to select the primary individual:

1. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **P – Print tree**.
3. Select **D – Descendant tree**. The first of four screens appears.
4. Highlight the person you want to be the primary individual (see Figure 4-15 on page 130).

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press **F7** and type the individual's name. Press **F7** to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g., type "sm" to find "smith").

5. Press **F10**.

Choosing The Number of Generations

After you have selected the primary individual, Family Tree Maker displays the "**Descendant Tree – Step 2 of 4**" screen. You are now ready to choose the number of generations. (See Figure 4-16 on page 130.)

The choice you make here determines the number of generations that will appear in the tree. To choose the number of generations:

1. Use **↑** or **↓** to highlight the number of generations you want.
2. Press **F10** to confirm your choice and to go on to the next screen.

Note: Descendant trees are wide, Wide, WIDE. Each generation can triple or quadruple the width of the tree. Giant, wide trees are fun for family reunions, but they're really unwieldy for research. We recommend that you use the outline descendant tree when you're printing a family tree for research purposes (see "Printing an Outline Descendant Tree" on page 153)

To keep your descendant trees manageable, print just a few generations at a time. A set of small descendant trees may suit your needs better than one giant descendant tree (see Figure 4-17 on page 131).

If you want to print one tree instead of a set of trees see "Making Your Descendant Trees Smaller" on page 141 for tips on reducing the size of your tree.

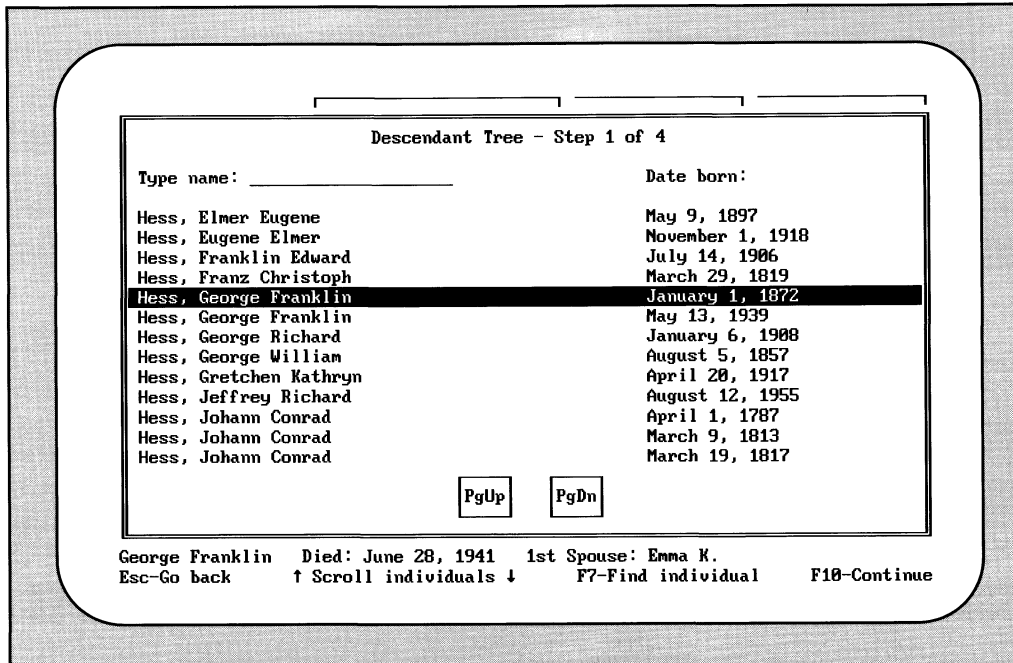


Figure 4-15. Selecting the primary individual

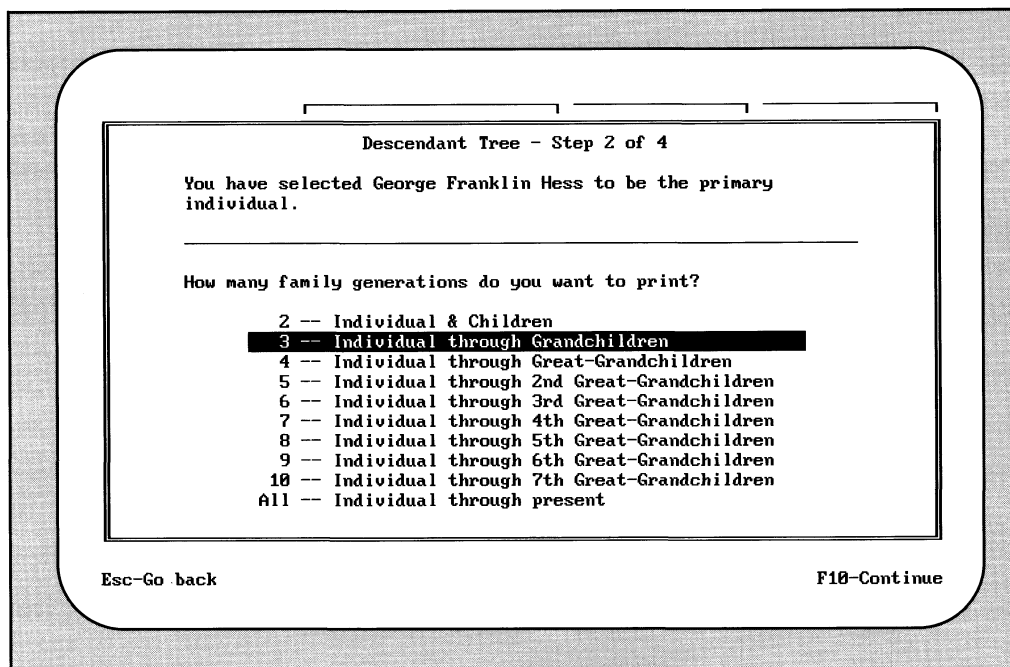


Figure 4-16. Choosing the number of generations to print

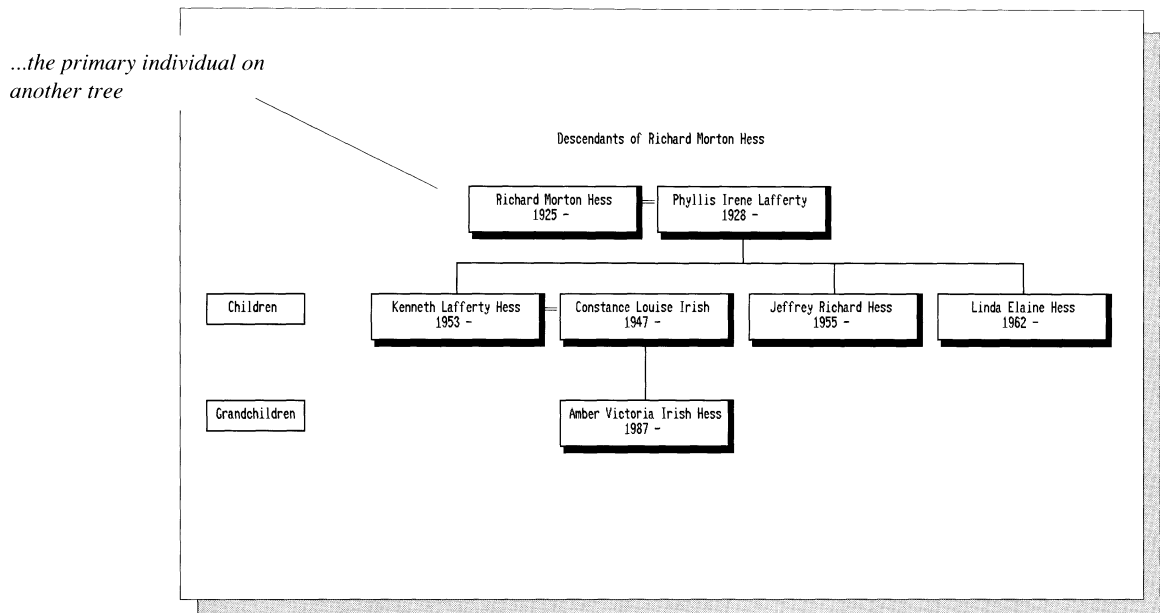
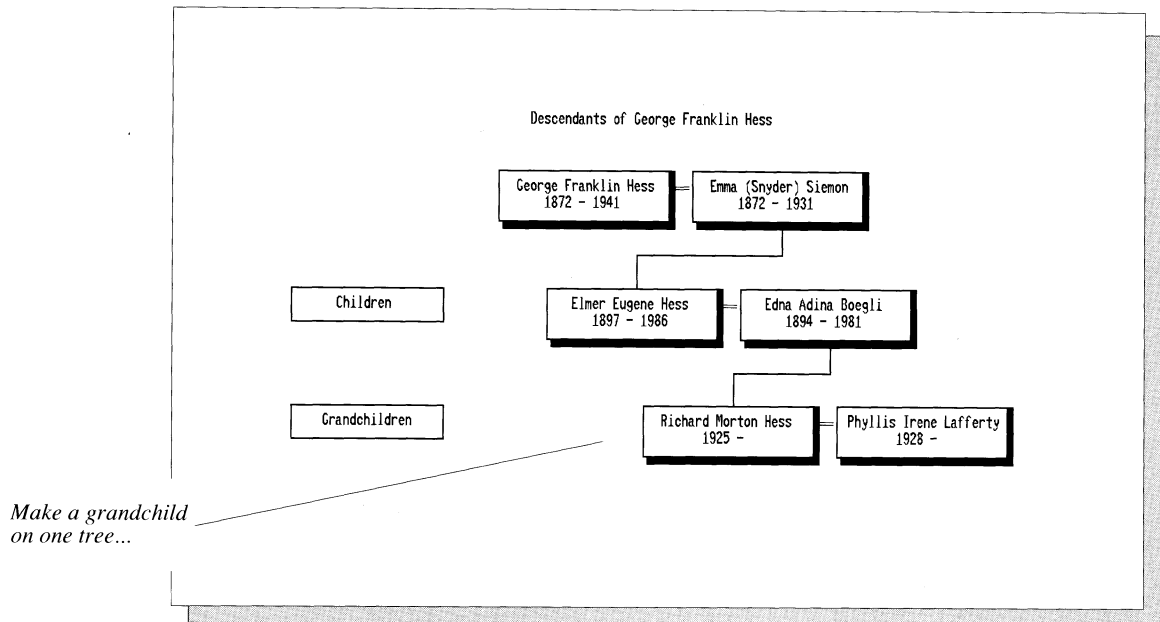


Figure 4-17. A set of descendant trees

Getting Ready To Print

Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled “Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4.” You can customize how your tree will look by changing the print settings (see page 133), or you can print your tree immediately.

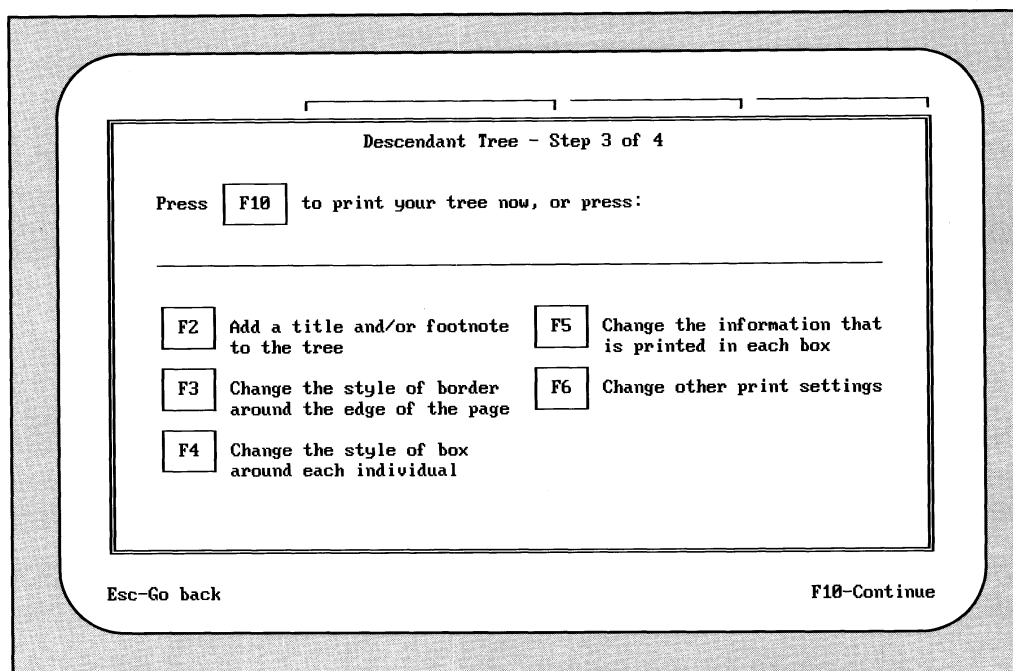



Figure 4-18. Customize your tree or go ahead and print

To print your tree immediately:





1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F10**. The Preview screen appears (the fourth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire tree before printing (details follow).
4. Press **F10** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your tree.





Previewing Your Tree






Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the tree on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your tree will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper.


To go to the primary individual, press .

To move a full screen in any direction, press , , , or .


To move a little bit to the left or right, press  +  or  + .

To move a little bit up or down, press  +  or  + .

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction, hold down the  key and click , , , or .

If you want to change what you see here, press  to go back to the screen labeled “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your tree in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.

When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press  to print your tree on paper.


Note: Tall descendant trees may print in several passes on your printer. Be patient, printing these trees can sometimes take time!

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your trees. You control graphic elements like borders and box styles, as well as what information to print.

Note: You can also use these settings to control the size of your descendant trees. See “Making your descendant trees smaller” on page 141.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your tree, press  from the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-19 on page 134).

You can type a title (up to two lines) that prints at the top center of your descendant tree. The default title is “Descendants of *NAME*.” (When Family Tree Maker sees *NAME* in the title, it automatically substitutes the name of the primary individual.) You can have any title you like.

Descendant Tree Title and Footnote

Title: Descendants of *NAME* _____

Subtitle: _____

Footnote: _____

Draw box around footnote? Yes No

Label rows as "Children," "Grandchildren," etc. ? Yes No

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-19. Creating a title and footnote

Border

1 - Style 1
 2 - Style 2
 3 - Style 3
 4 - Style 4
 5 - Style 5
 6 - Style 6
 7 - Style 7







Use the ↑↓ keys to show the different border styles.
 Esc-Go back ↑ To move highlight ↓ F10-Continue

Figure 4-20. Choosing page borders for your tree


Your footnote can be up to four lines long. It prints in the lower left corner of your descendant tree, with or without a box around it.

Row labels identify each generation of your tree as the children, grandchildren, or great-grandchildren of the primary individual. These labels appear at the beginning of each row and make it easy to understand the tree at a glance.


To edit any of these settings:




1. Use , , , and  to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, just type it in. If the line requires a yes-no answer, use  or  to move between choices.


When you've finished making changes, press .

You end up back at the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your tree, then print.

Border Style


To see or to change the border to be drawn around the outside edge of your entire tree, press  from the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-20 on page 134).

To see what different borders look like, use  or . When you've found a border you like, press . Or press a number, both to choose a border style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.






You end up back at the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your tree, then print.


Note: Different borders look better with different printers. Experiment!

Box Style

To modify or examine the style of box for your tree, press  from the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen.

Each individual in your tree appears in the box style that you choose (see Figure 4-21 on page 136).

Use , , , or  to choose a box style you like, then press  to confirm your choice. Or press a number, both to choose a style and to confirm your choice in a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your tree, then print.

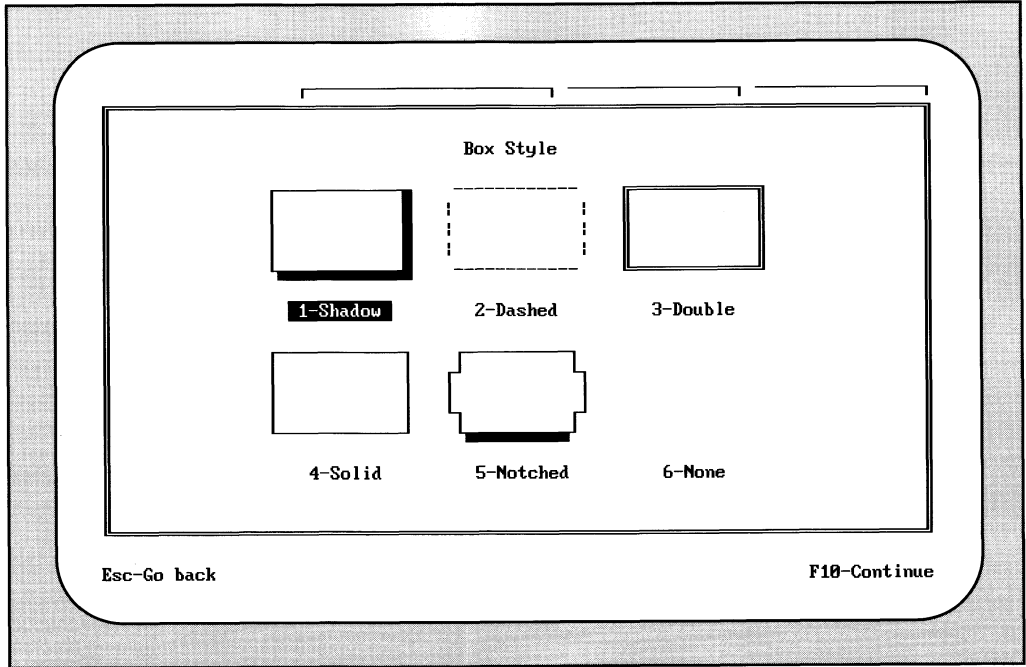


Figure 4-21. Choosing box styles

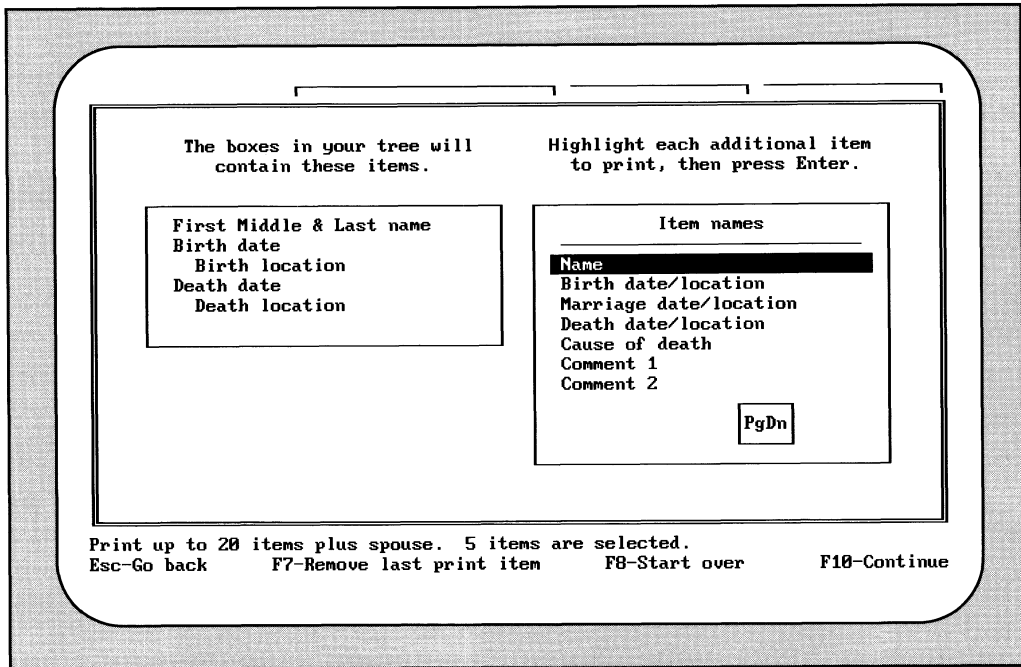


Figure 4-22. Selecting information to print

Selecting Information to Print

To modify or examine the items printing in your tree, press **F5** from the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-22 on page 136). The box on the left shows the information to be printed. You can add items to this list or delete them, one at a time, by pressing **F7**. You can also erase them all and start over by pressing **F8**. The message line at the bottom of the screen shows you how many items you can have in total.

To add an item to print in each box of your tree:

1. Use **↓** or **↑** to highlight your choice in the box on the right side of the screen.
2. Press **Enter**.

Names, dates, and locations can appear in a variety of formats and arrangements. Reselect the name or date item to see and/or change its format.

Some formats allow you to print the date and location on the same line (making the box height shorter but the width wider) and others allow you to print them on separate lines (making the box taller but thinner). By carefully choosing the date/location format, you can help control the height and width of your trees.

Event 3, Event 4, Event 5, and Event 6 dates always print on the same lines with their locations.

Statistics, such as age at birth of children, age at death, and age at first marriage, always print with their field labels (for example, “Age at death: 40”). If a “?” prints, it means that there is no information in a date field. If “est” prints, as in “Age at death: 40 est,” it means that a date was uncertain. (A date that is uncertain contains a modifier such as “about,” “before,” or “after.” As always, you should enter an uncertain date instead of nothing.)

You can even place lines between items by selecting **Line across box**, or blank rows between items by selecting **Blank row**. Both choices are near the bottom of the **Item names** box — press **PgDn** several times to see them. You can have as many lines or blank rows in a box as you like. All other items can appear only once.

Note: If **Marriage date/location** is selected, it will print as an item in the box of the bloodline descendant’s spouse. In addition, the number of children for all marriages of the bloodline descendant will print in his/her box.

Press **F10** when you’ve finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Other Print Settings

To modify or examine other print settings, press **F10** from the “Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4” screen.

The “Other Print Settings” screen gives you several choices.

Other Print Settings

Print labels of empty fields? Yes **No**

Justify text: Left **Center**

Maximum box width:
(bigger number makes tree wider)

25 characters 30 characters 35 characters Unlimited

Tree style: Style 1 (wide) Style 2 **Style 3** Style 4 (narrow)

Characters per inch:
(bigger number makes tree narrower) 17.00 **17.00**

Lines per inch:
(bigger number makes tree shorter) 6.00 **6.00**

Page orientation: **Portrait** Landscape

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-23. Other Print Settings

Print labels of empty fields — Field labels for birth, death, marriage, event, medical, location, source, and statistical fields always print if there is information in the field. Choose this if you want the field label to print when the field is empty.

Maximum box width — This choice tells Family Tree Maker what the largest allowable box size is. Pick a smaller number for a smaller tree.

Note: If necessary, Family Tree Maker will abbreviate your information to make it fit in the box size you specify. For example, if you select a very long name format, but a small maximum box width, Family Tree Maker may have to change the name format to a smaller one.

Page orientation — This choice lets you specify whether you want your tree to print in vertical (portrait) or horizontal (landscape) orientation.







Justify text — “Left” lines text up in a column along the left edge of the box. “Center” centers text in the box.



Descendant tree style — This choice will make your tree wider or thinner, depending on which style you choose. The details of each style are listed below:

- **Style 1 (widest)** draws your whole tree in a horizontal format, putting each person into a box (see the top of Figure 4-24 on page 140).
- **Style 2** draws the most recent generation in each branch in a vertical format, putting each person into a box.
- **Style 3** draws the second most recent generation in each branch in a vertical format. The most recent generation is printed without boxes; bloodline relatives (no spouses) are listed with their birth and death years only.
- **Style 4 (narrowest)** is the same as style 3 except it only prints the names (no dates) for the most recent generation in each tree (see the bottom of Figure 4-24 on page 140).

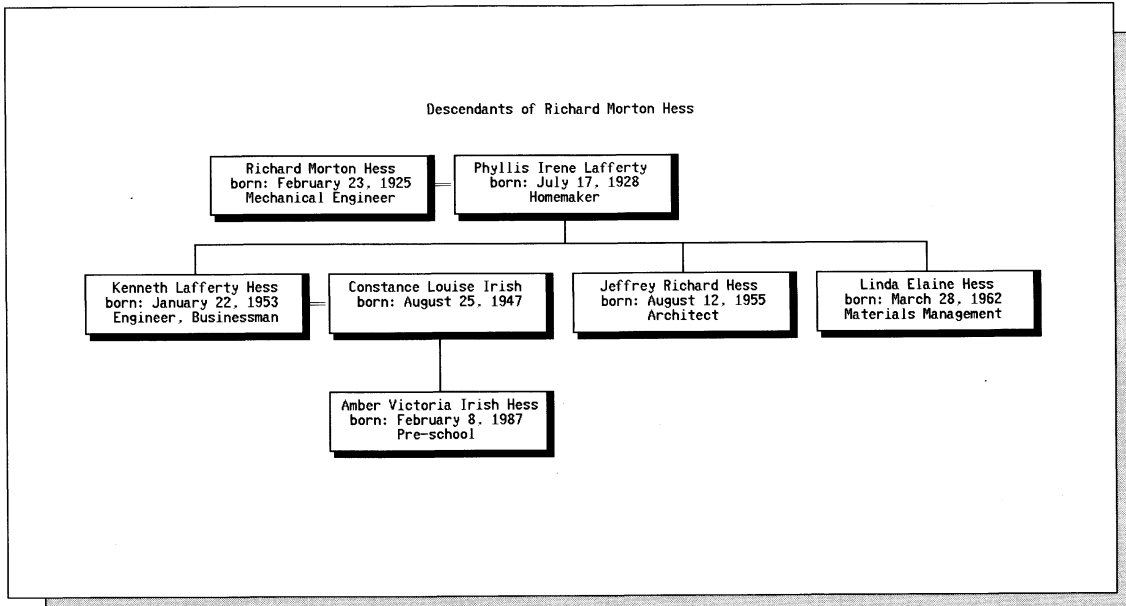
Characters per inch and **Lines per inch** — You can also choose both the size and line spacing of the characters your printer uses.

To change any of these settings:

1. Use , , , and  to move to the line you want to change.
2. Use  or  to highlight your choice on a given line.

Press  when you've finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your tree, then print.

Style 1 (widest)



Style 4 (narrowest)

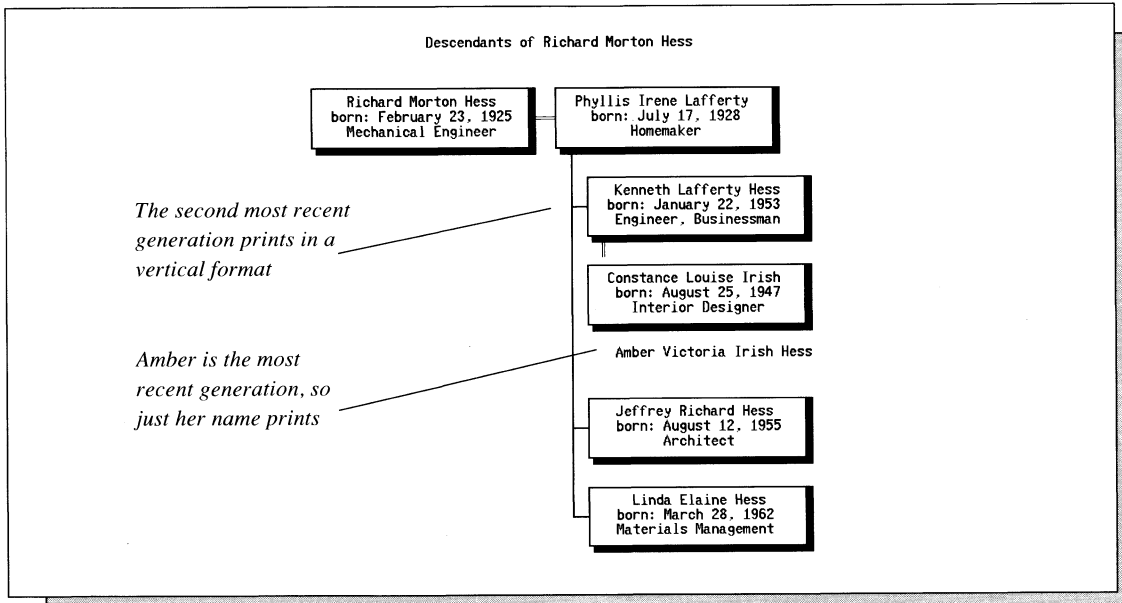


Figure 4-24. Choosing different descendant tree styles

You can use the print settings to help control the size of descendant trees. The longest line of information you print determines the width of all boxes in your tree. The number of items you print in each box determines the height of all boxes. Keeping these facts in mind, a combination of some or all of the following tips will help make your descendant trees smaller:

- Choose Descendant Tree Style 2, 3, or 4 (see “Other Print Settings” on page 138). This puts your tree in a more compact format.
- Choose the largest available number for Characters per inch and Lines per inch (see “Other Print Settings” on page 138).
- If you print dates, choose a format that puts the date and location on separate lines or prints the date only (see “Selecting Information to Print” on page 137).
- Choose a name format that omits middle names (see “Selecting Information to Print” on page 137).
- If you print “Comment” fields, shortening the information entered in them will make your tree narrower (see “Individual Card 2” on page 66 in Chapter 3).
- Printing fewer items per box will shorten the height of your tree (see “Selecting Information to Print” on page 137).
- Reducing the width of boxes around individuals will reduce the width of your tree (see “Maximum Box Width” on page 138).
- Omitting borders, titles, and notes also makes your tree smaller (see “Changing Print Settings” on page 133).
- Printing a Direct Descendant Tree will reduce the size considerably, because fewer people will be on the tree (see “Printing a Direct Descendant Tree” on page 142).

Figure 4-25. Making your descendant trees smaller

PRINTING A DIRECT DESCENDANT TREE

Direct descendant trees are similar to regular descendant trees, but require less space. A regular descendant tree shows a primary individual and all his or her children, grandchildren, and so on. A direct descendant tree shows the direct line of descent from the primary individual to a secondary individual in a later generation. Family members not in the direct line of descent (such as a sibling's spouse) do not appear in the tree. Even siblings can be excluded, making your trees extremely compact (see Figures 4-26 and 4-27 on page 143).

Special Tip: You can create a direct descendant tree with room for photographs by printing lots of blank rows in your direct descendant tree. See page 152 for more information.

To print a direct descendant tree you go through the following steps:

1. Select the primary individual. This is the person at the top of the tree, and is typically one of your ancestors.
2. Select the secondary individual. This is the person at the bottom of the tree.
3. Preview your family tree on-screen before you print it on paper. Optionally, you can change print settings for border style, box style, information to print in each box, and more.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your tree on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press  to go back to the previous screen.

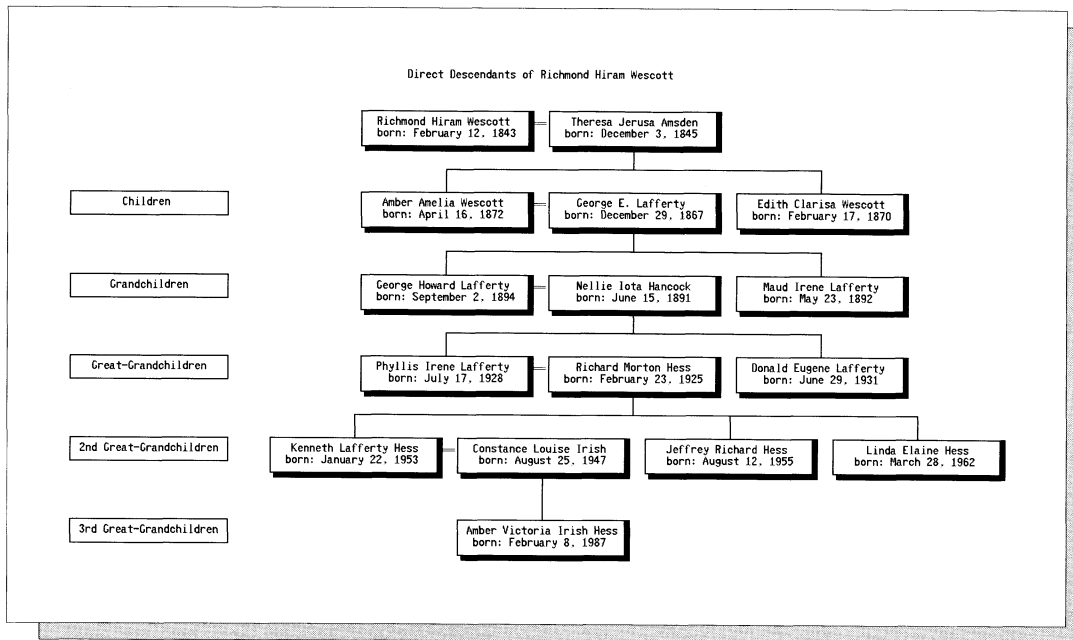


Figure 4-26. A direct descendant tree with siblings

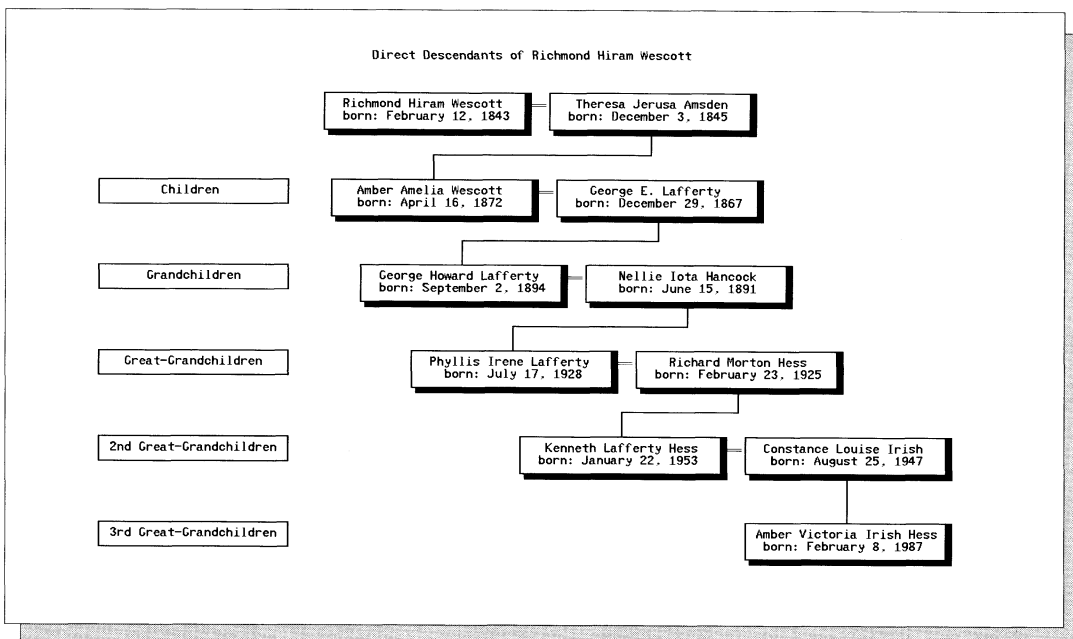


Figure 4-27. A direct descendant tree without siblings

Selecting The Primary Individual

The first step is to select the primary individual:

1. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **P – Print tree**.
3. Select **R – Direct descendant tree**. The first of four screens appears.
4. Highlight the person you want to be the primary individual (see Figure 4-28).

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press **F7** and type the individual's name. Press **F7** to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g., type "sm" to find "Smith").

5. Press **F10** to continue.

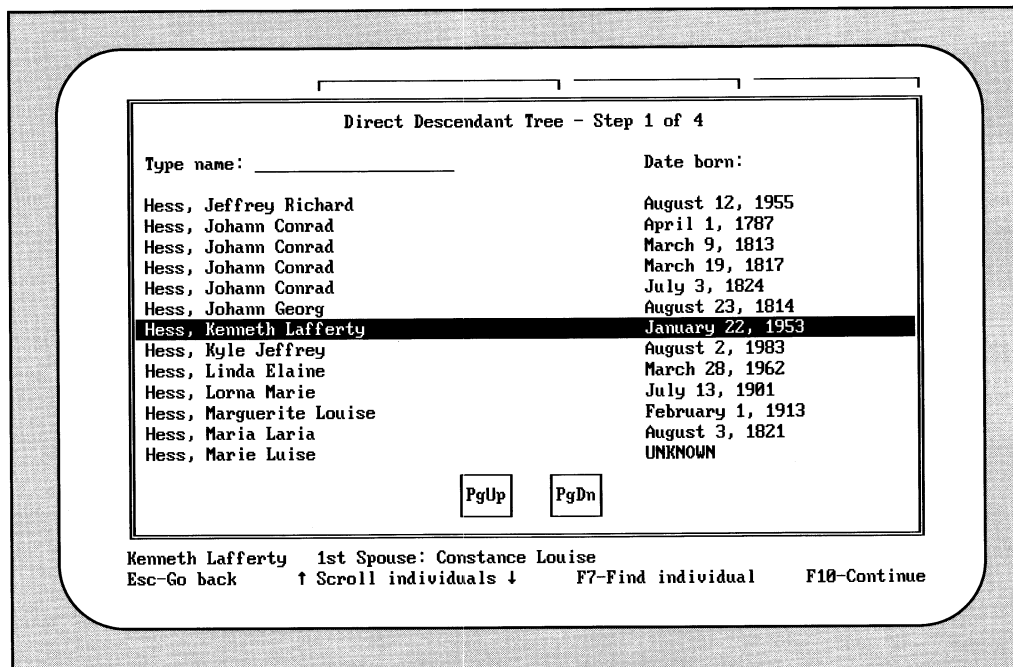


Figure 4-28. Selecting the primary individual

Selecting The Secondary Individual

After you have selected the primary individual, Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 2 of 4.**” This screen is very similar to the “Step 1 of 4” screen, except that only the people who are direct descendants of the primary individual will be listed as possible choices.

To select the secondary individual:

1. Highlight the person you want to be the secondary individual.
2. Press **F10** to continue.

Getting Ready To Print

Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4.**” (See Figure 4-29.) You can customize how your tree will look by changing the print settings (see page 146), or you can print your tree immediately.

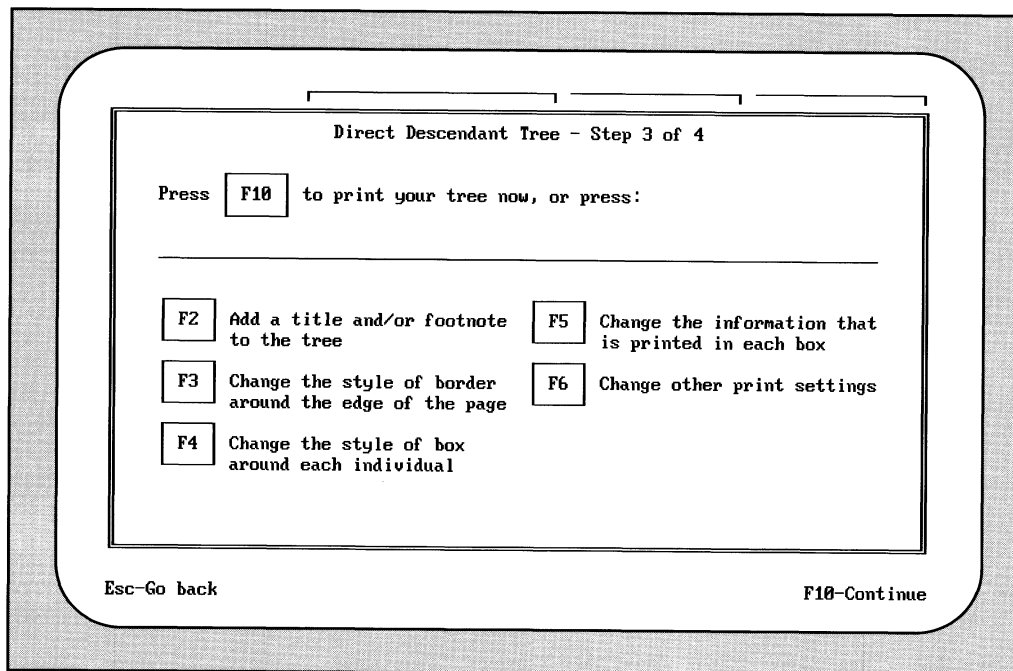


Figure 4-29. Customize your tree or go ahead and print

To print your tree immediately:

1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F10**. The Preview screen appears (the fourth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire tree before printing (see page 146).
4. Press **F10** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your tree.

Previewing Your Tree

Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the tree on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your tree will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper. Notice that spouses are connected by double lines, descendants by solid lines.

To go to the primary individual, press **home**.

To move a full screen in any direction, press **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

To move a little bit to the left or right, press **Ctrl** + **←** or **Ctrl** + **→**.

To move a little bit up or down, press **Ctrl** + **PgUp** or **Ctrl** + **PgDn**.

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction using your mouse, hold down, the **Ctrl** key and click **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

If you want to change what you see here, press **esc** to go back to the screen labeled “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your tree in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.

When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press **F10** to print your tree on paper.

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your trees. You control graphic elements like borders and box styles, as well as what information to print.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your tree, press **F2** from the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-30 on page 147).

You can type a title (up to two lines) that prints at the top center of your descendant tree. The default title is “Direct Descendants of *NAME*.” (When Family Tree Maker sees *NAME* in the title, it automatically substitutes the name of the primary individual.) You can have any title you like.

Your footnote can be up to four lines long. It prints in the lower left corner of your direct descendant tree, with or without a box around it.

Row labels identify each generation of your tree as the children, grandchildren, or great-grandchildren of the primary individual. These labels appear at the beginning of each row and make it easy to understand the tree at a glance.

To edit any of these settings:

1. Use **↑**, **↓**, **←**, and **→** to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, just type it in. If the line requires a yes-no answer, use **←** or **→** to move between choices.

When you've finished making changes, press **F10**.

You end up back at the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Border Style

To see or to change the border to be drawn around the outside edge of your entire tree, press **F9** from the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-31 on page 147).

To see what different borders look like, use **↑** or **↓**. When you've found a border you like, press **F10**. Or press a number, both to choose a border style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Note: Different borders look better with different printers. Experiment!

Box Style

To modify or examine the style of box for your tree, press **F4** from the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-32 on page 149).

Each individual in your tree appears in the box style that you choose.

Use **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→** to choose a box style you like, then press **F10** to confirm your choice. Or press a number, both to choose a style and to confirm your choice in a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

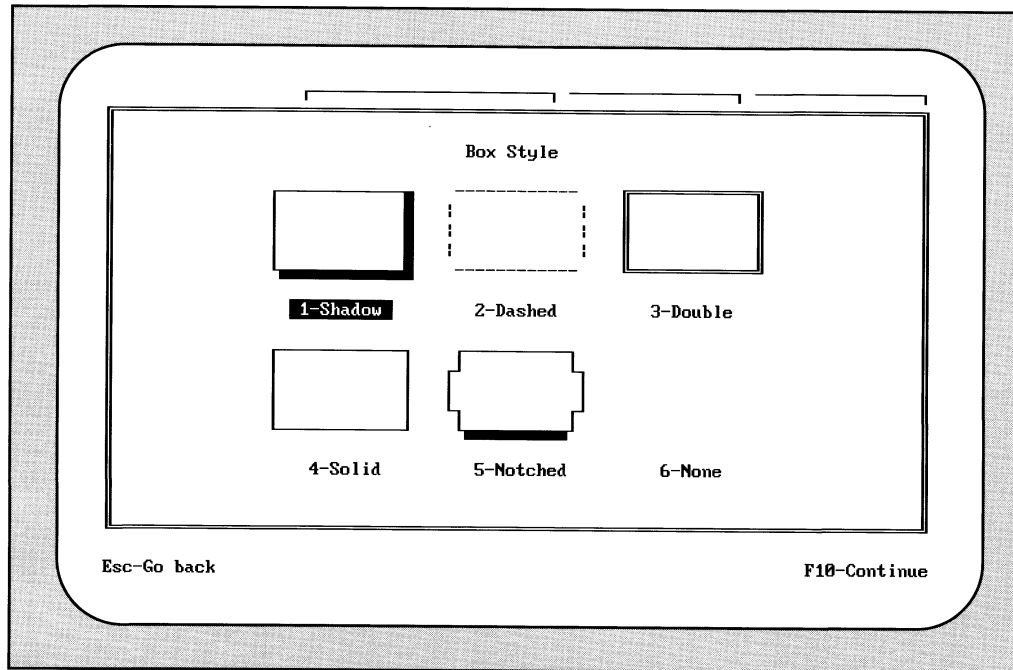


Figure 4-32. Choosing box styles

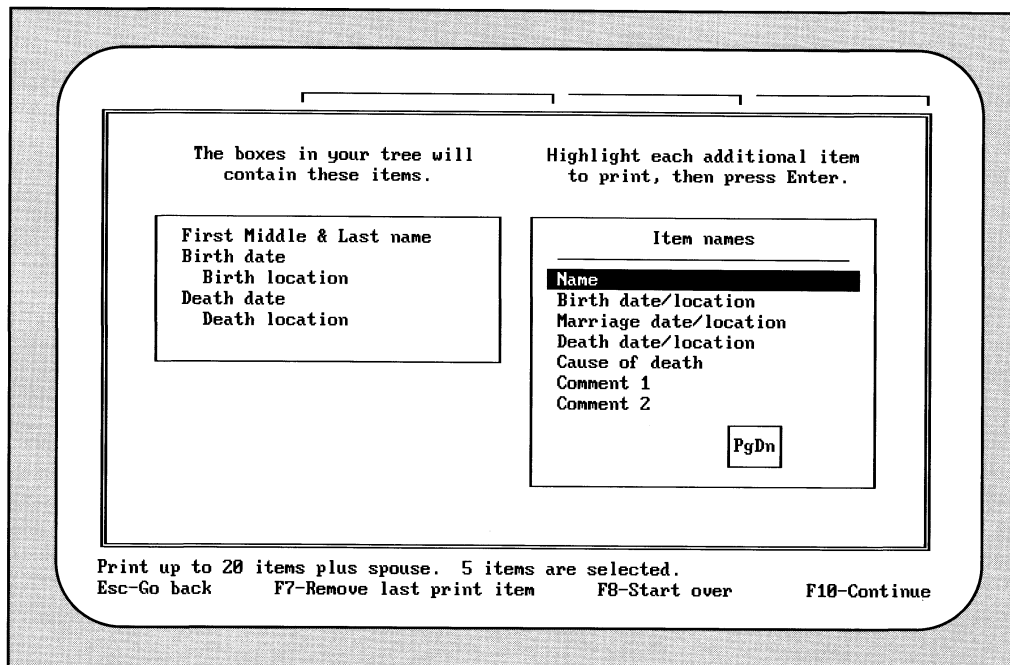


Figure 4-33. Selecting information to print

Selecting Information to Print

To modify or examine the items printing in your tree, press **F5** from the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen. (See Figure 4-33 on page 149.)

The box on the left shows the information to be printed. You can add items to this list or delete them, one at a time, by pressing **F7**. You can also erase them all and start over by pressing **F8**. The message line at the bottom of the screen shows you how many items you can have in total.

To add an item to print in each box of your tree:

1. Use **↓** or **↑** to highlight your choice in the box on the right side of the screen.
2. Press **Enter**.

Names, dates, and locations can appear in a variety of formats and arrangements. Reselect the name or date item to see and/or change its format. Some formats allow you to print the date and location on the same line (making the box height shorter but the width wider) and others allow you to print them on separate lines (making the box taller but thinner). By carefully choosing the date/location format, you can help control the height and width of your trees.

Event 3, Event 4, Event 5, and Event 6 dates always print on the same lines with their locations.

Statistics, such as age at birth of children, age at death, and age at first marriage, always print with their field labels (for example, “Age at death: 40”). If a “?” prints, it means that there is no information in a date field. If “est” prints, as in “Age at death: 40 est,” it means that a date was uncertain. (A date that is uncertain contains a modifier such as “about,” “before,” or “after.” As always, you should enter an uncertain date instead of nothing.)

You can even place lines between items by selecting **Line across box**, or blank rows between items by selecting **Blank row**. Both choices are near the bottom of the Item names box — press **F9/Dn** several times to see them. You can have as many lines or blank rows in a box as you like. All other items can appear only once.

Note: If **Marriage date/location** is selected, it will print as an item in the box of the bloodline descendant’s spouse. In addition, the number of children for all marriages of the bloodline descendant will print in his/her box.

Press **F10** when you’ve finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Other Print Settings

To modify or examine other print settings, press **F6** from the “**Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen.

The “**Other Print Settings**” screen gives you several choices. See Figure 4-34.

Other Print Settings

Print labels of empty fields? Yes No

Justify text: Left Center

Print siblings of direct descendants? Yes No

Maximum box width:
(bigger number makes tree wider)

25 characters 30 characters 35 characters Unlimited

Characters per inch:
(bigger number makes tree narrower) 10.29 14.40

Lines per inch:
(bigger number makes tree shorter) 6.00 8.00

Page orientation: Portrait Landscape

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-34. Other Print Settings

Print labels of empty fields — Field labels for birth, death, marriage, event, medical, location, and source fields always print if there is information in the field. Choose this if you want the field label to print when the field is empty.

Justify text — “Left” lines text up in a column along the left edge of the box. “Center” centers text in the box.

Print siblings of direct descendants — Choose **Yes** to print siblings of descendants, giving you a tree similar to the one in Figure 4-26 on page 143. Choose **No** to omit siblings, giving you a tree similar to the one in Figure 4-27 on page 143.







Maximum box width — This choice tells Family Tree Maker what the largest allowable box size is. Pick a smaller number for a smaller tree.



Note: If necessary, Family Tree Maker will abbreviate your information to make it fit in the box size you specify. For example, if you select a very long name format, but a small maximum box width, Family Tree Maker may have to change the name format to a smaller one.

Characters per inch and Lines per inch — You can also choose both the size and line spacing of the characters your printer uses.

Page orientation — This choice lets you specify whether you want your tree to print in vertical (portrait) or horizontal (landscape) orientation.




To change any of these settings:

1. Use , , , and  to move to the line you want to change.
2. Use  or  to highlight your choice on a given line.

Press  when you've finished making changes. You end up back at the "Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4" screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your tree, then print.

MAKING DESCENDANT TREES WITH ROOM FOR PHOTOGRAPHS

Family Tree Maker automatically prints a photo tree for ancestors (see page 125). But, there may be times when you will want to put pictures on your descendant and direct descendant trees. The steps below describe how to make descendant trees with enough space on them to include photographs.

1. Follow the steps for either printing a descendant tree (described on page 128) or a direct descendant tree (described on page 142).
2. When you get to the option screen ("Step 3 of 4" on both trees) select  to change the information that is printed alongside each entry.
3. Press  to clear previous selections.
4. Choose **Blank rows** (experiment to see how many), then choose **Name** and any other information you want to print.
5. Press  to save your choices.

Finish printing the descendant or direct descendant tree as you normally would.

PRINTING AN OUTLINE DESCENDANT TREE

Outline descendant trees show a primary individual (the progenitor) and all his or her children, grandchildren, and so on, arranged in a compact, outline form. The outline descendant tree contains exactly the same information as the descendant tree, but in outline, rather than boxed-text, form.

The outline descendant tree takes less time and paper to print than the standard descendant tree, and can be easier to use as a research tool in the library. You might also prefer the outline descendant tree when you're sending drafts of your family tree to relatives, or when you're putting together a book that contains many family trees. The outline descendant tree, and its relative, the outline direct descendant tree (see page 167), also make it easy to check your work when you're entering a lot of information.

Because people's names are close together on an outline descendant tree, you can quickly see the relationships between a number of people. The outline descendant tree is structured so that everyone in one generation is at the same level as everyone else in the generation, everyone in the next generation is indented one level, everyone in the next generation after that is indented another level, and so forth. So you can see just by looking at the tree which people are in the same generation and how the members of other generations relate to them. Figure 4-35 on page 154 shows an outline descendant tree.

Assuming you are not the primary individual, the outline descendant tree shows more of your family than an ancestor tree — nephews, nieces, and cousins included.

Descendants of Thomas Sprunger

1 Sprunger, Thomas (1645-UNKNOWN)
 . +Buergi, Regina (1649-UNKNOWN)
 . . 2 Sprunger, Hans (1668-UNKNOWN)
 . . . +Holsten, Ulla (1670-UNKNOWN)
 3 Sprunger, Deiter (1718-UNKNOWN)
 +Neuenschwander, Elizabeth (UNKNOWN)
 4 Sprunger, Katherina (1773-UNKNOWN)
 +Amstutz, Christian (1772-UNKNOWN)
 5 Amstutz, Elisabeth (1797-UNKNOWN)
 5 Amstutz, Johannes (1800-UNKNOWN)
 5 Amstutz, Christian (1802-1840)
 5 Amstutz, Regina (1803-UNKNOWN)
 5 Amstutz, Anna (1804-UNKNOWN)
 5 Amstutz, Durs Dorsey (1805-1870)
 5 Amstutz, Johannes Ulrich (1817-UNKNOWN)
 +Sprunger, Elisabeth (1832-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Lena (1860-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Marianna (1861-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Jakob U. (1862-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, John J. (1864-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Japhet (1865-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Elisabeth U. (1867-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Twin (1867-UNKNOWN)
 6 Amstutz, Katherina (1869-1959)
 +Boegli, Peter (1868-1942)
 7 Boegli, Emma Bertha (1890-UNKNOWN)
 7 Boegli, Wilber James (1891-UNKNOWN)
 7 Boegli, Elmer Elam (1893-UNKNOWN)
 7 Boegli, Edna Adina (1894-1981)
 +Hess, Elmer Eugene (1897-1986)
 8 Hess, Gretchen Kathryn (1917-1989)
 +Friend, William Delbert (1915-1983)
 9 Friend, William Herbert (1948-)
 +Meril, Pamela (UNKNOWN)
 9 Friend, Patricia Lynn (1950-)
 8 Hess, Eugene Elmer (1918-)
 +Stelle, Phebe Esther (1919-1988)
 8 Hess, Donald Boegli (1920-)
 8 Hess, Pauline Gwendolyn (1922-)
 +Summerville, Robert (UNKNOWN-1978)
 9 Summerville, Sandra Eileen (1945-)
 9 Summerville, Robert Lee (1946-)
 8 Hess, Corliss Burdett (1923-)
 +Squires, Betty (1924-)
 8 Hess, Richard Morton (1925-)
 +Lafferty, Phyllis Irene (1928-)
 9 Hess, Kenneth Lafferty (1953-)
 +Irish, Constance Louise (1947-)
 10 Hess, Amber Victoria Irish (1987-)
 8 Hess, Marilyn Lorraine (1926-)
 +Garig, Darrell Leon (1929-)
 7 Boegli, Howard Lewellyn (1898-UNKNOWN)
 7 Boegli, Elizabeth Magdalena (1908-UNKNOWN)
 . . . 2 Sprunger, Hans Peter (1669-UNKNOWN)
 . . 2 Sprunger, Barbara (1671-UNKNOWN)
 . . 2 Sprunger, Catherina (1673-UNKNOWN)

This tree was created by Susanne E. McDonell especially for the Hess Family on April 22, 1993.

Figure 4-35. An outline descendant tree


To print an outline descendant tree you go through the following steps:



1. Select the primary individual. Typically, you would select one of your ancestors.
2. Select the number of generations you want to include.
3. Preview your outline descendant tree on-screen before you print it on paper. Optionally, you can change print settings for border style, information to print with each entry, and more.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your outline descendant tree on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press  to go back to the previous screen.

Selecting The Primary Individual

The first step is to select the primary individual:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **P – Print tree**.
3. Select **O – Outline descendant tree**. The first of four screens appears.
4. Highlight the person you want to be the primary individual (see Figure 4-36 on page 156).

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press  and type the individual's name. Press  to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g., type "sm" to find "smith").

5. Press .

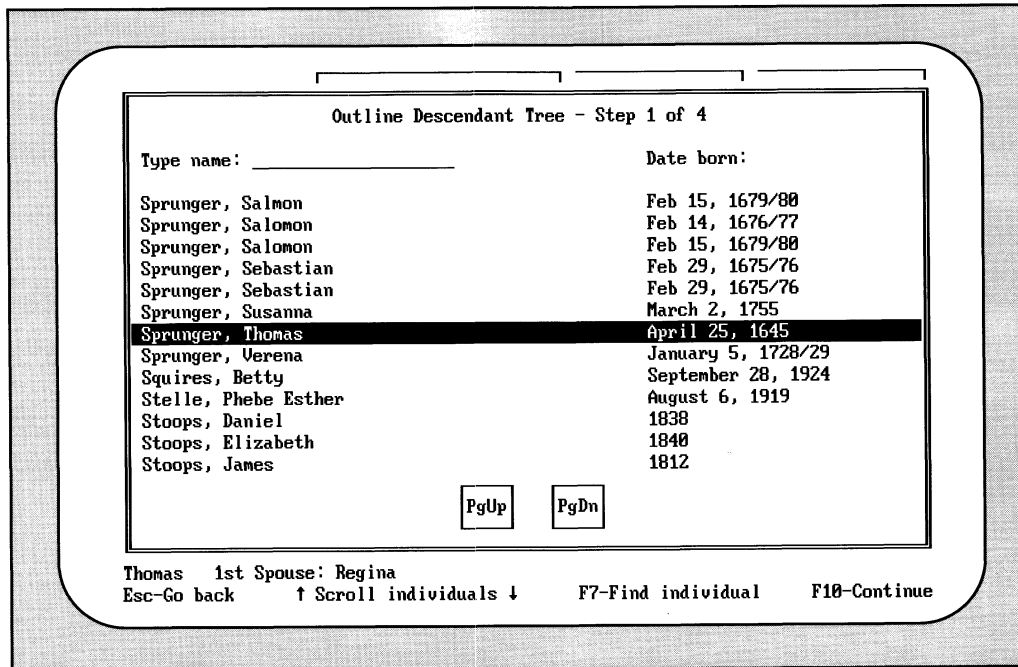


Figure 4-36. Selecting the primary individual

Choosing The Number Of Generations

After you have selected the primary individual, Family Tree Maker displays the “Outline Descendant Tree – Step 2 of 4.” You are now ready to choose the number of generations.

The choice you make here determines the number of generations that will appear in the outline descendant tree. To choose the number of generations:

1. Use or to highlight the number of generations you want.
2. Press to confirm your choice and to go on to the next screen.

Note: For the most readable results, we recommend that you limit your tree to 4 - 5 generations. Remember, outline descendant trees can only be one page wide. Since each generation is indented by several spaces from the previous generation, your tree can become wide very fast. If you want lots of generations, try implementing some of the space saving measures described in Figure 4-44 on page 166.

Getting Ready To Print

Family Tree Maker displays the screen “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4.**” You can customize how your outline descendant tree will look by changing the print settings (see page 158), or you can print your outline descendant tree immediately. See Figure 4-37.

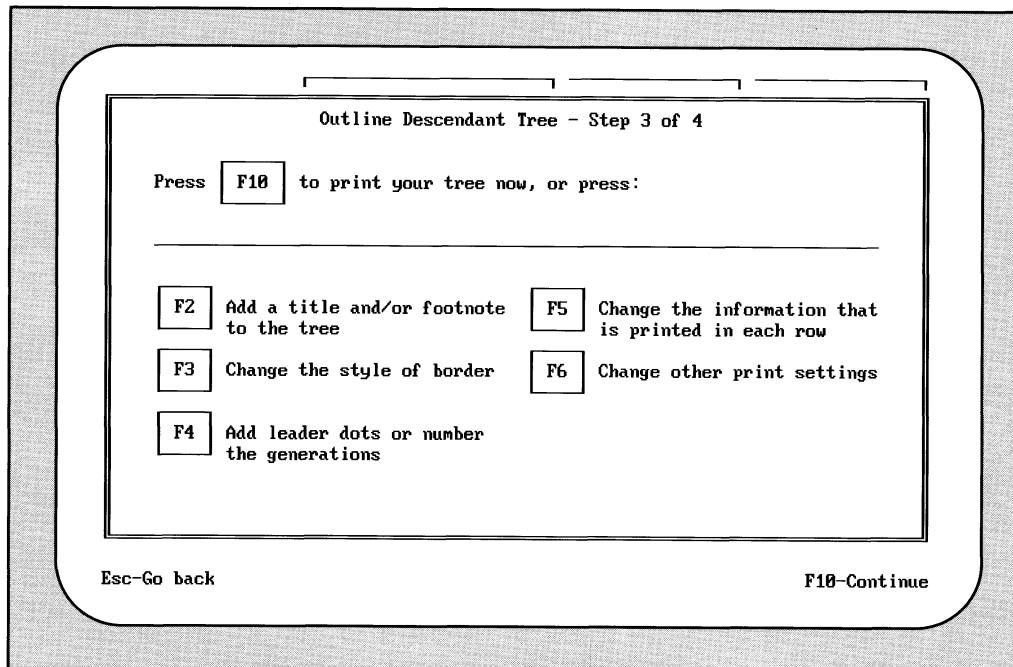



Figure 4-37. Customize your outline descendant tree or go ahead and print

To print your outline descendant tree immediately:





1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **FIG**. The Preview screen appears (the fourth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire outline descendant tree before printing (see page 158).
4. Press **FIG** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your outline descendant tree.





Previewing Your Outline Descendant Tree






Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the outline descendant tree on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your outline descendant tree will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper.


To go to the primary individual, press .

To move a full screen in any direction, press , , , or .


To move a little bit to the left or right, press  +  or  + .

To move a little bit up or down, press  +  or  + .

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction, hold down the  key and click , , , or .

If you want to change what you see here, press  to go back to the screen labeled “**Outline Descendant Tree - Step 3 of 4**” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your outline descendant tree in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.


When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press  to print your outline descendant tree on paper.

Note: Outline descendant trees print only in portrait (tall or vertical) orientation.

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your outline descendant tree. You control graphic elements like border styles, as well as what information to print.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your outline descendant tree, press  from the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen. See Figure 4-38.

You can type a title that prints at the top center of your outline descendant tree. The default title is “Descendants of *NAME*.” (When Family Tree Maker sees *NAME* in the title, it automatically substitutes the name of the primary individual.) You can have any title you like.

Outline Descendant Tree Title and Footnote

Title: Descendants of *NAME* _____

Footnote:

Print page numbers? Yes No

Starting page number: 1__

Print footnote on which page: First Last

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-38. Creating a title and footnote

Border Styles

<Title goes here>

1 - Style 1
 2 - Style 2
3 - Style 3
4 - Style 4
5 - Style 5
6 - Style 6

<Footnote goes here>

Use the ↑↓ keys to show the different border styles.
Esc-Go back ↑ To move highlight ↓ F10-Continue

Figure 4-39. Choosing a page border for your tree

Your footnote can be up to two lines long. It prints left justified at the bottom of your outline descendant tree page. You can put the footnote on the first or last page of the outline descendant tree.

If you select page numbers, they will print centered at the bottom of each page of your outline descendant tree. You can also choose the starting page number.

To edit any of these settings:

1. Use **↑**, **↓**, **←**, and **→** to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, just type it in. If the line requires a selection, use **←** or **→** to move between choices.

When you've finished making changes, press **F10**.

You end up back at the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your outline descendant tree, then print.

Border Style

To see or to change the border to be drawn at the top and bottom of each outline descendant tree page, press **F3** from the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-39 on page 159).

To see what different borders look like, use **↑** or **↓**. When you've found a border you like, press **F10**. Or press a number, both to choose a border style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your outline descendant tree, then print.

Leader Dots and Numbering Generations

To control how Family Tree Maker displays different generations on your outline descendant tree, press **F4** from the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen.

Family Tree Maker gives you three choices to make the organization of your outline descendant tree easier to follow: You can precede each person with a series of dots, with a number, or with both. See Figure 4-40 on page 161.

If you choose to use numbers, Family Tree Maker will precede each individual with a generation number. You can choose a starting number which will be used for the primary individual. Normally, the primary individual will be numbered “1,” his/her children will be numbered “2,” their children will be numbered “3,” and so on.

You may also want to choose a starting generation number other than 1. For example, if you are making a set of outline descendant trees, you will want the starting generation number on the second tree to follow sequentially from the last number of the first tree.

With Dots Only

```
Hess, Elmer Eugene (1897-1986)
+Boegli, Edna Adina (1894-1981)
. . Hess, Richard Morton (1925- )
. . +Lafferty, Phyllis Irene (1928- )
. . . . Hess, Kenneth Lafferty (1953- )
. . . . +Irish, Constance Louise (1947- )
. . . . . Hess, Amber Victoria Irish (1987- )
. . Hess, Gretchen Kathryn (1917-1989)
. . +Friend, William Delbert (1915-1983)
. . . . Friend, William Herbert (1948- )
. . . . +Meril, Pamela (UNKNOWN)
. . . . Friend, Patricia Lynn (1950- )
```

With Numbers Only

```
1 Hess, Elmer Eugene (1897-1986)
+Boegli, Edna Adina (1894-1981)
  2 Hess, Richard Morton (1925- )
    +Lafferty, Phyllis Irene (1928- )
      3 Hess, Kenneth Lafferty (1953- )
        +Irish, Constance Louise (1947- )
          4 Hess, Amber Victoria Irish (1987- )
2 Hess, Gretchen Kathryn (1917-1989)
  +Friend, William Delbert (1915-1983)
    3 Friend, William Herbert (1948- )
      +Meril, Pamela (UNKNOWN)
        3 Friend, Patricia Lynn (1950- )
```

Figure 4-40. Different ways to show generations

You don't have to use numbers or dots if you don't want to. If you decide to print an outline descendant tree without numbers or dots, the automatic indentation Family Tree Maker does for each generation will still show you where one generation ends and a new one begins on your outline descendant tree.

Note: Family Tree Maker automatically denotes spouses on your outline descendant tree by placing them directly below the bloodline descendant to whom they're married. Family Tree Maker also puts a plus in front of the name of each spouse (see "Other Print Settings" on page 163 for more information about how Family Tree Maker prints spouses on the outline descendant tree).

Selecting Information to Print

To modify or examine the information to print in your outline descendant tree, press **F5** from the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen. See Figure 4-41.

The box on the left shows the information to be printed. You can add items to this list or delete them, one at a time, by pressing **F7**. You can also erase them all and start over by pressing **F8**. The message line at the bottom of the screen shows you a recommended number of items per individual.

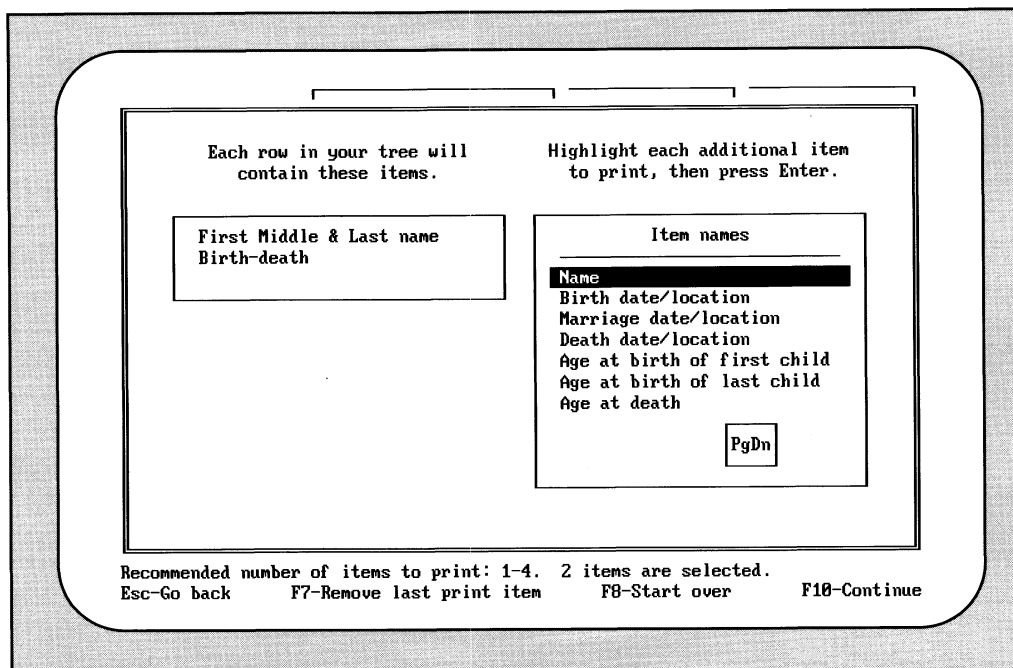


Figure 4-41. Selecting information to print

To add an item to print for each individual:

1. Use **↓** or **↑** to highlight your choice in the box on the right side of the screen.
2. Press **Enter**.

Names and dates can appear in a variety of formats and arrangements. Reselect the name or date item to see and/or change its format.

Statistics, such as age at birth of children, age at death, and age at first marriage, always print with their field labels (for example, “Age at death: 40”). If a “?” prints, it means that there is no information in a date field. If “est” prints, as in “Age at death: 40 est,” it means that a date was uncertain. (A date that is uncertain contains a modifier such as “about,” “before,” or “after.” As always, you should enter an uncertain date instead of nothing.)

Note: The outline descendant tree comfortably accommodates 3 to 4 items per individual. While you can choose any number of additional items, we recommend you limit the number of items.

If your choices make the outline descendant tree more than one page wide, Family Tree Maker can automatically reduce the width of each row if you've chosen any of the automatic reduction options on the F6 – Other Print Settings screen (see “Other Print Settings,” below).

Press **F10** when you've finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your outline descendant tree, then print.

Other Print Settings

To modify or examine other print settings, press **F6** from the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen. See Figure 4-42.

The “**Other Print Settings**” screen gives you several choices.

Other Print Settings

Print spouses? **Yes** **No**

Leave a blank line between rows? **Yes** **No**

Indent each generation by how many spaces:
2 (fits most people) **4** 6 8 (fits fewest people)

Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page? **Yes** **No**

Allow 2 rows per individual? **Yes** **No**

Characters per inch: 12.00 **17.14**

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-42. Other Print Settings

Print spouses? — Normally, the spouse prints directly below the bloodline descendant, with a plus sign in front of his or her name. With multiple spouses, Family Tree Maker repeats the bloodline descendant's name above each subsequent spouse and places an asterisk in front of the repeated name. Choose **No** to suppress the printing of spouses, if desired. See Figure 4-43 for an example of multiple spouses.

```

Hess, Elmer Eugene (1897-1986)
+Boegli, Edna Adina (1894-1981)
. . Hess, Richard Morton (1925- )
. . +Lafferty, Phyllis Irene (1928- )
. . . . Hess, Kenneth Lafferty (1953- );Strong interest
. . . . . in computers & electronics
. . . . +Irish, Constance Louise (1947- )
. . . . . Hess, Amber Victoria Irish (1987- );born
. . . . . 2 months premature, but growing fast!
. . Hess, Gretchen Kathryn (1917-1989)
. . +Friend, William Delbert (1915-1983)
. . . . Friend, William Herbert (1948- )
. . . . +Meril, Pamela (UNKNOWN )
. . . . *2nd spouse of Friend, William Herbert:
. . . . +O'Keefe, Karen (1950- )
. . . . Friend, Patricia Lynn (1950- );currently
. . . . . engaged to be married in 1995.
. . Hess, Eugene Elmer (1918- )
. . +Stelle, Phebe Esther (1919-1988)
. . Hess, Donald Boegli (1919-1988)
. . Hess, Pauline Gwendolyn (1922- )
. . +Summerville, Robert (UNKNOWN-1978)
. . . . Summerville, Sandra Eileen (1945- )
. . . . Summerville, Robert Lee (1946- )

```

Figure 4-43. Example of Other Print Settings choices

Leave a blank line between rows? — This choice tells Family Tree Maker if you want to put an extra space between each individual and the next. Choose **No** if you want to get the most individuals on a page.

Indent each generation by how many spaces? — This choice lets you specify how big an indentation you want each generation to have. Choose a smaller number to get the most information on the page. Choose a larger number for clearer differentiation among generations, if you don't mind getting less information on one page.

Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page? — This option tells Family Tree Maker to automatically perform space saving measures, such as abbreviating the names of states, so that you can fit more information on each page. If you've selected this option, and Family Tree Maker discovers that the items you've chosen make your outline descendant tree more than one page wide, then it performs the following abbreviations:

- First, it changes the dates to the narrowest format.
- Then, if it is still more than one page wide, Family Tree Maker abbreviates locations (so, for example, Minnesota becomes MN).

-
-
- Finally, if necessary, Family Tree Maker will try abbreviating names. First it drops the middle name, then if the name is still too big to fit, Family Tree Maker abbreviates it by printing the first name as an initial.







Allow 2 rows per individual? — Choose **Yes** to let Family Tree Maker automatically wrap text to a second row. This option lets an individual have two rows of information. The second row begins directly below the beginning of the first, so it's clearly a second row, not a new generation (which would be indented).



See Figure 4-43 on page 164. The dots signal new people. The indentations signal new generations. In this example, you can tell from the absence of dots on the fourth line that the text refers to Kenneth Lafferty Hess. You can tell from the indentation on the sixth line that Amber Victoria Irish Hess is the child of Kenneth Lafferty Hess and Constance Louise Irish.

Characters per inch — Choose the size characters you want your printer to use.

Note: If you choose **Yes** for “Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page?” AND “Allow two rows per individual,” Family Tree Maker will only do these things if it necessary in order to make your tree fit on one page wide. In that case, Family Tree Maker will first use 2 rows per individual only for those individuals whose rows don't fit. Then, if an individual's information still doesn't fit, Family Tree Maker will start implementing the abbreviations.

To change any of these settings:

1. Use , , , and  to move to the line you want to change.
2. Use  or  to highlight your choice on a given line.

Press  when you've finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Outline Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your outline descendant tree, then print.

You can use the print settings to help control the size of outline descendant trees. Some of the settings can make the items you've selected for each row more compact, thus allowing you to fit more information per individual. Other settings will help you fit the most individuals on a single page as well.

- Choose the largest available number for **Characters per inch** so you can fit more individuals and information on a page (see "Other Print Settings" on page 163).
- Choose to allow two rows per individual so you can fit more information per individual on a page (see "Other Print Settings" on page 163).
- Don't print spouses, so you can free up space to print more bloodline descendants on each page (see "Other Print Settings" on page 163).
- Choose a smaller indentation between generations, so you can fit more information about each individual on a row (see "Other Print Settings" on page 163).
- Don't leave a blank line between rows, so you can fit more individuals and information on a page (see "Other Print Settings" on page 163).
- If you print dates, choose a format that prints the date only, so you can fit more individuals and information on a page (see "Selecting Information to Print" on page 162).
- Choose a name format that omits middle names, so you can fit more individuals and information on a page (see "Selecting Information to Print" on page 162).
- Omit borders, titles, and footnotes so you can fit more individuals and information on a page (see "Changing Print Settings" on page 158).
- Choose fewer generations for your tree. This may eliminate the need for using 2 rows per individual, thus allowing you to fit more individuals on a page (see "Choosing The Number Of Generations" on page 156).
- Choose fewer items to print in your tree so you can fit more individuals on a page (see "Selecting Information to Print" on page 162).
- Print an outline direct descendant tree so you can fit more bloodline descendants on a page (see "Printing an Outline Direct Descendant Tree" on page 167).

Figure 4-44. Making your outline descendant tree smaller

PRINTING AN OUTLINE DIRECT DESCENDANT TREE

An outline direct descendant tree shows the direct line of descent from the primary individual to a secondary individual in a later generation, in a compact outline format. Family members not in the direct line of descent (such as a sibling's spouse) do not appear in the outline direct descendant tree. Even siblings can be excluded, making your outline direct descendant trees extremely compact. See Figure 4-45.

The outline direct descendant tree takes less time and paper to print than the standard Direct Descendant Tree, and can be easier to use as a research tool in the library. You might also prefer the outline direct descendant tree when you're sending drafts of your family tree to relatives, or when you're putting together a book that contains many family trees. The outline direct descendant tree, and its relative, the outline descendant tree (see page 153), also make it easy to check your work when you're entering a lot of information.

The only limitation on the amount of information you can include in an outline direct descendant tree is how many items you can fit across a single page. Outline direct descendant trees are only one page wide (this is one of the reasons they're so useful for creating books). If the information you select makes your outline direct descendant tree more than one page wide, Family Tree Maker checks to see if you've chosen any of the automatic field reduction options (see page 177), and helps you reduce the width of your tree until it fits on a single page.

Because people's names are close together on an outline direct descendant tree, you can also quickly see the relationships between a number of people. The outline direct descendant tree is structured so that everyone in one generation is at the same level as everyone else in the generation, everyone in the next generation is indented one level, everyone in the next generation after that is indented another level, and so forth. So you can see just by looking at the tree which people are in the same generation and how the members of other generations relate to them.

To print an outline direct descendant tree you go through the following steps:

1. Select the primary individual. This is the person who will appear first in your outline direct descendant tree, and is typically one of your ancestors.
2. Select the secondary individual. This is the person who will appear last on your outline direct descendant tree.
3. Preview your outline direct descendant tree on-screen before you print it on paper. Optionally, you can change print settings for information to print on the outline direct descendant tree, and more.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your outline direct descendant tree on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press  to go back to the previous screen.

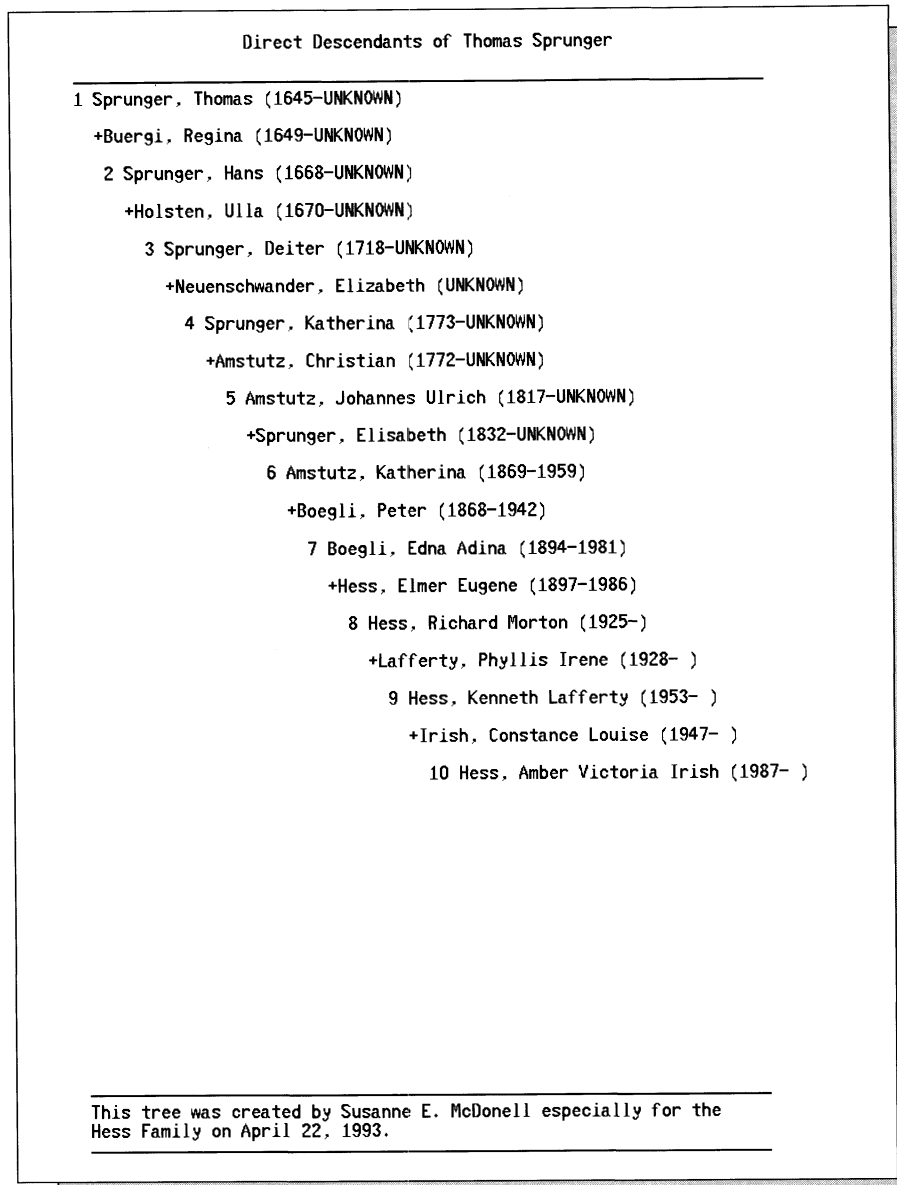


Figure 4-45. An outline direct descendant tree

Selecting The Primary Individual

The first step is to select the primary individual:

1. Press **⌘** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **P – Print tree**.
3. Select **C – Outline direct descendant tree**. The first of four screens appears.

4. Highlight the person you want to be the primary individual (see Figure 4-46).

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press **F7** and type the individual's name. Press **F7** to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g., type "sm" to find "Smith").

5. Press **F10** to continue.

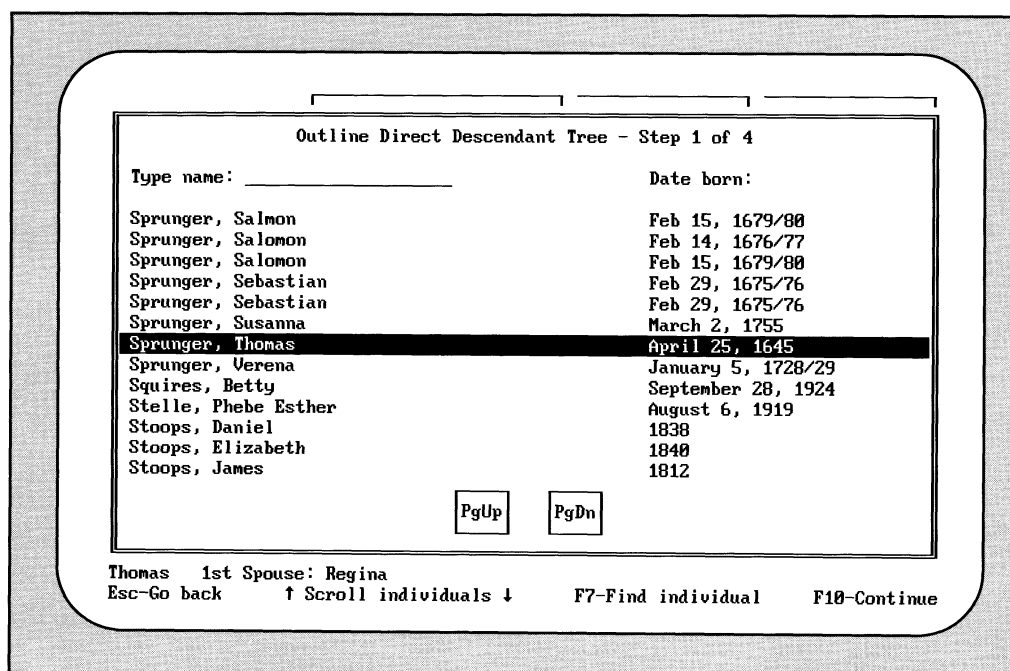


Figure 4-46. Selecting the primary individual

Selecting The Secondary Individual

After you have selected the primary individual, Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled "Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 2 of 4." This screen is very similar to the "Step 1 of 4" screen, except that only the people who are direct descendants of the primary individual will be listed as possible choices.

To select the secondary individual:

1. Highlight the person you want to be the secondary individual.
2. Press **F10** to continue.

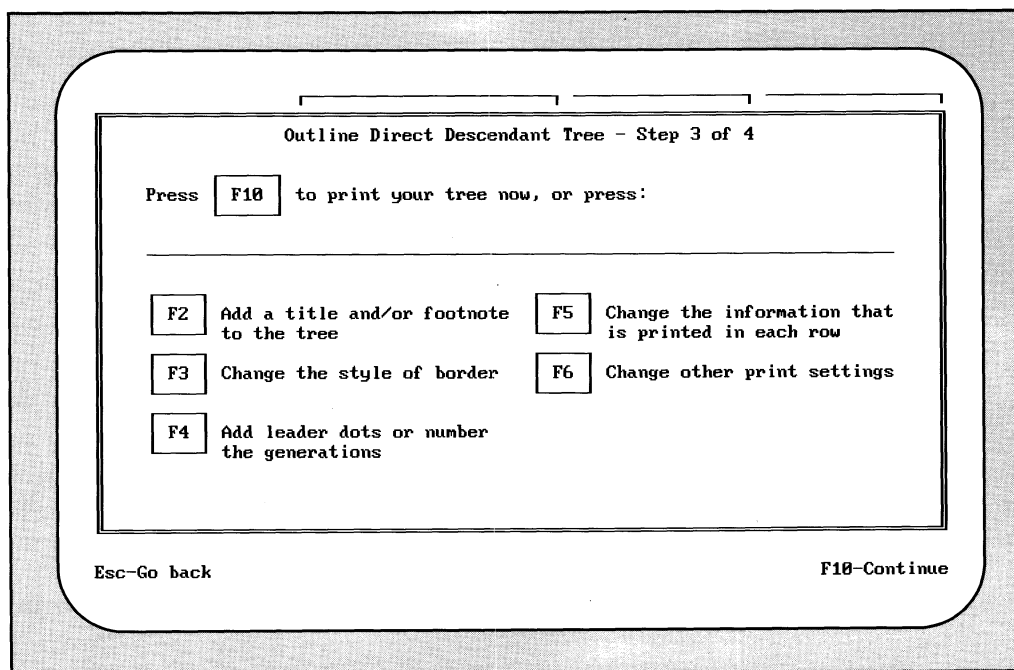


Figure 4-47. Customize your outline direct descendant tree or go ahead and print

Getting Ready To Print


Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4.**” (See Figure 4-47.) You can customize how your outline direct descendant tree will look by changing the print settings (see page 171), or you can print your outline direct descendant tree immediately.




To print your outline direct descendant tree immediately:





1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F10**. The Preview screen appears (the fourth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire outline direct descendant tree before printing (see page 171).
4. Press **F10** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your outline direct descendant tree.





Previewing Your Outline Direct Descendant Tree






Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the outline direct descendant tree on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your outline direct descendant tree will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper.


To go to the primary individual, press .

To move a full screen in any direction, press , , , or .


To move a little bit to the left or right, press  +  or  + .

To move a little bit up or down, press  +  or  + .

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction, hold down the  key and click , , , or .

If you want to change what you see here, press  to go back to the screen labeled “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your outline direct descendant tree in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.


When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press  to print your outline direct descendant tree on paper.

Note: Outline direct descendant trees print only in portrait (tall or vertical) orientation.

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your outline direct descendant tree. You control graphic elements like borders, as well as what information to print.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your outline direct descendant tree, press  from the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen. See Figure 4-48.

You can type a title that prints at the top center of your outline direct descendant tree. The default title is “Direct Descendants of *NAME*.” (When Family Tree Maker sees *NAME* in the title, it automatically substitutes the name of the primary individual.) You can have any title you like.

Your footnote can be up to two lines long. It prints left justified at the bottom of your outline direct descendant tree. You can put the footnote on the first or last page of the outline direct descendant tree.

Outline Direct Descendant Tree Title and Footnote

Title: Direct Descendants of *NAME* _____

Footnote:

Print page numbers? Yes No

Starting page number: 1 _____

Print footnote on which page: First Last

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-48. Creating a title and footnote

If you select page numbers, they will print centered at the bottom of your outline direct descendant tree page. You can also choose the starting page number.

To edit any of these settings:

1. Use , , , and to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, just type it in. If the line requires a selection, use or to move between choices.

When you've finished making changes, press .

You end up back at the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press to preview your outline direct descendant tree, then print.

Border Style

To see or change the border to be drawn at the top and bottom of each page, press from the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-49). To see what different borders look like, use or . When you've found a border you like,

press **F10**. Or press a number, both to choose a border style and to confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your outline direct descendant tree, then print.

Note: Different borders look better with different printers. Experiment!

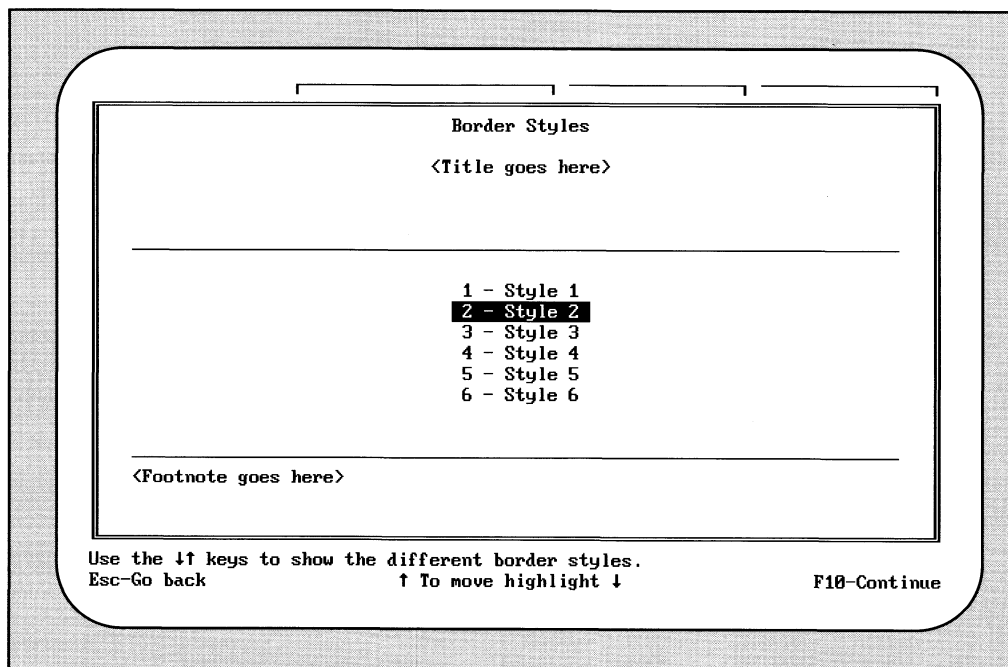


Figure 4-49. Choosing a page border for your tree

Leader Dots and Numbering Generations

To control how Family Tree Maker displays different generations on your outline direct descendant tree, press **F4** from the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-50).

Family Tree Maker gives you three choices to make the organization of your outline direct descendant tree easier to follow: You can precede each person with a series of dots, a number, or both.

If you choose to use numbers, Family Tree Maker will precede each individual with a generation number. You can choose a starting number which will be used for the primary individual. Normally, the primary individual will be numbered “1,” his/her children will be numbered “2,” their children will be numbered “3,” and so on.

You may want to choose a starting generation number other than 1. For example, if you are making a set of outline direct descendant trees, you will want the starting generation number on the second tree to follow sequentially from the last number of the first tree.

You don't have to use numbers or dots if you don't want to. If you decide to print an outline direct descendant tree without numbers or dots, the automatic indentation Family Tree Maker does for each generation will still show you where one generation ends and a new one begins on your outline direct descendant tree.

Note: Family Tree Maker automatically denotes spouses on your outline direct descendant tree by placing them directly below the bloodline descendant to whom they're married. Family Tree Maker also puts a plus in front of the name of each spouse.

With Dots Only

```
Sprunger, Thomas (1645-UNKNOWN)
+Buergi, Regina (1649-UNKNOWN)
. . Sprunger, Hans (1668-UNKNOWN)
. . +Holsten, Ulla (1670-UNKNOWN)
. . . . Sprunger, Deiter (1718-UNKNOWN)
. . . . +Neuenschwander, Elizabeth (UNKNOWN)
. . . . . Sprunger, Katherina (1773-UNKNOWN)
. . . . . +Amstutz, Christian (1772-UNKNOWN)
```

With Numbers Only

```
1 Sprunger, Thomas (1645-UNKNOWN)
  +Buergi, Regina (1649-UNKNOWN)
  2 Sprunger, Hans (1668-UNKNOWN)
    +Holsten, Ulla (1670-UNKNOWN)
    3 Sprunger, Deiter (1718-UNKNOWN)
      +Neuenschwander, Elizabeth (UNKNOWN)
      4 Sprunger, Katherina (1773-UNKNOWN)
        +Amstutz, Christian (1772-UNKNOWN)
```

Figure 4-50. Different ways to show generations

Selecting Information to Print

To modify or examine the information to print in your outline direct descendant tree, press **F5** from the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen (see Figure 4-51 on page 176).

The box on the left shows the information to be printed. You can add items to this list or delete them, one at a time, by pressing **F7**. You can also erase them all and start over by pressing **F8**. The message line at the bottom of the screen shows you a recommended number of items per individual.

To add an item to print for each individual:

1. Use **↓** or **↑** to highlight your choice in the box on the right side of the screen.
2. Press **Enter**.

Names and dates can appear in a variety of formats and arrangements. Reselect the name or date item to see and/or change its format.

Statistics, such as age at birth of children, age at death, and age at first marriage, always print with their field labels (for example, “Age at death: 40”). If a “?” prints, it means that there is no information in a date field. If “est” prints, as in “Age at death: 40 est,” it means that a date was uncertain. (A date that is uncertain contains a modifier such as “about,” “before,” or “after.” As always, you should enter an uncertain date instead of nothing.)

Note: The outline direct descendant tree comfortably accommodates 3 to 4 items per individual. While you can choose any number of additional items, we recommend you limit the number of items.

If your choices make the outline direct descendant tree more than one page wide, Family Tree Maker can automatically reduce the width of each row if you’ve chosen any of the automatic reduction options on the **F6 – Other Print Settings** screen (see “Other Print Settings” on page 177).

Press **F10** when you’ve finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your outline direct descendant tree, then print.

Each row in your tree will contain these items.

Highlight each additional item to print, then press Enter.

First Middle & Last name Birth-death	Item names <hr/> Name Birth date/location Marriage date/location Death date/location Age at birth of first child Age at birth of last child Age at death PgDn
---	---

Recommended number of items to print: 1-4. 2 items are selected.
 Esc-Go back F7-Remove last print item F8-Start over F10-Continue

Figure 4-51. Selecting information to print

Other Print Settings

Print spouses? Yes No

Print siblings of direct descendants? Yes No

Leave a blank line between rows? Yes No

Indent each generation by how many spaces:
 2 (fits most people) 4 6 8 (fits fewest people)

Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page? Yes No


Allow 2 rows per individual? Yes No

Characters per inch: 12.00 17.14

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 4-52. Other Print Settings

Other Print Settings

To modify or examine other print settings, press  from the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen.

The “**Other Print Settings**” screen gives you several choices (see Figure 4-52 on page 176.)

Print spouses? — Normally, the spouse prints directly below the bloodline descendant, with a plus sign in front of his or her name. Choose **No** to suppress the printing of spouses, if desired.

Print siblings of direct descendants? — Choose **Yes** if you want to see the siblings of each direct descendant. Choose **No** if you want to keep the tree as compact as possible.

Leave a blank line between rows? — This choice tells Family Tree Maker if you want to put an extra space between each individual and the next. Choose **No** if you want to get the most individuals on a page. See Figure 4-45 on page 168 for an example with blank lines between rows.

Indent each generation by how many spaces? — This choice lets you specify how big an indentation you want each generation to have. Choose a smaller number to get the most information on the page. Choose a larger number for clearer differentiation among generations, if you don't mind getting less information on one page.

Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page? — This option tells Family Tree Maker to automatically perform space saving measures, such as abbreviating the names of states, so that you can fit more information on each page. If you've selected this option, and Family Tree Maker discovers that the items you've chosen make your outline direct descendant tree more than one page wide, then it performs the following abbreviations:

- First, it changes the dates to the narrowest format.
- Then, if it is still more than one page wide, Family Tree Maker abbreviates locations (so, for example, Minnesota becomes MN).
- Finally, if necessary, Family Tree Maker will try abbreviating names. First it drops the middle name, then if the name is still too big to fit, Family Tree Maker abbreviates it by printing the first name as an initial.

Allow 2 rows per individual? — Choose **Yes** to let Family Tree Maker automatically wrap text to a second row. This option lets an individual have two rows of information. The second row begins directly below the beginning of the first, so it's clearly a second row, not a new generation (which would be indented).

```

Sprunger, Thomas (1645-UNKNOWN)
+Buergi, Regina (1649-UNKNOWN)
. . Sprunger, Hans (1668-UNKNOWN)
. . +Holsten, Ulla (1670-UNKNOWN);Born in Switzerland.
    Ballerina.
. . . . Sprunger, Deiter (1718-UNKNOWN);Made a fortune in
        the diamond industry.
. . . . . +Neuenschwander, Elizabeth (UNKNOWN)
. . . . . . Sprunger, Katherina (1773-UNKNOWN)
. . . . . . +Amstutz, Christian (1772-UNKNOWN)
. . . . . . . Amstutz, Johannes Ulrich (1817-UNKNOWN)
. . . . . . . . +Sprunger, Elisabeth (1832-UNKNOWN);Same
                last name as above, but not related.
. . . . . . . . . Amstutz, Katherina (1869-1959)
. . . . . . . . . +Boegli, Peter (1868-1942)
. . . . . . . . . . Boegli, Edna Adina (1894-1981)
. . . . . . . . . . . +Hess, Elmer Eugene (1897-1986)

```







Figure 4-53. Example of Other Print Setting choices



See Figure 4-53 above. The dots signal new people. The indentations signal new generations. In the example above, you can tell from the absence of dots on the fifth line that the text refers to Ulla Holsten. You can tell from the indentation on the third line that Hans Sprunger is the child of Thomas Sprunger and Regina Buergi.

Characters per inch — Choose the size characters you want your printer to use.

Note: If you choose **Yes** for “Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page?” AND “Allow two rows per individual,” Family Tree Maker will only do these things if it is necessary in order to make your tree fit on one page wide. In that case, Family Tree Maker will first use 2 rows per individual only for those individuals whose rows don't fit. Then, if an individual's information still doesn't fit, Family Tree Maker will start implementing the abbreviations.

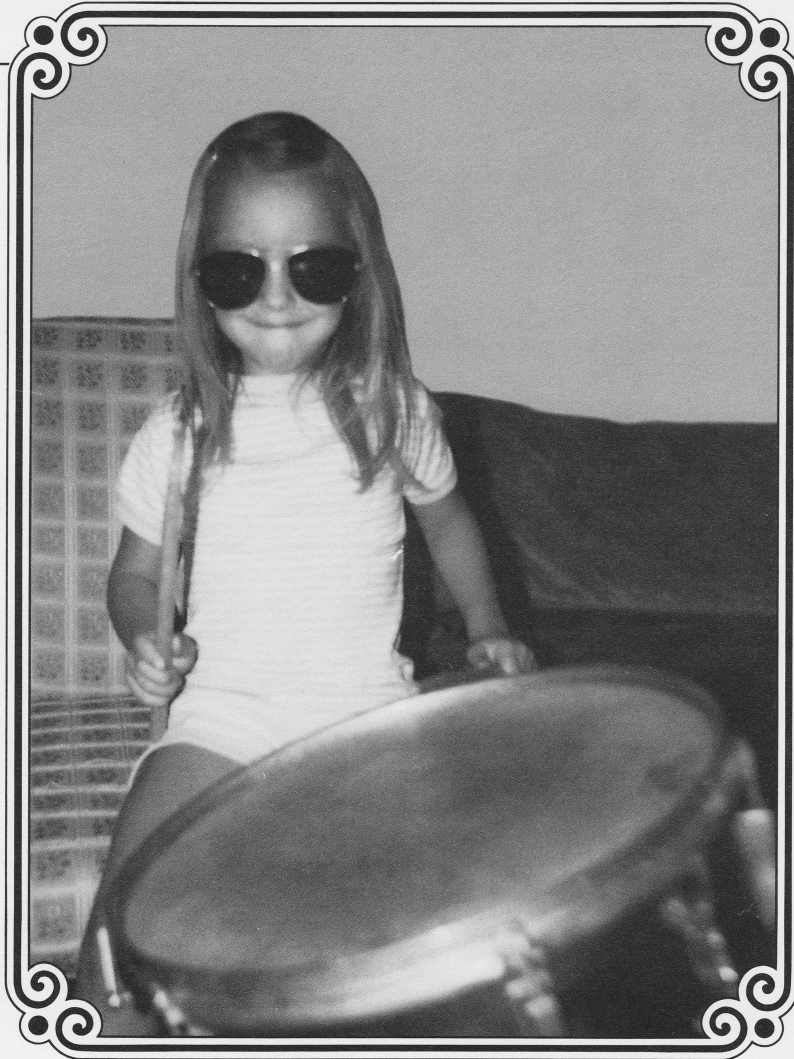
To change any of these settings:

1. Use , , , and  to move to the line you want to change.
2. Use  or  to highlight your choice on a given line.

Press  when you've finished making changes. You end up back at the “**Outline Direct Descendant Tree – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press  to preview your outline descendant tree, then print.

Chapter 5

OTHER PRINTING



Courtney Kermeen, Family Tree Maker's Product Manager, is pictured here playing with a family friend's sunglasses and drum in 1974. The picture was later sent to her grandfather, who played drums in a Dixieland band.



OTHER PRINTING

In addition to trees, you can print summary lists of information. This chapter covers how to print each of the following summaries:

- Family Tree Maker lets you print **Family and Individual Cards**, both filled out and blank ones. These give you a paper copy of what you see on the screen (see below).
- The **List of Individuals** is a sorted list of all the family members in the card file, along with their birth dates (see page 182).
- The **Family Group Sheet** is a detailed report on a single nuclear family (husband, wife, and children) including names, event dates, and locations (see page 184).
- A **Calendar** shows birthdays and anniversaries, so you'll always know when to send cards or call family members (see page 186).
- **Custom report** lets you create columnar reports of information for everyone in your card file, or just for selected individuals (see page 188).
- **Batch printing** lets you print a lot of information with one simple procedure. Batch print also provides page numbering and indexing functions to help you keep track of the information (see page 198).

PRINTING FAMILY AND INDIVIDUAL CARDS

The **Family Card** shows all the members of a nuclear family: a husband, a wife, and their children. On this card you add new family members and new information about existing family members. It's the first screen that you see after the Family Tree Maker title screen, and it's the primary screen for entering family information.

To print the current Family Card, press **Alt** + **P** (hold down the **Alt** key while you press **P**). Then, choose whether or not to print a page number at the bottom center of the page, and select a starting page number if appropriate. Press **F10** when you're done.

To print a blank Family Card, first press **Alt** + **P** then press **Alt** + **F10**.

Note: When you print a Family Card, more information will print than shows on the screen. The Source field (called "src" on the printout) will also appear for birth, death, and marriage fields. See "Recording Sources" on Page 63 for more information about sources.

The **Individual Cards** are where you place all additional information about a person. You can keep track of events such as a baptism, emigration, or high school graduation. You can record physical, and medical information. Each individual has four cards, as described in Chapter 3, starting on page 64.

To print an individual's card(s):

1. From the Family Card, press **Ⓜ** to bring up the Individual Cards selection window.
2. Use **Ⓢ** and **Ⓣ** to highlight the name of the person whose cards you want to work with. (If the cursor is on an individual's name on the Family Card, that person's name will be highlighted in the selection window.)
3. Press **Ⓜ**.

Special Tip: You can go directly from the Family Card to any Individual Card by holding down **Ⓜ** and pressing the number of the Individual Card. For example, position your cursor on an individual and press **Ⓜ** + **1** to go directly to their Individual Card 1.

4. To print a person's first three Individual Cards, press **Ⓜ** + **Ⓟ** (hold down the **Ⓜ** key while you press **Ⓟ**). Then, choose whether or not to print a page number at the bottom center of the page, and select a starting page number if appropriate. Press **Ⓜ** when you're done.
5. To print blank Individual Cards when you're on any Individual Card 1, press **Ⓜ** + **Ⓟ**, then press **Ⓜ** + **Ⓜ**.
6. To print Individual Card 4, display it and press **Ⓜ** + **Ⓟ**. (hold down the **Ⓜ** key while you press **Ⓟ**). Then, choose whether or not to print a page number at the bottom center of the page, and select a starting page number if appropriate. Press **Ⓜ** when you're done.

PRINTING THE LIST OF INDIVIDUALS

The **List of Individuals** is a list of all the family members and their birth dates. You can sort the list by name or birth date (oldest first or youngest first). It looks very much like the Index of Names (described on page 86) that you see when you press **Ⓜ** from any Family Card. See the sample in Figure I-4 on page 7.

Printing A List Of All The Individuals In Your Card File

To print a list of all the individuals in your card file:

1. Start from any Family Card.
2. Press **Ⓜ** to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **L – Print list**.
4. Select **L – List of Individuals**. The **List of Individuals** screen appears. Optionally, enter a title for your list and/or sort the list by highlighting your choice of sorts.

-
-
5. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
 6. Turn your printer on.
 7. Press **F10** to move to the Preview screen, where you can review the list before it prints on paper.
 8. Press **F10** again to print your list on paper, or press **ESC** to go back to make changes.

Printing A Specific List Of Individuals

You can print a specific **List of Individuals** (instead of all the names in your card file) by using the **Find individual** command to narrow down the list. For example, you can print just the people born after 1900, or only those with the last name “Hess.”

To print a specific **List of individuals**:

1. From any Family Card, press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
2. Choose **L – Print list**.
3. Choose **L – List of individuals**.

Family Tree Maker now displays the “**List of Individuals**” screen.

4. Press **Ctrl** + **F10**.

Family Tree Maker now asks you which name you’d like to search for. Either type a name, or search using a different field. Press **F5** if you wish to search using a different field (see “Find individual” on page 81 for further assistance). You can search using dates, events, comments, or even phrases in Individual Card 4 – Notes. Even though you can search using any field, this example will continue using the Name field for simplicity.

Generally, the less you type the better, because you’ll find more people and you’re less likely to make typos. For example, type “Br” instead of “Brickman.”

5. Press **F10**.

Family Tree Maker now shows you a preview of your list on the screen. If it’s not what you want, you can press **ESC** and change things before wasting paper.

6. Press **F10** to begin printing.

PRINTING A FAMILY GROUP SHEET

A **Family Group Sheet** is a detailed report on a single nuclear family (husband, wife, and children) including names, event dates and locations. See the sample in Figure I-4 on page 7.

To print the Family Group Sheet:

1. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **L – Print list**.
3. Select **F – Family group sheet**.
4. Highlight the husband or wife of the family whose information you want to print.

If you have trouble finding the individual you're looking for, use the Find individual command in this list. Simply press **F7** and type the individual's name. Press **F7** to find the first match, and again for other matches. If you're not sure of the exact name, type a smaller portion of it (e.g., type "sm" to find "Smith").
5. Press **Enter**. If the individual you selected has a spouse or spouses, Family Tree Maker displays a list of couples. If the individual you selected has no spouses, the "**Family Group Sheet – Step 2 of 3**" screen appears, and you should skip to step 7.
6. Select the husband and wife couple of the family whose information you want to print. The "**Family Group Sheet – Step 2 of 3**" screen appears (see Figure 5-1).
7. Fill in the information that Family Tree Maker asks for. Decide whether you want to print field labels for sources and fields from Individual Card 2.

Choose whether you want the first spouse of each child or the current/last spouse of each child to print. Finally, select whether to print page numbers and a starting number (if applicable).
8. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
9. Turn your printer on.

Family Group Sheet - Step 2 of 3

Your name: _____
 address: _____

 phone: _____
 date: _____

Print field labels? Yes No

For children, show which spouse: First Current(or last)

Print page numbers? Yes No

Starting page number: 1_

Esc-Go back Ctrl+F10-1st part Alt+F10-Print empty sheet F10-Continue

Figure 5-1. The Family Group Sheet – Step 2 of 3 screen

At this point you have three choices for how the Family Group Sheet prints:

- Press **F10** to print the complete Family Group Sheet. There are two parts; the first part contains information from the Family Card and Individual Card 1. The second part contains information from Individual Cards 2 and 3. This listing is two or more pages long depending on the number of children and the capabilities of your printer.
- Press **Ctrl + F10** to print just the first part of the Family Group Sheet (hold down the **Ctrl** key and press **F10**). This listing contains just the information from the Family Card and Individual Card 1. It can be one or more pages long depending on the number of children and the capabilities of your printer.
- If you want to print an empty Family Group Sheet to fill out by hand, press **Alt + F10** (hold down the **Alt** key and press **F10**).

Family Tree Maker now displays the Preview screen, where you can review the sheet before it prints on paper.


10. Press **F10** to print the sheet on paper.

If you selected **Yes** to use the LDS format for reports in **Program Setup**, several new fields will be added to the Family Group Sheet. See Appendix B, page 239, for details.

PRINTING A CALENDAR

You can print monthly calendars to help you keep track of family members' birthdays and anniversaries. You can even include their ages and how long they've been married. A sample calendar is shown in Figure 5-2 on page 185.

To print a calendar, from any Family Card:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **L – Print list**.
3. Select **C – Calendar**. Family Tree Maker displays the “**Calendar – Step 1 of 3**” screen. On this screen you can make choices about how the calendar prints.
 - **Print:** — Use this option to tell Family Tree Maker what you want printed in the calendar. You can print birthdays, anniversaries, or both. If too many events fall on a single day, “**More**” prints at the bottom of the day and the rest of the events will print on the next page.
 - **For the year:** — Use this option to tell Family Tree Maker which year you wish to print.
 - **For the month:** — Use this option to choose the months you want to print.
 - **Print age for birthdays, years of marriage for anniv.** — You can have Family Tree Maker automatically calculate the age of the birthday person, or the number of years the couple has been married. This number will be displayed next to the names. If a “?” prints, it means that there is no information in a date field. If “est” prints, as in “Bonnie Anderson 85 est,” it means that you entered an uncertain date. (A date that is uncertain contains a modifier such as “about,” “before,” or “after.”)

Events that fall on February 29th will show on February 28th if the calendar is not for a leap year. Anniversaries of divorced or annulled couples will not print.

- **Print only if still alive?** — Use this option to print birthdays and anniversaries for everyone in your card file or only those who are still living. Choose **Yes** to print only those people who are still alive. Choose **No** to see how old a deceased individual would be in the year for which the calendar is printed, or to see which ancestors have the same birthdays as your living relatives.
- **Print married name for female family members?** — Use this setting if you want to print women with their married name as their last name, and their maiden name as their middle name (the given middle name is dropped). For example, Phyllis Irene Lafferty, who is married to Richard Hess, would print as Phyllis Lafferty Hess.

4. Use , , , and to move to the line you want to change. Then, use or to move between choices, or type in any necessary text.
5. When you've finished making changes, press . The "Calendar – Step 2 of 3" screen appears.
6. Use and to highlight the name format you want to use for all individuals in your calendar. Press to confirm your selection.

The Preview screen now appears. You can preview your entire calendar before printing.

7. If you're happy with the appearance of your calendar press to begin printing. If not, press to go back to "Calendar – Step 1 of 3" to make changes.

January 1993 Birthdays and Anniversaries

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
					1	2
3	4	5 Howard Lewellyn Boegli 95	6 George Richard Hess 85 Ronald Lee Schutts 41	7	8 Dingus McCee 61 Pamela & William Herbert Friend 21	9
10	11	12	13	14	15 Tommy Dale Hancock 41	16
17	18	19	20	21 Lucy Lavina Jane Hancock 76 Janice Elizabeth & Joshua Brechtelsbauer 37	22 Andrew Franklin Hancock 71 Kenneth Lafferty Hess 40	23 Janet Irene & Robert Randall Hancock 20
24 Edna Belle Hess 84	25 John Eric Brechtelsbauer 29	26	27	28	29	30
31						

Figure 5-2. A sample calendar

PRINTING CUSTOM REPORTS

A **Custom Report** is a columnar report similar to the **List of individuals**, but you can have as many columns as will fit on one page. You can print as many different custom reports as you wish. A Custom report always prints in portrait orientation. Custom reports can include all individuals in your card file, or just individuals you select. For example, you can print a report that contains only the people born on a certain day or in a certain place or any one of a variety of other combinations of information. A sample Custom report is shown in Figure 5-3.

Hess Descendants born in Pennsylvania		
Name	Birth location	Birth-death
Biddle, Janet Irene	Butler Co., PA	1948 -
Crawford, Mary	Dauphin Co., PA	1770 - 1835
Emmert, Mary	PA	1794 - 1853
Hancock, Albert Henry	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1864 - 1952
Hancock, Andrew Jackson	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1861 - 1960
Hancock, Charles E.	Ligonier Twp., Westmoreland Co., PA	1886 - 1956
Hancock, Clarence Wilbert	Leechburg, Armstrong Co., PA	1907 - 1978
Hancock, David Gipson	Armstrong Co., PA	1819 - 1887
Hancock, David Gipson	Armstrong Co., PA	1859 - 1934
Hancock, Dorothy Mae	Leechburg, PA	1918 -
Hancock, Earl	Ligonier Twp., Westmoreland Co. PA	1889 -
Hancock, Edwin Martin	Vandergrift, Westmoreland Co., PA	1910 - 1966
Hancock, Genevieve	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1911 -
Hancock, Harold Laverne	Leechburg, Armstrong Co., PA	1910 - 1977
Hancock, Harry Wilbert	Ligonier Twp. Westmoreland Co., PA	1887 - 1958
Hancock, Henry	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1823 - 1903
Hancock, James Harry	Kittanning, PA	1946 -
Hancock, James Herbison	Kelly Station, PA	1910 -
Hancock, James M.	Kelly Station, PA	1858 - 1861
Hancock, John	PA	1787 - 1851
Hancock, John	PA	1814 - 1852
Hancock, John Abraham	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1854 - 1922
Hancock, Lawrence Wilbert	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1915 -
Hancock, Nancy	Armstrong Co., PA	1810 - 1890
Hancock, Nancy Jane	Kelly Station, PA	1851 - 1935
Hancock, Nellie Iota	Rector, Westmoreland Co., PA	1891 - 1967
Hancock, Percy Deering	Ligonier Twp. Westmoreland Co., PA	1884 - 1971
Hancock, Robert Randall	Kittanning, Armstrong Co., PA	1947 -
Hancock, Russell Clarence	Kelly Station, Armstrong Co., PA	1909 -
Hancock, Susannah	Armstrong Co., PA	1812 -
Lafferty, Phyllis Irene	Harrisburg, Dauphin Co., PA	1928 -
Lafferty, Samuel	PA	1801 - 1873
Lindsey, Rebecca	PA	1817 - 1839
McDowell, Margaret	PA	1803 - 1861
McMichael, James	PA	1793 - 1861
McMichael, Sarah Ann	Erie Co., PA	1820 - 1901
Mechling, May C.	Armstrong Co., PA	1866 - 1923
Myers, Ida Marie	New Eagle, Washington Co., PA	1909 -
Riggle, Lavina	Armstrong Co., PA	1828 - 1916
Schultz, Juliana	PA	1804 - 1848
Shaulis, Adam P.	PA	1795 - 1867
Shaulis, Elizabeth Rebecca	Westmoreland Co., PA	1858 - 1929
Shaulis, Noah	Somerset Co., PA	1825 - 1906
Shetler, Sarah	PA	1785 - 1873
Thompson, Jennie Mae	Gilpin Twp. Allegheny Co., PA	1885 - 1956
Umburn, Margaret Hazel	Waynesburg, PA	1898 - 1918
Wescott, Amber Amelia	Geneva, Crawford Co., PA	1872 - 1963
Wescott, Nathan	Greenwood Twp., Crawford Co., PA	1818 - 1900

This report was created especially for the Hess Family
by Susanne E. McDonell on April 25, 1993.

1

Figure 5-3. A sample Custom report

To print a custom report, you go through the following steps (details follow):

1. Choose which individuals you want to have appear in the report.
2. Choose which information about those individuals you want to print.
3. Preview your report on-screen before you print it on paper. Optionally, you can change print settings for titles and footnotes, border styles, and more.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your report on paper.

If you change your mind at any point, press **[Esc]** to go back to the previous screen.

Selecting Individuals To Print

The first step is to choose the individuals you want to include in your report:

1. Press **[F9]** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **L – Print List**
3. Select **R – Custom report**. The “**Custom Report – Step 1 of 4**” screen appears.
4. Highlight the method for choosing the group of individuals you want to include in your report.

For example, highlight “birth location” if you want to select all the individuals who were born in the same place.

5. Press **[F10]**.

If you chose:

- **All individuals** — Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Custom Report – Step 2 of 4**” screen. Skip to “Selecting Information To Print” on page 190.
- **Selected individuals** — Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Custom Report – Step 1A of 4**” screen. Use **[↑]** and **[↓]** to move through the list and press **[Enter←]** to “mark” the individuals you want to include in your report. Press **[Enter←]** a second time to erase a mark. You can also press **[F8]** to mark all individuals (or to erase all marks you have made). When you are done marking the individuals, press **[F10]**.

The “**Custom Report – Step 2 of 4**” screen appears (see Figure 5-4 on page 190).

- **Ancestors or Descendants** — Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Custom Report – Step 1A of 4**” screen. Use and to highlight the primary individual (the person whose ancestors or descendants you want to include in your report). Press .

The “**Custom Report – Step 2 of 4**” screen appears (see Figure 5-4).

- **Any of the field names** (Birth location, for example) — Family Tree Maker now displays the “Find Individual” screen. Type the specific piece of information you want Family Tree Maker to look for. For example, type **Baltimore** in the Birth location field if you want to select all individuals who were born in Baltimore. See “Find Individual” on page 81 for more information. Press .

The “**Custom Report – Step 2 of 4**” screen appears (see Figure 5-4).

Selecting Information To Print

Family Tree Maker produces reports that are divided into columns. The first column usually contains the names of the individuals you selected in “**Custom Report – Step 1 of 4.**” The other columns contain whatever other items you want to include in your report along with the names. However, you can choose to put names in any other column if you like. In fact, you can even choose not to include names at all. Each row in your report will contain information about a particular individual, whether or not you choose to include their name.

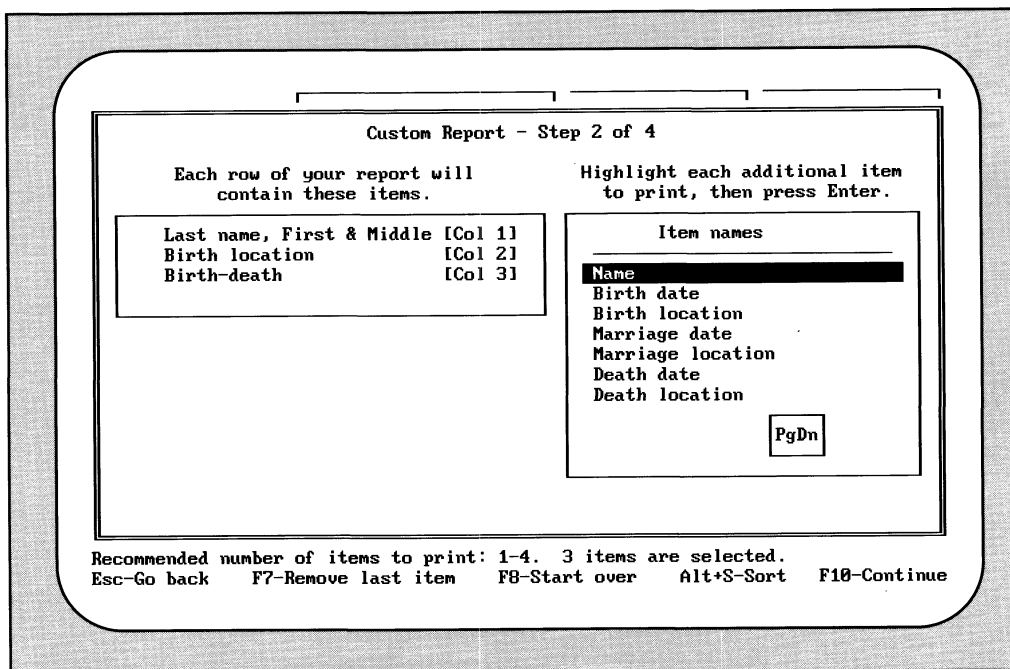


Figure 5-4. Selecting information to print

To choose the information about each individual that you want to include in the report, first make sure you're on the "Custom Report – Step 2 of 4" screen.

1. Use or to highlight your choice in the box on the right side of the screen.
2. Press to select each item.

Names and dates can appear in a variety of formats. Reselect the name or date item to see and/or change its format.

3. You can sort your report based on any two items that you have selected to print. Highlight the field you want to sort, then press + . Family Tree Maker asks whether you want to sort in ascending order (A first) or descending order (Z first). See Figure 5-5.

Your primary sort is based on the first item you select. Your secondary sort, if you choose one, is based on the second item you select. The secondary sort breaks ties between items in the primary sort. A numeral 1 appears in front of the primary sort item, followed by an A or D (for ascending or descending order, respectively). A numeral 2 precedes the secondary sort item.

To turn off sorting, re-select the item and choose **No sort**.

If selected to sort, the Name item is always sorted by last name. If no items are selected to sort, Family Tree Maker automatically sorts by last name.

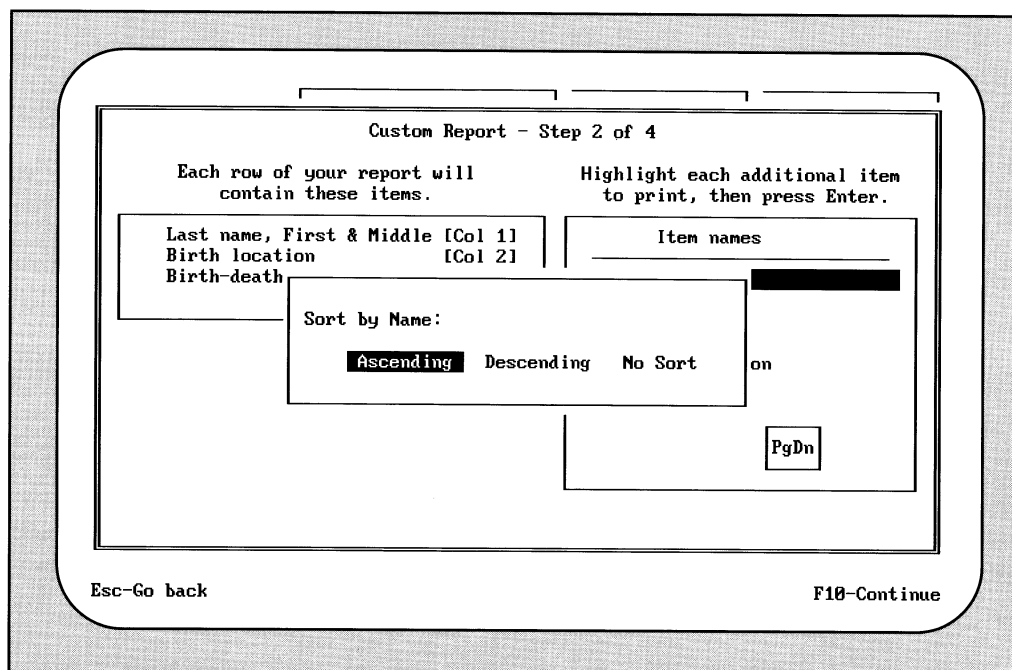


Figure 5-5. Sorting information in a report

Note: Reports can be only one page wide. If the information you decide to include won't fit on a single page across, Family Tree Maker can perform some space-saving operations to try to make all the information fit. See "Abbreviate certain items to fit more information per page" on page 196 for one way Family Tree Maker helps you fit your columns on a page.

If you want a two-or-more-page wide report, you can print a second report for the same group of individuals. Just choose whichever items to print that wouldn't fit on the first page. You may not want to include names, to keep them from being repeated in each row.

4. Press **F10** to continue when you're done choosing items to print. The "Custom Report – Step 3 of 4" screen appears.

Getting Ready To Print

Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled "Custom Report – Step 3 of 4." You can customize how your report will look by changing the print settings (see page 194), or you can print your report immediately.

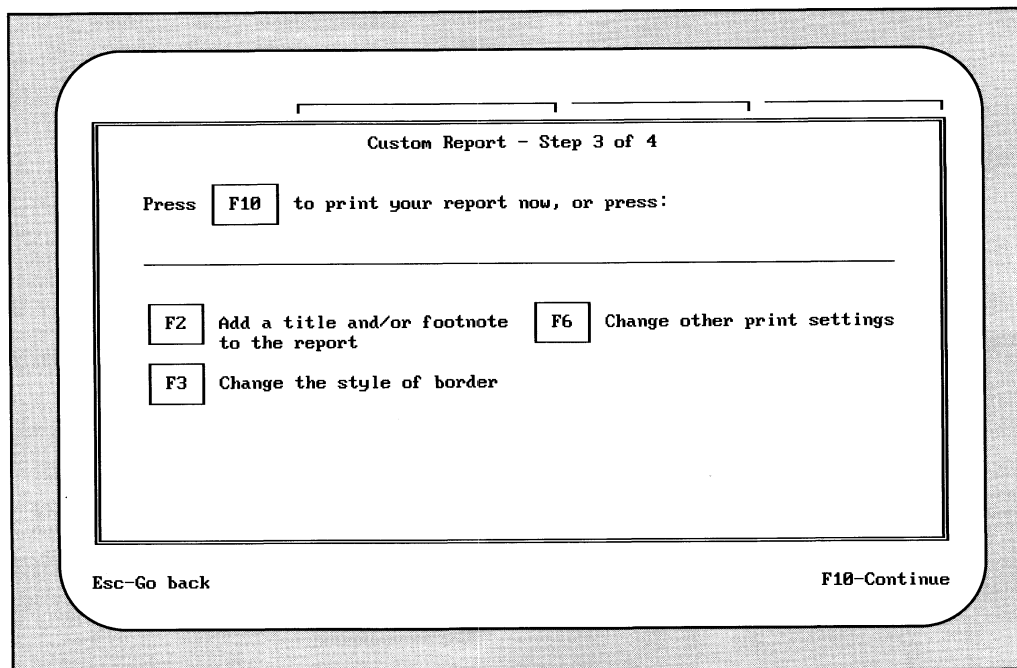


Figure 5-6. Customize your report or go ahead and print

To print your report immediately:

1. Adjust the paper so that the print head is at the top of the page. (Ignore this step if you have a laser printer, sheet feeder, or plotter.)
2. Turn your printer on.
3. Press **F10**. The Preview screen appears (the fourth and final step before printing on paper). You preview your entire report before printing (details follow).
4. Press **F10** to begin printing if you are happy with the appearance of your report.

Previewing Your Report

Before printing to paper, Family Tree Maker gives you a “preview” of the report on the screen. The Preview screen shows you exactly what your report will look like when printed so that you can make adjustments if necessary before printing and save paper.

To go to the top of the report, press **home**.

To move a full screen in any direction, press **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

To move a little bit to the left or right, press **Ctrl** + **←** or **Ctrl** + **→**.

To move a little bit up or down, press **Ctrl** + **PgUp** or **Ctrl** + **PgDn**.

Note to Mouse Users: To move a little bit in any direction using your mouse, hold down, the **Ctrl** key and click **↑**, **↓**, **←**, or **→**.

If you want to change what you see here, press **esc** to go back to the screen labeled “Custom Report – Step 3 of 4” to make the proper adjustments.

Family Tree Maker uses the most recent print settings unless you decide to change them. Print settings, described in the next section, determine the appearance of your report in a number of ways. As you become familiar with Family Tree Maker, you’ll want to experiment with different print settings.

When you’re satisfied with what you see on the Preview screen, press **F10** to print your report on paper.

Changing Print Settings

You can control various aspects of the appearance of your reports. You can control the borders and column headers, as well as titles, footnotes, and more.

Title and Footnote

To modify or examine the title and footnote for your report, press **F2** from the “**Custom Reports – Step 3 of 4**” screen.

You can type a title (up to two lines) that prints at the top center of your report. You can have any title you like.

Custom Report Title and Footnote

Title: _____

Footnote: _____

Print page numbers? **Yes** No

Starting page number: 1__

Print footnote on which page: **First** Last

Esc-Go back F10-Continue

Figure 5-7. Creating a title and footnote

Your footnote can be up to two lines long. It prints in the lower left corner of your report, on either the first or last page. Decide whether or not to number the pages of your report and assign a starting page number if appropriate.

When you’ve finished making changes, press **F10**.

You end up back at the “**Custom Reports – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your tree, then print.

Border Style

To see or to change the border to be drawn at the top and bottom of your report, press **F3** from the “**Custom Reports – Step 3 of 4**” screen. Family Tree Maker gives you several options for border styles.

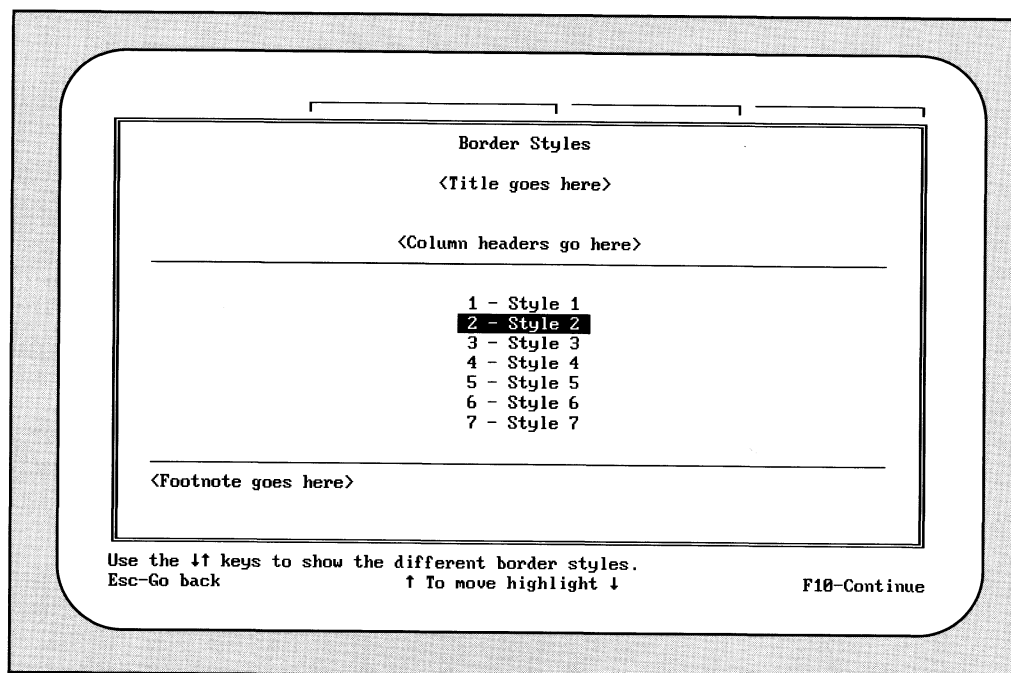


Figure 5-8. Custom report border styles

1. To see what different borders look like, use **↑** or **↓**.
2. When you've found a border you like, press **F10**. Or press a number, to both choose a border style and confirm your choice with a single keystroke.

You end up back at the “**Custom Report – Step 3 of 4**” screen, where you can either modify other settings or press **F10** to preview your report, then print.

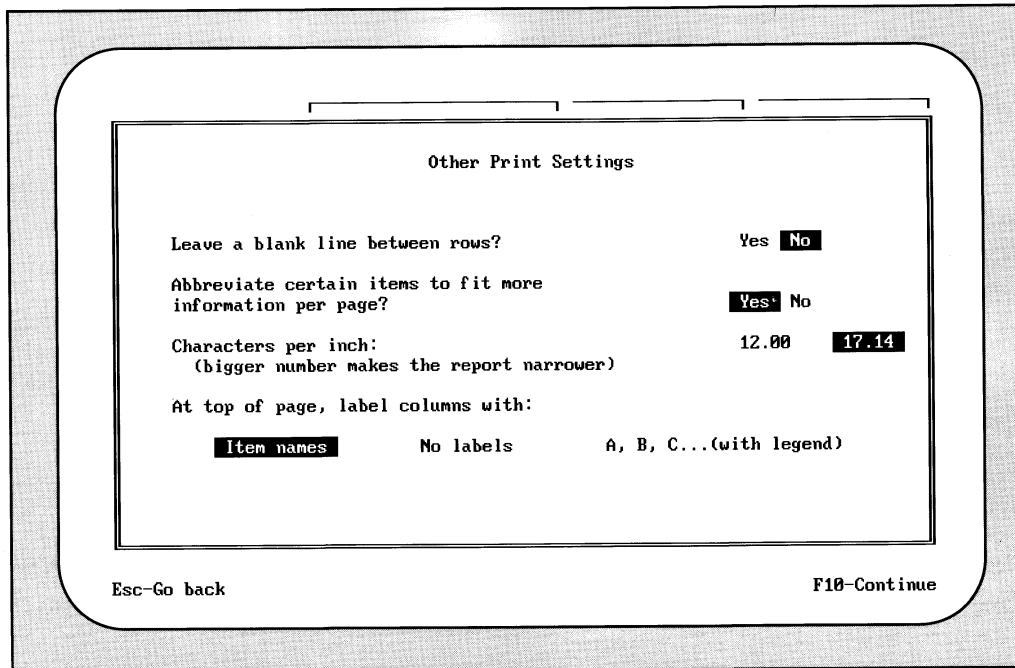


Figure 5-9. Other Print Settings

Other Print Settings

To modify or examine other print settings, press **F6** from the “**Custom Reports – Step 3 of 4**” screen. The “**Other Print Settings**” screen gives you several choices.

Leave a blank line between rows? — Lets you specify a blank line between rows on a report. Choosing this option means your report will take up more space, but it may also be easier to read when you print it out.

Abbreviate certain items to fit more information on a page? — This option tells Family Tree Maker to automatically perform space saving measures, such as abbreviating the names of states, so that you can fit more information on each page. If you’ve selected this option, and Family Tree Maker discovers that the columns you’ve chosen make your report more than one page wide, it performs the following abbreviations:

- It first abbreviates all the dates in the report.
- If your report is still more than one page wide, Family Tree Maker then abbreviates all the locations in the report (so, for example, Minnesota becomes MN throughout the report).
- Finally, Family Tree Maker tries to make all the columns you’ve chosen fit in the report by abbreviating names, one name at a time. First it drops the middle name. If the columns you’ve chosen still won’t fit on one page, Family Tree Maker prints the first names as initials. Family Tree Maker will only abbreviate the names that are too big to fit.

Characters per inch — You can choose the size of the characters your printer uses.

At top of page, label columns with: — This option lets you specify whether you want a column label at the top of each column, and how you want it to appear. The regular column label is simply the field label of the item you've selected ("Age at birth of first child" for example).

Column labels can be very wide — in some cases much wider than the information listed under them. To make your report narrower, you can choose to replace the column labels with single letters (A, B, C, etc.). If you choose to do this, then a legend (or key) will print at the bottom of your report. For example, "A = Name." "B = Age at birth of first child."

To change any of these settings:

1. Use or to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, just type it in. If the line requires a yes-no answer, use or to move between choices.

When you've finished making changes, press .

BATCH PRINTING

When you want to print a lot of information, Family Tree Maker gives you a convenient way to produce and organize it. The batch print feature lets you specify what document you want to print for different individuals or groups. Batch print also provides page numbering and indexing functions to help you keep track of information in large documents you create.

You can batch print Family Group Sheets, Individual Cards, or Family Cards. You can tell Family Tree Maker to batch print only Individual Cards 1-3 if you don't want to print your notes about each individual. Or you can tell Family Tree Maker to print only Individual Card 4, the Notes card, for each individual you select.

Here are the basic steps to start a batch print (details follow):

1. Choose what type of document you want to print for the group.
2. Choose the individuals you want to have in your batch print.
3. Specify how you want the information to print.
4. Tell Family Tree Maker to print your documents on paper.

Selecting Information To Print

Family Tree Maker lets you select a variety of ways to present information in your batch printed documents. You can print several Family Group Sheets or Family Cards, or print several Individual Card 1-3s, Individual Card 4s, or Individual Card 1-4s. See Figure 5-10.

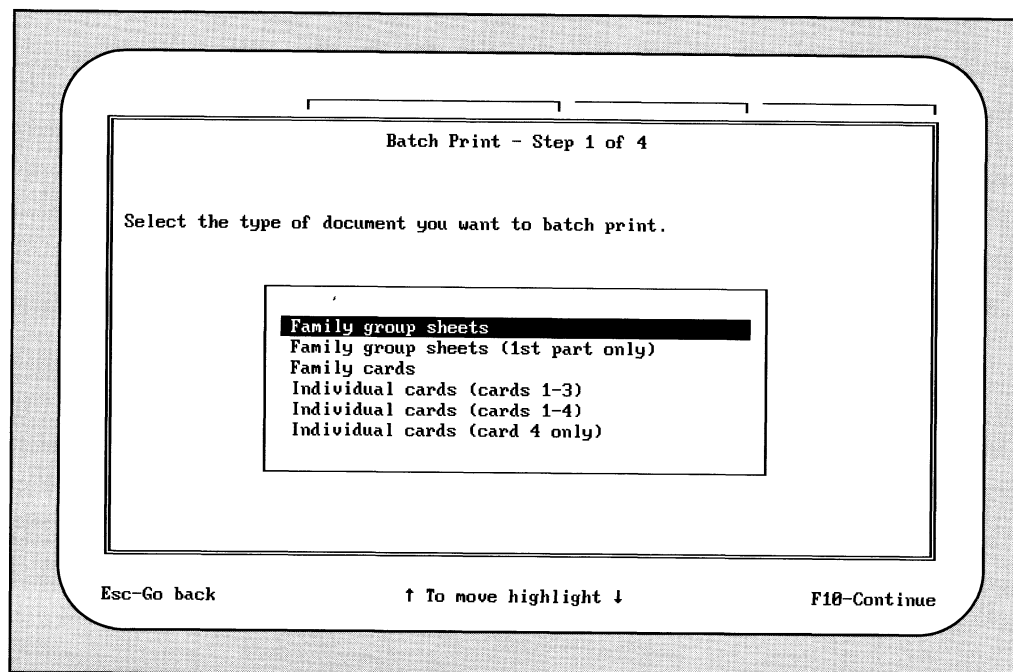


Figure 5-10. Selecting information to print

The first step is to select the type of document you want Family Tree Maker to print:

1. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **L – Print list**.
3. Select **B – Batch print**. The first of four Batch Print screens appears.
4. Use **↑** and **↓** to highlight the type of document you want to print.
5. Press **F10** to confirm your selection.

Note: If you select **Family Group Sheet**, **Family Card**, **Individual Cards (cards 1-4)**, or **Individual Cards (card 4 only)**, Family Tree Maker takes you to the “**Batch Print – Step 1A of 4**” screen. On this screen you will see options that are specific to the document you are printing.

Fill in the information that Family Tree Maker asks for.

When you're done, press **F10**.

Selecting Individuals To Print

After you've chosen the type of document you want to print in your batch print, you choose which individuals you want to print the document for, from the **"Batch Print – Step 2 of 4"** screen. You can choose to include all the individuals in your card file, only the descendants or ancestors of a particular individual, only individuals born at a particular place or time, and more.

To select the individuals to print:

1. Use and to highlight the method for choosing the group of individuals you want to include in your batch print.

As with printing reports, you select groups of individuals to batch print by first identifying the way you want Family Tree Maker to search for the individuals.

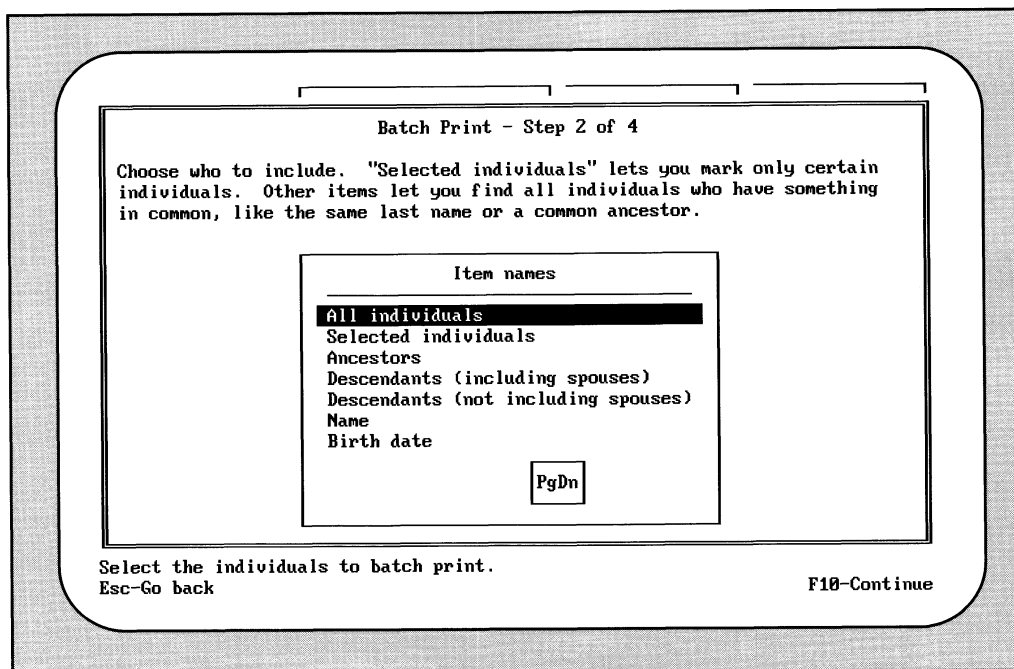


Figure 5-11. Selecting individuals for batch printing

You can have Family Tree Maker look for all the ancestors or descendants of an individual. You can "mark" the individuals yourself. Or you can specify that Family Tree Maker look for a specific set of individuals, such as for all people born in Sweden, or with the same last name, etc.

-
-
2. Press **F10** to confirm your selection and move to the next screen.

If you chose:

- **All individuals** — Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Batch Print – Step 3 of 4**” screen. Skip to “Displaying the Individuals Found,” below.
- **Selected individuals** — Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Batch Print – Step 2A of 4**” screen. Use **↑** and **↓** to move through the list and press **Enter** to “mark” the individuals you want to include in this batch print. Press **Enter** a second time to erase a mark. You can also press **F8** to mark all individuals (or to erase all marks you have made). When you are done marking the individuals, press **F10**.

The “**Batch Print – Step 3 of 4**” screen appears.

- **Ancestors or descendants** — Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Batch Print – Step 2A of 4**” screen. Use **↑** and **↓** to highlight the primary individual (the person whose ancestors or descendants you want to include in this batch print). Press **F10**.

The “**Batch Print – Step 3 of 4**” screen appears.

- **Any of the field names** (Birth location, for example) — Family Tree Maker now displays the “Find Individual” screen. Type the specific piece of information you want Family Tree Maker to look for. For example, type **Baltimore** in the Birth location field if you want to select all individuals who were born in Baltimore. See “Find Individual” on page 81 for more information.

The “**Batch print – Step 3 of 4**” screen appears.

Displaying The Individuals Found

Before printing, Family Tree Maker displays the list of individuals it found on the screen labeled “**Batch Print – Step 3 of 4**.” You can scroll through the list to make sure Family Tree Maker found all the individuals you intended. If you want to change your selection, press **Esc** to go back.

When you are satisfied with the list, press **F10** to move to the last step before printing.

Changing Print Settings

The “**Batch Print – Step 4 of 4**” screen gives you some options for how you want the information you’ve selected to print.

Print page numbers? — Select **Yes** if you want Family Tree Maker to print page numbers at the bottom of each page. If you select **Yes**, you will also be able to select how you want the pages numbered and whether you want an index to print.

Starting page number: — If you chose to number pages, you can now choose which number to start with. This can be especially useful if you are putting together a book or a set of documents.

Print documents in what order: — This option will be displayed only if you selected a group of ancestors or descendants. Select the order in which you want the documents to print. You can choose to print them alphabetically by last name or in ancestor/descendant order, as appropriate.

For all other groups of individuals, Family Tree Maker will print the documents in alphabetical order by last name.

To change any of these settings:

1. Use , , , or to move to the line you want to change.
2. If the line requires text, type it in. If the line requires a selection, use or to move between choices.
3. When you are finished making changes, press . If you chose not to number pages, Family Tree Maker will begin printing now.

If you chose page numbering, Family Tree Maker displays the screen labeled “**Page Numbering Styles**”




There are two methods for numbering pages: **Book style with index** and **Document style**.

Book style with index numbers your entire printout in sequence, beginning with your starting number and continuing straight through until the last page. After the last page, Family Tree Maker will print an index sorted by individual. Next to each individual’s name, it will list the page numbers that he or she appears on.

Document style numbers pages within each document independently, using the starting page number you selected. For example, if you are batch printing Individual Cards 1-3, there is only 1 page in each document. In this case, each page in your batch print will have the same page number, the number you selected as your starting number.

However, if you are batch printing Family Group Sheets, there are 2 or more pages in each document. In this case, if your starting number is 1, the pages will be numbered 1, 2, 3 for the first Family Group Sheet **and** 1, 2, 3 for each subsequent Family Group Sheet. That is, the numbering starts over again at the beginning of each document.


When you choose **Document style**, Family Tree Maker does not print an index, because all of the individuals appear on “page 1” (for example).

Use  or  to highlight your selection, and press  to begin printing.

DRAFT PRINTING

You can print trees, calendars, and Family Group Sheets much faster by printing without graphics. Printing solid boxes, borders, and lines are what take the most time, so leaving them out will reduce printing time substantially.

To print in draft mode, from any Family Card:

1. Press  to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **F – File**.
3. Select **P – Change program setup**. At the first screen, “**Installing the Printer – Step 1 of 3**” select your regular printer.
4. At the second screen, “**Installing the Printer – Step 2 of 3**” select the “**Draft**” mode for your printer. For example, if you are using an Epson printer, the draft mode is called “EX, FX, JX, LX Series – Draft.”

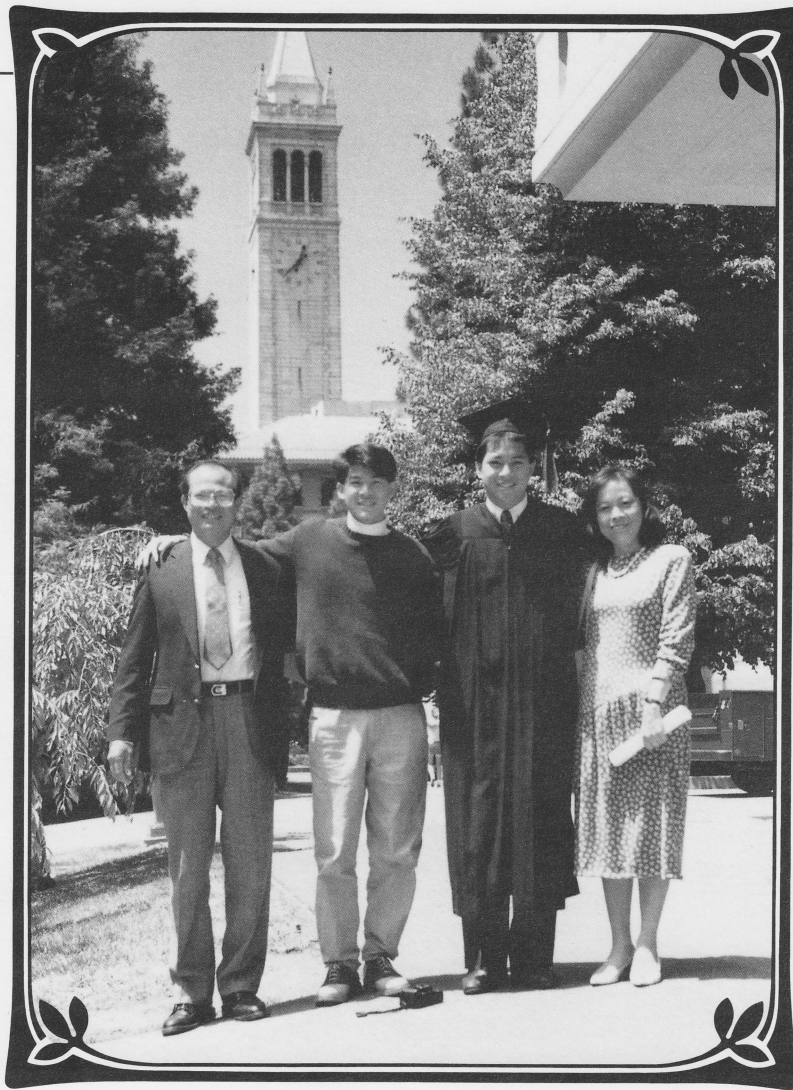
Note: Not all printers have a specific draft mode available. If this is the case for your printer, you can print faster by selecting “**Other**” in step 3, and one of the “**Plain Vanilla**” settings in step 4.

With this printer selection, all of your trees, calendars, and Family Group Sheets will print faster, but they won’t look as good. To go back to higher quality printing, simply repeat steps 1 through 4, substituting your regular printer setting for the draft mode. You can change back and forth as many times as you like.

Note: In the faster print setting, descendant trees can only print in portrait orientation. That is, while they default to printing sideways on the paper, they’ll now print “normally” on the paper (the way you hold the paper when you’re reading a letter from a friend).

Chapter 6

THE DATA EXCHANGE UTILITY



Harvey Tang, one of Family Tree Maker's programmers, poses here with his family on graduation day. This picture, which includes his mother Ming, father Sheng, and younger brother Ken, was taken on the University of California's Berkeley campus in May 1989.



THE DATA EXCHANGE UTILITY

The Data Exchange Utility is a separate program that has been included in this package. It converts Family Tree Maker card files to GEDCOM or ASCII format. It also converts GEDCOM files to Family Tree Maker card files. You can choose all or a portion of the items recorded about each person to include in the converted files.

GEDCOM is a standard file format for exchanging information between genealogy programs. The acronym GEDCOM stands for GENEalogical Data COMMunications. The Family History Department of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (LDS Church) developed the GEDCOM standard.

Use GEDCOM to transfer information (without retyping) into Family Tree Maker from another genealogy program that supports GEDCOM. Then you can print beautiful family trees not possible in the other program.

ASCII files contain no information about who is a person's mother, father, brother, or sister. They are simple lists of information. ASCII information only transfers out of Family Tree Maker, not back in.

When used with other software, ASCII files let you prepare detailed reports not possible within Family Tree Maker. Use ASCII files to create a tabular list of information to load into your word processor. The Data Exchange Utility can also prepare a comma delimited ASCII file that loads into most databases.

Additionally, you can convert the information from **Individual Card 4 – Notes** to ASCII. Most word processors read ASCII, so you can bring your Notes into your favorite word processor for additional formatting or fancier printing.

PROGRAM SETUP


This section tells you how to start the Data Exchange Utility program on your computer system. This appendix assumes that the Data Exchange Utility is installed on your computer. When you install Family Tree Maker, the installation program installs the Data Exchange Utility in the same place as Family Tree Maker. See Chapter 1 for details on installation.

Starting the Data Exchange Utility on a Hard Disk System

Follow these steps to start the Data Exchange Utility from your hard disk:

1. Make sure the DOS prompt for your hard disk (normally C:\>) is on your screen.
2. Type `cd\ftm`

If you installed the Data Exchange Utility into a different subdirectory, type its name in place of “`ftm`”

3. Type `EXCHANGE` and press . After several seconds you see the Data Exchange Utility title screen and Main Menu.

If this is the first time you have used the Data Exchange Utility, proceed to the section “Program Setup/Status” on page 209.


Starting the Data Exchange Utility on Systems Without a Hard Disk

To start the Data Exchange Utility on a two-diskette drive system, follow these steps:

Note: Before starting the Data Exchange Utility on a two-diskette drive system, have a blank, formatted diskette available for saving files.

1. Make sure your installed copy of the Data Exchange Utility is NOT write protected. During Program Setup, the Data Exchange Utility needs to write information to your installed copy of the program diskette.
2. Insert your installed copy of the Data Exchange Utility program diskette in the default drive, usually drive A. Place the diskette containing the file you want to import or export in the second drive, usually drive B.

Note: If you are planning to export a Family Tree Maker card file to GEDCOM or ASCII, place the diskette containing your card file in drive B. If you are planning to import a GEDCOM file into Family Tree Maker, place the diskette containing the GEDCOM file in drive B.


3. At the default DOS prompt (usually A:\>), type `EXCHANGE` and press . After several seconds you see the Data Exchange Utility title screen and Main Menu.




Note: Do not remove the installed copy of the Data Exchange Utility program diskette from the diskette drive while you are using the program. Remove it only after quitting the program.

If this is the first time you have used the Data Exchange Utility, proceed to the next section, “Program Setup/Status.”


PROGRAM SETUP/STATUS

Program setup/status lets you choose a palette of colors for your computer display. It also shows status information such as the amount of RAM (memory) available to the Data Exchange Utility.

To select the palette of colors for your computer display, select **P – Program setup/status** from the Main Menu and press . On some computer displays, all palettes look the same. If this is the case for your computer, the Data Exchange Utility tells you so.

Use  or  to highlight your choice, then press .

HELP

You can get help at any time while running the Data Exchange Utility by pressing .

WHERE TO GO FROM HERE

If you have asked the Data Exchange Utility to save card files to one of the diskette drives on your computer, you need to have a blank formatted diskette ready before you convert any files. If you do not have one available, quit the Data Exchange Utility now and format a blank diskette.

To quit the Data Exchange Utility, select **Quit** from the Main Menu.

IMPORT FROM GEDCOM

The Data Exchange Utility can convert a GEDCOM file produced by another program to a Family Tree Maker card file. This is called “importing” a GEDCOM file. Once you import the GEDCOM file, you can quit the Data Exchange Utility, start Family Tree Maker, and load the imported file as if it were created in Family Tree Maker.

Note to Roots III users: If you are only importing Names, birthdates/locations, death dates/locations, and marriage dates/locations, see Appendix I for information on importing directly from Roots III (without using GEDCOM).

If you have 640Kb of available memory, you can import GEDCOM files containing up to 2400 individuals.


Note: If your GEDCOM file contains more than 2400 individuals, you need to return to the program that produced the GEDCOM file. Then create another GEDCOM file with 2400 or fewer individuals.


Note to PAF users: The Data Exchange Utility works only with PAF version 2.1 or higher.

To import from GEDCOM, follow these steps:

1. Select **I – Import from GEDCOM** from the Main Menu.

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Import, Step 1 of 3 – Get GEDCOM File from Disk.**”

2. Select the GEDCOM file to import and press .


Note: GEDCOM filenames must have the extension .GED. If there are no files listed, but you know you already created a GEDCOM file from your other program, press Tab  to move to the “Drive (or directory)” field. Type in the drive and directory where your GEDCOM file is stored. (It is most likely the same drive and directory where your other genealogy program is located.) Do not type the filename in this field. If you do not know the correct location of your GEDCOM file, you will need to quit the Data Exchange Utility and go back to your other application to find it.


The Data Exchange Utility scans the GEDCOM file you selected. This may take some time depending on the size of the file and the speed of your disk drive.

After scanning the file, the Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Import, Step 2 of 3 – Assign GEDCOM tags to FTM fields.**”

Note: FTM is an abbreviation for Family Tree Maker.

3. Now you must tell the Data Exchange Utility what pieces of information to import.

Note: The Data Exchange Utility automatically places names, birth, death, and marriage information into the proper Family Tree Maker fields. If that is the only information you wish to import, you may skip this step by pressing  to continue.

One at a time, highlight the name of each FTM field into which you wish to place information from the GEDCOM file. Then press .

The Data Exchange Utility pops up another window with a list of the tags in the GEDCOM file. A “tag” labels a piece of information (for example, the tag for Occupation is OCCU). You see only the tags actually used in the GEDCOM file.

Select a tag that describes the information you want to place in the current Family Tree Maker field. The Data Exchange Utility closes the window, allowing you to repeat the process until you have assigned all the GEDCOM tags to FTM fields. You can assign as many or as few tags as you like.

A GEDCOM tag of NONE assigned to an FTM field means the field will be empty. Often you will not have information for every FTM field.

When GEDCOM files store *Notes* (lengthy paragraphs of information about an individual) they cannot store full paragraphs. They actually store each line separately. If you choose to import Notes into Family Tree Maker, each line will be followed by (even though you don't see the , it's there).

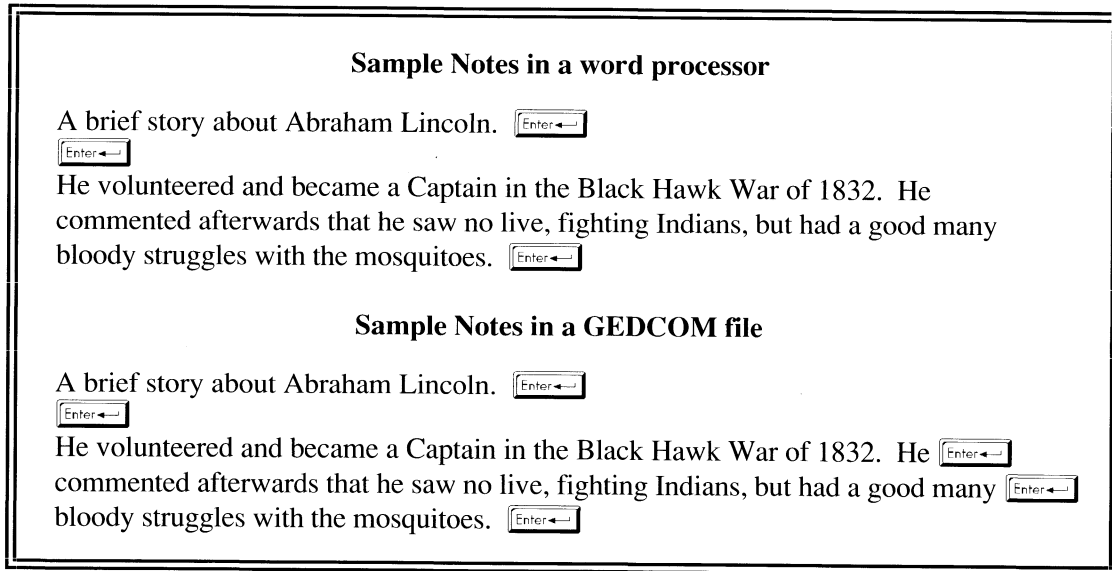


Figure 6-1. GEDCOM versus word processor output

Press to continue when you have completed assigning tags to fields.

The Data Exchange Utility now displays the screen labeled
“Import, Step 3 of 3 – Save Card File to Disk.”

4. Type a name for the new, imported FTM card file and press .

The Data Exchange Utility begins importing the GEDCOM file. As it imports each individual and marriage, it displays the individuals' names (you see a total of 4 importing steps).

The Data Exchange Utility gives you the option to view a list of the warnings and errors it detected. Warnings and errors are also saved in a file on your disk. The file has the same name as your new FTM card file, but with the extension .LST. For example, if the name of your new, imported file is MYFAMILY.FTM, the name of the warnings and errors file is MYFAMILY.LST. See Figure 6-2 on page 212 for a list of common warnings and errors.

5. To work with your imported file, quit the Data Exchange Utility and start Family Tree Maker. Get the imported card file like any other card file. See “Get card file from disk” in Chapter 3.

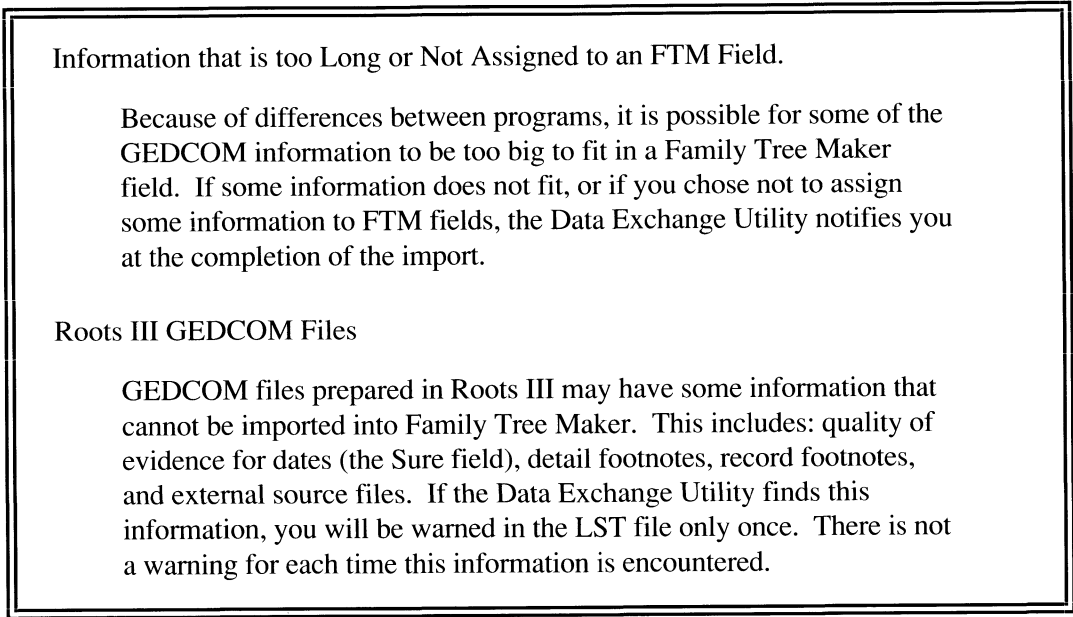


Figure 6-2. Common warnings during import from GEDCOM

Import From GEDCOM Options

Press **F5** at any time during the import process to display the screen labeled “Import Options.” This screen allows you to clean up information in some GEDCOM files.

Delete underscores from names? — Some programs (like PAF) add an underscore between compound names (for example, St._Germaine). Select **Yes** to replace the underscore character with a space. **Yes** is the default choice if you do nothing. Select **No** to leave your names alone.

Add spacing in location fields? — Some programs (like PAF) don’t put spaces between the city, county, and state. Select **Yes** to include the normal space between these words and to delete extra commas. **Yes** is the default choice if you do nothing. Select **No** to leave your locations alone.

If location is too long: — Some programs (like PAF) have longer location fields than Family Tree Maker does. For example, if a location is recorded as:

- Warren, Trumbull County, Ohio, United States of America
- “Keep first part” imports: Warren, Trumbull County, Ohio
- “Keep last part” imports: Ohio, United States of America

“Keep last part” is the default choice if you do nothing. The Data Exchange Utility always keeps as much as possible.

EXPORT TO GEDCOM


The Data Exchange Utility can convert a Family Tree Maker card file to a GEDCOM file. This is called “exporting” to a GEDCOM file. Once you create the GEDCOM file, you can quit the Data Exchange Utility, start another genealogy program, and load the exported file.

Note: The Data Exchange Utility exports information for every individual in the Family Tree Maker card file that you select. If you want to export information for only a portion of the individuals in your card file, use the Save selected descendants command in Family Tree Maker. With this command you can create a new, smaller card file. Then use the Data Exchange Utility to export to GEDCOM.

To export a Family Tree Maker card file to GEDCOM, follow these steps:

1. Select **E – Export to GEDCOM** from the Main Menu.


The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export, Step 1 of 4 – Get Card File from Disk.**”


2. Select the card file to export and press .

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export, Step 2 of 4 – Assign FTM fields to GEDCOM tags.**”

Note: FTM is an abbreviation for Family Tree Maker.

3. Now you must tell the Data Exchange Utility what pieces of information to export.

Note: The Data Exchange Utility automatically assigns names, along with birth, death, and marriage information, to the proper GEDCOM tags. If that is the only information you wish to export, you may skip this step by pressing  to continue.



One at a time, highlight the name of each FTM field you wish to export to the GEDCOM file. Then press .


The Data Exchange Utility displays another window with a list of the possible GEDCOM tags. A standard “tag” identifies each piece of information for other programs designed to read GEDCOM.

Select a tag that describes the information in the current FTM field. The Data Exchange Utility closes the window, allowing you to repeat the process until you have assigned all the FTM fields to GEDCOM tags. You can assign as many or as few fields as you like.

If you have an event (a date and a location) for which there is no GEDCOM tag, use the EVEN (Event) tag. You can use the EVEN tag more than once. Each time you use it, the label from the corresponding FTM field will be attached. Thus, you will be able to tell one event from another. (The MISC (Miscellaneous) tag works the same way and it may be understood by some GEDCOM programs that don't understand the EVEN tag.) If you have textual information for which there is no tag, you can also use the MISC tag. You can use the MISC tag more than once. As with events, the label from the corresponding FTM field will be attached.

The Data Exchange Utility does not export an FTM field assigned a GEDCOM tag of NONE. In fact, if you have FTM fields that are empty for all individuals, you should leave the tag set to NONE. Empty fields are not exported no matter what the tag is.


When GEDCOM files store Notes (lengthy paragraphs of information about an individual) they cannot store full paragraphs. They actually store each line separately. If you choose to export your Family Tree Maker Notes, each line will be followed by  (even though you won't see the , it's there). See page 211 for an example of Notes in a GEDCOM file.

Press  to continue when you have completed assigning fields to tags.

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export, Step 3 of 4 – Submitter Information.**”

4. Submitter information identifies you as the originator of this information. Fill in as much of this information as possible. This allows the person receiving your information to identify where it came from.

Note: Unit Number and Stake are for use by members of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Important note to Ancestral File submitters: GEDCOM files exported from the Data Exchange Utility are registered for submission to the Ancestral File. It is especially important for those submitting their information to the LDS Ancestral File to completely fill out the submitter information. Also, you should now press  to display **Export Options** (described on page 215). Then select ANSTFILE as the Destination. Without complete submitter information and the proper destination, your file may not be accepted.

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export, Step 4 of 4 – Save GEDCOM File to Disk.**”

5. Type a name for the exported GEDCOM file and press . The name must have an extension of .GED as in MYFILE.GED

The Data Exchange Utility begins exporting the GEDCOM file. As it exports each individual and marriage, it displays the individuals' names.

Export to GEDCOM Options

Export options give you additional control over your GEDCOM file. Press at any time during the export process to display the screen labeled “**Export Options.**”

Indent records? — Select **Yes** to make the file more readable in a word processor. Some programs (like PAF) cannot read indented records. This setting is ignored unless FTM or ROOTS is the destination. The default is **No**.

Use abbreviated tags? — Select **Yes** to use abbreviated tags. Most programs use the abbreviated tags, even though the long form is more readable. This setting is ignored unless FTM is the destination. The default is **Yes**.

Export medical fields? — Family Tree Maker’s **Individual Card 3** contains fields for medical information. Select **Yes** to export these medical fields as a NOTE (MISC if destination is FTM), otherwise they do not export. The default is **Yes**.

Destination: — This setting allows the Data Exchange Utility to check for special requirements of the program that will be reading the GEDCOM FILE. FTM is the default. The destinations are as follows:

ANSTFILE	—	the Ancestral File of the LDS Church
NPS	—	for temple submission to the LDS Church
PAF	—	Personal Ancestral File version 2.1 or later
ROOTS	—	Roots II or Roots III
FTM	—	Family Tree Maker

If the program you are exporting to is not listed, choose PAF. If you want to load the GEDCOM file into a word processor for editing, you should always choose FTM. This insures that all data exports out, then imports back into FTM without loss.

Character set: — This chooses the character set used during the translation. ANSEL is the default and the standard for GEDCOM files. ANSEL is the American Library Association character set.

EXPORT TO ASCII

The Data Exchange Utility can convert a Family Tree Maker card file to an ASCII file. This is called “exporting” to an ASCII file. Once you create the ASCII file, you can quit the Data Exchange Utility, start another program (a word processor, for example) and then load the exported file.

An ASCII file is like a table of information. It has fixed width columns separated by a space.

Paz Lowry, Elizabeth Christine	San Mateo, California, USA
Paz Nava, Hugo Domingo	Bellavista, Callao, Perú
Lowry, Elizabeth Teofila	Burlingame, California, USA
Paz Cueto, Jorge Hugo Aaron	Valparaiso, Chile
Nava Gamallo, Olga Margarita	Lima, Perú
Lowry, Ross Churchill	Toronto, Canada
Lazo Hinostroza, Teofila	Marcatuna, Huancayo, Perú
Paz Nava, Margarita del Carmen	Lima, Perú
Paz Nava, Jose Luis	Lima, Perú

Figure 6-3. An example of an ASCII file

The Data Exchange Utility can also generate comma delimited ASCII files (see “Export to ASCII Options” on page 217). Most database programs read a comma delimited ASCII file. In this kind of file, quotes enclose each field and commas separate them.

Note: The Data Exchange Utility exports information for every individual in the Family Tree Maker card file that you select. If you want to export information for only a portion of the individuals in your card file, use the Save selected descendants command in Family Tree Maker. This command creates a new, smaller card file. Then use the Data Exchange Utility to export to ASCII.

To export a Family Tree Maker card file to an ASCII file, follow these steps:

1. Select **A – Export to ASCII** from the Main Menu.

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export to ASCII, Step 1 of 3 – Get Card File from Disk.**”

2. Select the card file to export and press .

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export to ASCII, Step 2 of 3 – Select FTM fields.**”

Note: FTM is an abbreviation for Family Tree Maker.

-
-
3. One at a time, highlight the name of each FTM field you wish to export to the ASCII file. Then press **Enter**.

You can export as many or as few fields as you like. You can press **Shift** + **F8** to export all fields without individually selecting them. The information is exported in the order selected.

You can sort your exported file based on any two fields that you have selected to export. Highlight the field you want to sort, then press **Alt** + **Shift**. The Data Exchange Utility asks whether you want to sort in ascending order (A first) or descending order (Z first). Your primary sort is based on the first field you select.

Your secondary sort, if you choose one, is based on the second field you select. The secondary sort breaks ties between items in the primary sort. A numeral 1 appears in front of the primary sort field followed by an A or D (for ascending or descending order, respectively). A numeral 2 precedes the secondary sort field. To turn off sorting, re-select the field and choose **No sort**.

If selected to sort, the name field is always sorted by last name. If no fields are selected to sort, the Data Exchange Utility automatically sorts by last name.

4. Press **F10** to continue when you have completed choosing fields to export.

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export to ASCII, Step 3 of 3 – Save ASCII File to Disk.**”

Type a name for the exported ASCII file and press **Enter**. ASCII files must have an extension of **.ASC** as in **MYFILE.ASC**

The Data Exchange Utility begins exporting the ASCII file. As it exports each individual, it displays the individuals’ names.

Export To ASCII Options

Export to ASCII options give you additional control over your ASCII file. Press **F5** at any time during the export process to display the screen labeled “**Export to ASCII Options.**”

Export spouses/marriages — In cases where someone has been married more than once, you can choose whether to extract all or only one of the spouses. Select **All** to export every marriage and spouse for each individual. Select **First** or **Last** to export only the first or last marriage respectively. **All** is the default selection. (This option is irrelevant if you have not chosen spouse or marriage information to export.)

Duplicate redundant data? — If you export all spouses and marriages (described above), each spouse has his/her own row in the exported “table” of information (see Figure 6-4 on page 218). Select **Yes** to duplicate information that is identical each time the same person is listed. Select **No** to omit identical information. **Yes** is the default.

An ASCII file with Duplicate redundant data? set to Yes		
Name	Spouse	Occupation
Mark Louis Paine	Sally Morton Fenner	Engineer
Mark Louis Paine	Linda Louise Smith	Engineer
Sally Morton Fenner	Mark Louis Paine	School teacher
Linda Louise Smith	Mark Louis Paine	None

The same ASCII file with Duplicate redundant data? set to No .		
Name	Spouse	Occupation
Mark Louis Paine	Sally Morton Fenner	Engineer
	Linda Louise Smith	
Sally Morton Fenner	Mark Louis Paine	School teacher
Linda Louise Smith	Mark Louis Paine	None

Figure 6-4. Redundant data in ASCII files

Comma delimited? — Select **Yes** to export a comma delimited ASCII file (a file where each piece of information is separated by a comma). Most databases import a comma delimited ASCII file. If you are planning to edit the ASCII information in a word processor, select **No**. Selecting **No** produces a file where each piece of information is separated by spaces, with all columns lining up evenly (like the sample files shown just above). **No** is the default.

Column titles? — Select **Yes** to export your information with the field name at the top of each column of information. For databases, you would generally select **No**. **No** is the default.

EXPORT NOTES

The Data Exchange Utility can export information from **Individual Card 4 – Notes** to ASCII. Most word processors can read ASCII files, so you can bring your Notes from Family Tree Maker into your favorite word processor for additional formatting or fancier printing.

Note to *Biography Maker* users: If you have entered several pages of Notes about an individual and you want to transfer them to *Biography Maker* to write a more detailed story, use the **Export Notes** command to do this.

To export Notes to ASCII, follow these steps:





1. Select **N – Export Notes** from the Main Menu.



The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export Notes to ASCII, Step 1 of 3 – Get Card File from Disk.**”

2. Select the card file and press .





The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export Notes to ASCII, Step 2 of 3 – Select Individual.**”

3. Highlight the individual whose Notes you wish to export.


This screen is almost identical to the Index of Names in Family Tree Maker. You can press , , , or  to move through the list. Or press the first letter of someone’s last name to jump quickly to that section of the alphabet.

If you have trouble finding the individual you’re looking for, use the **Find individual** command in this list. Simply press  and type the individual’s name. Press  to find the first match, and again for other matches. Generally, the less you type the better. By typing “smi” instead of “John Q. Smith, Jr.” you are less likely to miss someone because of a misspelling.



4. Press .

Note: You can export Notes for all individuals in your card file by pressing  +  (hold down  and press .

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Export Notes to ASCII, Step 3 of 3 – Save ASCII File to Disk.**”

5. Type a name for the exported ASCII file and press . ASCII files must have an extension of .ASC as in MYFILE.ASC

The Data Exchange Utility begins exporting the ASCII file.

Note: When ASCII files store Notes they cannot store full paragraphs. They actually store each line separately, followed by a carriage return  (even though you won’t see the , it’s there). See page 211 for an example of Notes in a GEDCOM file; Notes look identical in an ASCII file.


VIEW FILE

The Data Exchange Utility lets you view (but not edit) files that you import and export.

To view a file, follow these steps:

1. Select **V – View file** from the Main Menu.

The Data Exchange Utility displays the screen labeled “**Get File to View.**”

2. Select the file to view and press .

The file displays on screen. You may use the following keys to browse through the file:

























 , 	Scroll one row up or down
 , 	Scroll one full screen up or down
	Scroll one full screen down
 , 	Scroll one column left or right
 +  ,  + 	Scroll half a screen left or right
 (tab)	Scroll half a screen right
 +  (tab)	Scroll half a screen left
	Go to first column
	Go to last column
 + 	Go to first row, first column
 + 	Go to last row, first column
 + 	Go to first row, same column
 + 	Go to last row, same column

Figure 6-5. How to move around in View file

Note: The Data Exchange Utility shows only the first 512 characters of a line.

APPENDICES



Phyllis Irene (Lafferty) Hess, mother of Banner Blue's founder, leaning against her future husband's 1949 Ford. This picture was taken in 1950.



RESEARCHING FAMILIES

This appendix gives you an overview of how to gather information to make your family tree. It includes brief descriptions of the following:

- Note-taking
- Types of forms
- Filing
- Research sources
- Requesting information
- Things to watch for

At the end of this appendix is a list of genealogical information sources for each state.

Regardless of how far back you want to study your family tree, certain techniques will help you collect and organize your findings. Family Tree Maker makes the organization and presentation of your findings easy and efficient.

NOTE-TAKING

As you begin to collect your information, there are several basic note-taking techniques that you should keep in mind.

1. Write everything down. The information you collect will grow rapidly. If you try to rely on your memory, you may easily forget or become confused. This also applies to those who insist that they will “write it down later” — which often leads to more errors.
2. Don’t use home-spun abbreviations. Abbreviations are often confusing when you go back to review your notes. They also can lead to inaccurate information. Use standard abbreviations (**b** for **born**, **d** for **died**, **m** for **married**).
3. Record your sources. If you have the name, location, and date searched for each source, you can easily return to that source later. You also know what sources you’ve already checked. It’s helpful to keep a different list of sources for each person (or each last name) in your family tree. Family Tree Maker includes an optional sources/notes field for most dates and events that you record.
4. Keep a copy of all letters. It’s very likely that you’ll have to write to relatives or send away for information. Copies act as a record of what information you requested, from whom, payment sent (if any), and date sent. You should also note what you receive back. See the section on requesting information later in this appendix for what to include in your letters.

-
-
5. Record each person's name in full. It's especially important to list a woman's maiden name. Be sure to avoid abbreviations here; you may have more than one J. Smith within your family. If a person has a nickname, put it between quotation marks (e.g., "Tip").
 6. Most genealogists use a day/month/year date format. The actual format you use is not as important as remembering to spell out the month and to use the complete year. Dates can be ambiguous, you can interpret the date 4/7/76 as April 7 or 4 July 1976 (or 1876, or 1776, etc.). Writing out the month and year reduces the chance of misinterpreting dates no matter what format you use. Family Tree Maker will automatically convert all dates to the style you choose. It will also accept double dates. See "Things To Watch For" on page 229 for an explanation of double dates.
 7. Copy information — especially dates, locations, and last names — exactly as you find it. You can interpret your findings later when you have time to review your notes and make comparisons with other information. This is particularly important when copying down last names. Over time they often take on many spellings. In general, never change information to what you think it ought to be.
 8. Take notes in such a way that they'll be understandable to you, or anyone else, when reviewed later. The hastily written note often makes sense at the time you write it, but can be really confusing when you look at it days later.

TYPES OF FORMS

You can make your own forms or print out blank forms from Family Tree Maker. In either case, it's important to keep things simple and consistent enough for anyone to understand.

Standardize the size of the paper you'll be using. Nothing will confuse you faster than trying to find a vital piece of information written on a tiny piece of scrap paper. The most commonly used size is the standard 8.5 by 11 inch 3-hole punch. This size is easy to find and to place into a loose-leaf binder. Binders are preferable to regular wire-bound notebooks because binders are more sturdy, and it's easy to add to or remove paper from them.

An empty ancestor tree form is commonly used for gathering and organizing information. Filling in portions of a tree allows you to see what information you have and what you still need to get. This is helpful when you are doing research and don't have immediate access to your permanent files or to your computer.

Another common form is the family group sheet. It shows an entire family unit at a glance. This sheet lists the dates and locations of births, deaths, and marriages for a husband, wife, and their children. Each of your direct ancestors can appear on one sheet as a child and on another sheet as an adult.

To aid you in your note-taking, Family Tree Maker prints out blank copies of these forms.

FILING

The two most important things to consider when filing your notes and finished forms are location and order.

Wherever you decide to locate your notes (binders, filing cabinet, etc.) be sure they are easy to get to, orderly, and safe from damage. An old shoe box on the floor is probably not a good idea.

You must decide in what order to file your notes. The most common way is to organize them alphabetically by surname with a folder or section for each individual. This folder will include any family group sheets that you've collected for a particular individual. You can also include any other documentation such as wills, photos, or certificates. For documents that you want to store somewhere else, insert a page into your files noting the name of that document, its content, and current location.

RESEARCH SOURCES

Now that you are familiar with filing and note-taking techniques, you are ready to begin gathering your information. Start with yourself and your family. From memory, write down all you know about your family. Use Family Tree Maker to make an ancestor tree; this will help you see what information you have and what you don't have.

When you've recorded what you know about your family, it's time to question other family members. To save time and energy, ask your relatives if anyone else has done research on your family.

Some information you get may not give definite answers to your questions. Most however, provides clues to direct your search. Many sources in your own home fall into this category. For example, people often refer to births, deaths, and marriages in family bibles, diaries, scrapbooks, photos, letters, newspaper clippings, or legal documents. Elderly relatives carry with them a wealth of information and stories that could be valuable to your search. Recording their stories on a tape recorder can insure that you don't miss any of their stories' details.

Your family research should give you enough information to decide which side of your family to follow first. It's important to have a clear picture of what research you need to do and to proceed in an orderly manner. The further back you search, the more names and information you'll collect. When you research both sides of your family at the same time, it's easy to confuse names and other information. To avoid this, set goals for your research and keep track of which goals you've achieved.

After searching family documents and talking to relatives, it's time to turn to outside sources. One of the first places to visit is your local library. Your state or local historical and genealogical societies will know what libraries have genealogy sections. They can also tell you where to find libraries dedicated completely to genealogy. The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (the Mormons) founded the largest genealogy library. The

main branch is located in Salt Lake City, Utah, with branches all across the country. If one is near you, it's worth visiting.

Genealogy sections of libraries can contain family histories, census records, genealogy books, magazines, or other local records. The extent and variety will vary with the library. (Some libraries combine their genealogy and history sections.) At the very least, your local library will provide you with valuable reference books. These can include encyclopedias, almanacs, atlases, and local history books.

Additionally, libraries usually have many books that deal with specific types of research. You can find books on researching specific areas of the country, finding certain types of records, doing foreign research, and researching particular ethnic groups. (A brief list of "how-to" books follows this appendix.)

Learning local history in the library can give you many clues to direct your search. You may discover that a town or county that was once in your state now belongs to another state. You could also discover that many of the people living in your state moved there from a particular state or country.

Your research will inevitably lead you out of the library and into local, government, and church records. Below is a brief description of some of these sources.

Local Records

Vital Records – These include birth, death, and marriage certificates. These are the most reliable sources of information. Keep in mind, however, that no type of document is error proof. You should continue to be skeptical even of these documents, especially if they conflict with other information. You'll find these documents in local and state government offices, or in local or state archives.

Probate Records – Most important of these records is the last will and testament, often an excellent source for finding the names of a person's spouse and children. Locating a will depends on what county and in which court that particular state files these documents. You should call the county clerk's office for more information.

Land Records – Deeds to land or homes can show where a person lived at a particular time. Such deeds often list the spouse of the buyer, as well as the name of the seller (possibly another relative). Older records occasionally list where the person was moving from or to. You'll most likely find these records in the county clerk's office having jurisdiction over that land.

Contact the state or city where you will be searching and ask for information on their particular filing practices. The United States Department of Health and Human Services has a pamphlet entitled *Where to Write for Vital Records: Births, Deaths, Marriages, and Divorces*, for sale at U.S. Government bookstores (or write to the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402).

National Records

Census Records – Since 1790, the United States has conducted a population census every ten years. The amount and type of information collected in each census has differed, and the information is not always accurate (especially in the earlier census schedules). Starting with the 1850 census, you'll find every person in the household listed by name. To use these records, you must know the state and county in which the person lived. The 1790 through 1910 census schedules are open to the public. In addition to the National Archives (see note below), many state and local libraries keep census records on microfilm.

Land Records – Land records were kept not only for private transactions, but also for land granted to citizens by the government. Beginning with the American Revolution, war veterans were given land grants. Later, the pioneers moving west were granted land. As with local land records, these transactions can confirm that a person was in a particular place at a particular time. The National Archives stores these records.

Military Records – Military records consist of service and benefit records. These records are available starting with the American Revolution. In general, the more recent the record the more information it contains. Military records commonly list at least name, rank, unit, and sometimes home state. Local libraries often keep records of servicemen from their state. The National Archives is another source for these records.

Note: The main branch of The National Archives is located in Washington D.C. There are also 12 branches of the National Archives, all of which allow access to their records and answer written or oral requests for information. For more information contact the National Archives Reference Services at (202) 501-5402 or consult one of the branches from the following list.

Anchorage, AK	654 West Third Ave., 99501	Tel: (907) 271-2441
Chicago, IL	7358 South Pulaski Rd., 60629	Tel: (312) 581-7816
Denver, CO	P.O. Box 25307, 80225	Tel: (303) 236-0817
East Point, GA	1557 St. Joseph Ave., 30344	Tel: (404) 763-7477
Fort Worth, TX	P.O. Box 6216, 76115	Tel: (817) 334-5525
Kansas City, MO	2312 East Bannister Rd., 64131	Tel: (816) 926-6272
Laguna Niguel, CA	24000 Avila Rd., 92656	Tel: (714) 643-4241
New York, NY	201 Varick St., 10014	Tel: (212) 337-1300
Philadelphia, PA	9th and Market St., Rm. 1350, 19107	Tel: (215) 597-3000
San Bruno, CA	1000 Commodore Dr., 94066	Tel: (415) 876-9009
Seattle, WA	6125 Sand Point Way NE, 98115	Tel: (206) 526-6507
Waltham, MA	380 Trapelo Rd., 02154	Tel: (617) 647-8100

Figure A-1. Branches of the National Archives

Church Records

Vital Records – Churches usually keep records of all births, deaths, and marriages occurring among their members. They also keep track of people entering and leaving the church. This sometimes includes where they were coming from or going to. To find these records, try to locate the particular church your ancestors attended. If it no longer exists, other local churches of the same religion may be able to help you. Occasionally, local libraries have published archives of some of the local church records. Unfortunately, these church records can be some of the most difficult to find.

Cemetery Records – People often bury relatives in parish cemeteries. It's not uncommon to find whole families buried next to one another. Even if the church no longer exists, its cemetery may still be there. If you have difficulty finding the church burial records, you may still be able to locate the grave stone of your ancestor. Inscriptions often contain valuable genealogical information.

REQUESTING INFORMATION

It's very likely that you will need to write letters requesting information for your family tree. The following is a list of guidelines to follow when requesting information.

1. Keep the letter short. There's no need to go into a lengthy explanation of why you are doing your research. You're more likely to get a reply to a short, clearly written letter. This is especially true when sending away for vital records. The clerks working in such offices are very busy and don't have the time or desire to read a long letter.
2. Make your request specific. The easier it is to understand your request the more likely you are to get a response. Be sure to clearly state the following:
 - the kind of record you want
 - the full name of the person you are searching for
 - the date of the event (birth, death, etc.)
3. Enclose a self-addressed stamped envelope with your letter. The person receiving your request will appreciate your thoughtfulness and be more likely to respond.
4. Enclose a small payment for any copying costs. Unless there's a specific fee, a check for a few dollars should cover any expenses required to answer your request. You should also offer to pay any additional fees you didn't know about.
5. Remember to say thank you. There is no need to apologize for making your request, but a simple thank you acknowledges that you appreciate the effort someone is making for you.

THINGS TO WATCH FOR

Below are descriptions of several potentially confusing situations that can occur during your research.

Double Dates

The practice of double dating resulted from the switch from the Julian to the Gregorian calendar. The Julian calendar (named for Julius Caesar) declared March 25 as the first of the year and a solar year to be 365 days and 6 hours long. In 1582 Pope Gregory XIII determined that the Julian calendar was off by 11 minutes and 14 seconds. The new Gregorian calendar resolved the discrepancy and declared January 1 as the first of the year.

Not all countries accepted this calendar at the same time. England and the American colonies didn't accept it until 1752. Before that date, the government observed March 25 as the first of the year, but most of the population observed January 1 as the first of the year. So many people wrote dates falling between January 1 and March 25 with both years, as in the following examples.

<u>Julian or Old Style</u>	<u>Gregorian or New Style</u>	<u>Double Date</u>
December 25, 1718	December 25, 1718	December 25, 1718
January 1, 1718	January 1, 1719	January 1, 1718/19
February 2, 1718	February 2, 1719	February 2, 1718/19
March 20, 1718	March 20, 1719	March 20, 1718/19
March 25, 1719	March 25, 1719	March 25, 1719

Figure A-2. Double dates

By the time England and the colonies adopted the new calendar, the discrepancy between the calendars was eleven days. To resolve the discrepancy, the government ordered that September 2, 1752 be followed by September 14, 1752. Some people also added 11 days to their birth dates (a fact which is not noted on their birth certificates).

Marriage Banns

Church records often list the date on which a couple makes the announcement that they intend to marry (the marriage banns). Don't misinterpret this as the actual wedding date.

Death and Burial Dates

Church and cemetery records often contain the date of the funeral in addition to the date of death. Don't confuse the burial date with the date of death.

Incorrect Documents

In the past, people occasionally recorded information incorrectly on vital records, especially for marriage and death certificates. One reason for this was that people often recorded information several days or even weeks after the fact and forgot actual dates and names. People also occasionally altered the facts. This usually occurred with birth dates. (For example, a husband might lie about his birthday in order to appear older than his bride.) By far the most common error was name misspellings. Because many people couldn't read or write, the clerk or official wrote the name down the way it sounded. You can see that no source is totally reliable and you must constantly cross-check your findings.

Word Meanings

Some of today's most familiar words had different meanings during colonial times. This usually occurred in words referring to social relationships. For example, the word "cousin" meant niece or nephew; and the title "Mrs." showed high social status, not marital status. So you must be cautious deciding how people were related when you use some of the older documents as your source.

Location Names and Boundary Changes

Many cities, counties, and states didn't always have the names and boundaries we associate with them today. (For example, New Amsterdam is now called New York City.) Some sections of a city were at one time its suburbs. You may find it difficult to locate someone born in a territory before it became a state — a person's records could be in any one of the states that territory became. In short, it may be helpful to learn the history of boundary changes in the area where you suspect that a person lived.

Outdated Medical Terminology

Over time, many disease names have changed. Below is a list of some of the old terms you may come across in your research and their current names.

<u>Outdated Term</u>	<u>Current Term</u>
apoplexy	stroke
bad blood	syphilis
blood poisoning	septicemia (overwhelming bacterial infection)
Bright's disease	glomerulonephritis (serious kidney disease)
consumption	tuberculosis, pulmonary
cretinism	hypothyroidism, congenital
dropsy	congestive heart failure
fatty liver	cirrhosis
glandular fever	mononucleosis
grippe	influenza (flu) – killed lots of people in 1918
jail fever	typhus
lock jaw	tetanus
lung fever	pneumonia
lung sickness	tuberculosis
plague/black death	Bubonic plague
podagra	gout
Pott's disease	tuberculosis of the spinal vertebrae
quinsy	streptococcal tonsillitis
scrofula	tuberculosis of the neck lymph nodes
toxemia of pregnancy	eclampsia (high blood pressure & seizures)

Figure A-3. Outdated medical terminology

Note: Genealogy “how-to” books (see the list at the end of this appendix) repeatedly stress the need to find reliable sources for all your findings. Finding good sources becomes more important the further back in time your search takes you. Documents, relatives’ recollections, and hearsay become less reliable with older information. Whenever possible, verify your findings in other sources.

THE FINAL PRODUCT

Genealogy is not just finding out how you relate to your ancestors. It's also discovering what these people were like, how they lived, and how that might affect you. Occupation, education, military service, hobbies, and residences are just some of the interesting details you may discover about your ancestors. The trees and forms produced with Family Tree Maker will let you produce many different combinations of this information.

Family Tree Maker offers a practical use for your family tree. Individual Card 3 includes medical information for each person. More and more doctors are using family trees to record medical history patterns in some of their patients. They find that it's often easier for patients to see and understand how a disease runs in a family when they see it presented in the form of a family tree.

Genealogy can be a challenging task requiring patience and good problem-solving skills. But what you learn along the way and the results you produce with Family Tree Maker will be quite rewarding. You will find yourself learning much more than just names and dates. At the very least, you'll gain a better perspective on how you and your family came to be who you are today.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- American Genealogical Research Institute Staff. *How to Trace Your Family Tree*. Garden City, NY: Doubleday & Company, Inc., 1973.
- Baxter, Angus. *In Search of Your Roots: A Guide for Canadians Seeking Their Ancestors*. Toronto, Ontario: Macmillan of Canada, 1984.
- Blockson, Charles L. and Fry, Ron. *Black Genealogy*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1977.
- Chambers, Valerie N. *The Genealogical Helper*. Logan, UT: The Everton Publishers, Inc., 6 issues per year.
- Doane, Gilbert H. and Bell, Jane B. *Searching for Your Ancestors: The How and Why of Genealogy*. 5th ed. Minneapolis, MN: University of Minnesota Press, 1980.
- Everton, George B., Jr. and Hall, Joseph, editor. *The New and Improved How To Book for Genealogists*. 8th ed. Logan, UT: The Everton Publishers, Inc., 1986.
- Greenwood, Val D. *The Researcher's Guide to American Genealogy*. Baltimore, MD: Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., 1973.
- Harland, Derek. *Genealogical Research Standards (Formerly A Basic Course in Genealogy, Vol. 2)*. Salt Lake City, UT: Bookcraft, Inc., 1963.
- Jonasson, Eric. *The Canadian Genealogical Handbook, 2nd ed.* Winnipeg, Manitoba: Wheatfield Press, 1978.
- Kurzweil, Arthur. *From Generation to Generation: How to Trace Your Jewish Genealogy and Personal History*. New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1980.
- National Archives of Canada. *Tracing Your Ancestors in Canada*. Minister of Supplies and Services Canada, 1988.
- National Archives Trust Fund Board. *Guide to Genealogical Research in the National Archives*. Washington, DC, 1985.
- Rottenberg, Dan. *Finding Our Fathers: A Guidebook to Jewish Genealogy*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., 1986.
- Stryker-Rodda, Harriet. *How to Climb Your Family Tree*. Baltimore: Genealogical Publishing Co., Inc., 1987.
- Williams, Ethel W. *Know Your Ancestors: A Guide to Genealogical Research*. Rutland, VT: Charles E. Tuttle Company, 1975.

GENEALOGICAL INFORMATION SOURCES

Note: These addresses and phone numbers were verified at the time of this manual's printing. It is possible that they have since changed. If you have trouble reaching any of these places, dial 1+ (area code) + 555-1212 for information.

NATIONAL SOURCES

Local History and Genealogy Reading Room, Library of Congress Annex, 1st St. & Independence Ave. SE, Washington, DC 20540-5554, (202) 707-5537
National Archives and Records, Records Administration, 7th and Pennsylvania Ave., Washington, DC 20408, (202) 501-5402
National Genealogical Society, 4527 Seventeenth Street North, Arlington, VA 22207-2399, (703) 525-0050
National Society of Daughters of the American Revolution, 1776 D Street, NW, Washington, DC 20006-5392, (202) 628-1776

STATE SOURCES

Alabama

Alabama Archives and History Dept., 624 Washington Ave., Montgomery, AL 36130, (205) 242-4152

Alaska

Alaska Historical Collections, P.O. Box 110571, Juneau, AK 99811-0571, (907) 465-2925
Kenai Community Library, 163 Main St. Loop, Kenai, AK 99611, (907) 283-4378

Arizona

Arizona Dept. of Library Archives & Public Records, 1700 W. Washington St., Phoenix, AZ 85007, (602) 542-3942
Arizona State Genealogical Society, 500 S. Langley, Tucson, AZ 85710, (602) 298-0905

Arkansas

Arkansas History Commission, One Capital Mall, Little Rock, AR 72201, (501) 682-6900

California

California Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 77105, San Francisco, CA 94107-0105, (415) 777-9936
California Historical Society, 2909 Pacific Ave., San Francisco, CA 94109, (415) 567-1848
California State Archives, 201 N. Sunrise Ave., Roseville, CA 95661, (916) 773-3000
California State Library, 914 Capitol Mall, Sacramento, CA 95814, (916) 654-0261
Los Angeles Westside Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 10447, Marina del Rey, CA 90295
Napa Valley Genealogical & Biographical Society, P.O. Box 385, Napa, CA 94559, (707) 252-2252
Orange County Genealogical Society, 7111 Talbert Ave., Huntington Beach, CA 92648
San Diego Genealogical Society, 2925 Kalmia St., San Diego, CA 92104, (619) 284-7017
San Luis Obispo Genealogical Society, Inc., P.O. Box 4, Atascadero, CA 93423-0004
Southern California Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 4377, Burbank, CA 91503, (818) 843-7247
Sutro Library, 480 Winston Drive, San Francisco, CA 94132, (415) 731-4477

Colorado

Colorado Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 9218, Denver, CO 80209, (303) 571-1535
Colorado State Archives and Public Records, 1313 Sherman St., Rm. 1B-20, Denver, CO 80203, (303) 866-2390

Connecticut

Connecticut State Library, 231 Capitol Ave., Hartford, CT 06106, (203) 566-3692
The Stamford Historical Society, 1508 High Ridge Rd., Stamford, CT 06903, (203) 329-1183

Delaware

Delaware Genealogical Society, 505 Market Street Mall, Wilmington, DE 19801, (302) 995-2783
Historical Society of Delaware, 505 Market Street Mall, Wilmington, DE 19801, (302) 655-7161

Florida

Miami-Dade Public Library, Genealogy Dept., 101 West Flagler St., Miami, FL 33130, (305) 375-5580
State of Florida, Bureau of Archives, Tallahassee, FL 32399-0250, (904) 487-2073
Tampa Public Library Special Collections, 900 North Ashley Dr., Tampa, FL 33602, (813) 273-3628

Georgia

Atlanta History Center, 3101 Andrews Dr. NW, Atlanta, GA 30305, (404) 814-4000
Georgia Department of Archives and History, 330 Capitol Ave., Atlanta, GA 30334, (404) 656-2350

Hawaii

Hawaii State Library, 478 S. King St., Honolulu, HI 96813, (808) 586-3500
Hawaiian Historical Society, 560 Kawaiahao St., Honolulu, HI 96813, (808) 537-6271

Idaho

Idaho Genealogical Society, 325 W. State St., Boise, ID 83705-2867, (208) 384-0542
Idaho State Historical Society Genealogical Library, 450 North 4th St., Boise, ID 83702-6027,
(208) 334-2305

Illinois

Chicago Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 1160, Chicago, IL 60690, (312) 725-1306
Illinois State Archives, Archives Bldg., Springfield, IL 62756, (217) 782-4682
Illinois State Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 10195, Springfield, IL 62791, (217) 789-1968
Illinois State Historical Library, Old State Capitol, Springfield, IL 62701, (217) 524-7216

Indiana

Allen County Public Library, 900 Webster St., Ft. Wayne, IN 46801, (219) 424-7241
Indiana Historical Society, 315 West Ohio Street, Indianapolis, IN 46202, (317) 232-1882
Indiana State Library, 140 North Senate Ave., Indianapolis, IN 46204, (317) 232-3675

Iowa

State Historical Society of Iowa, 600 East Locust St., Des Moines, IA 50319, (515) 281-6200

Kansas

Kansas State Historical Society, 120 West 10th, Topeka, KS 66612, (913) 296-4774
Kansas State Historical Society Library, 120 West 10th, Topeka, KS 66612, (913) 296-4775
Midwest Historical & Genealogical Library, 1203 N. Main St., Wichita, KS 67212, (316) 264-3611
(open Tuesday & Saturday)

Kentucky

Kentucky Historical Society, P.O. Box H, Frankfort, KY 40602, (502) 564-3016
Kentucky State Library and Archives, 300 Coffee Tree Rd., P.O. Box 537, Frankfort, KY 40602-0537,
(502) 875-7000

Louisiana

Louisiana Genealogical and Historical Society, P.O. Box 3454, Baton Rouge, LA 70821
Louisiana State Library, 760 N. 3rd St., Baton Rouge, LA 70802, or P.O. Box 131, Baton Rouge, LA
70821-0131, (504) 342-4914

Maine

Maine Historical Society, 485 Congress Street, Portland, ME 04101, (207) 774-1822
Maine State Library, Cultural Building, State House Station 64, Augusta, ME 04333, (207) 287-5600

Maryland

Maryland Genealogical Society, 201 West Monument St., Baltimore, MD 21201, (410) 685-3750
Maryland Historical Society, 201 West Monument St., Baltimore, MD 21201, (410) 685-3750

Massachusetts

Massachusetts Historical Society, 1154 Boylston St., Boston, MA 02215, (617) 536-1608
Massachusetts State Library, State House, Rm. 341, Boston, MA 02133, (617) 727-2590
New England Historic Genealogical Society, 101 Newbury Street, Boston, MA 02116, (617) 536-5740

Michigan

Archives and Regional History Collections, Western Michigan University, Kalamazoo, MI 49008-5081,
(616) 387-8490
Detroit Public Library, Burton Historical Collections, 5201 Woodward Ave., Detroit, MI 48202,
(313) 833-1480
Michigan State Library, 717 W. Allegan St., P.O. Box 30007, Lansing, MI 48909, (517) 373-5400

Minnesota

Minnesota Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 16069, St. Paul, MN 55116, (612) 645-3671
The Prairieland Genealogical Society, Southwest State University, Marshall, MN 56258

Mississippi

Mississippi Dept. of Archives and History, P.O. Box 571, Jackson, MS 39205, (601) 359-6876
Mississippi Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 5301, Jackson, MS 39236-5301

Missouri

Heart of America Genealogical Society, c/o Public Library, 311 East 12th St., Kansas City, MO 64106,
(816) 221-2685
Missouri State Genealogical Association, 4302 Barth Drive, St. Louis, MO 63125

Montana

Montana Historical Society Foundation, P.O. Box 863, Helena, MT 59624, (406) 449-3770
Yellowstone Genealogy Forum, c/o Parnly Billings Library, 510 North Broadway, Billings, MT 59101,
(406) 657-8257

Nebraska

Eastern Nebraska Genealogical Society, c/o Clare Mares, 1722 E. 19th St., Fremont, NE 68025,
(402) 721-9553
Nebraska State Historical Society Library, P.O. Box 82554, Lincoln, NE 68501, (402) 471-4751

Nevada

Nevada Historical Society, 1650 N. Virginia, Reno, NV 89503, (702) 688-1190
Northeastern Nevada Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 1903, Elko, NV 89801

New Hampshire

New Hampshire Historical Society Library, 30 Park Street, Concord, NH 03301, (603) 225-3381
New Hampshire State Library, 20 Park Street, Concord, NH 03301, (603) 271-2144

New Jersey

New Jersey State Archives, 185 West State Street, CN 307, Trenton, NJ 08625, (609) 292-6260
New Jersey State Library, 185 West State Street, CN 520, Trenton, NJ 08625, (609) 292-6220

New Mexico

Albuquerque Public Library, Special Collections Branch, 423 Central Ave. NE, Albuquerque, NM 87102,
(505) 848-1376.
New Mexico Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 8283, Albuquerque, NM 87198
New Mexico State Library, 325 Don Gasper, Santa Fe, NM 87503, (505) 827-3800

New York

The Brooklyn Historical Society, 128 Pierrepont St., Brooklyn, NY 11201, (718) 624-0890
Buffalo and Erie County Public Library, Laffayette Square, Buffalo, NY 14203, (716) 858-7103
Central New York Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 104, Covin Sta., Syracuse, NY 13205
New York Genealogical and Biographical Society, 122 East 58th Street, New York, NY 10022-1939,
(212) 755-8532
New York State Historical Association, P.O. Box 800, Cooperstown, NY 13326, (607) 547-2509
New York State Library & Cultural Education Center, Empire State Plaza, Seventh Floor, Albany, NY
12230, (518) 474-5355

North Carolina

The North Carolina Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 1492, Raleigh, NC 27602
North Carolina State Library, 109 East Jones Street, Raleigh, NC 27601-2807, (919) 733-7222

North Dakota

State Historical Society of North Dakota, 612 East Blvd., Bismarck, ND 58505-0830, (701) 224-2666

Ohio

Ohio Genealogical Society, 34 Sturges Ave., P.O. Box 2625, Mansfield, OH 44906, (419) 522-9077
Ohio Historical Society Library, 1982 Velma Avenue, Columbus, OH 43211, (614) 297-2510
Ohio State Library, c/o Genealogy Section, Rm. 308, 65 South Front Street, Columbus, OH 43266-0334,
(614) 644-6966
Warren-Trumbull County Public Library, History & Genealogy Room, 444 Mahoning Ave. NW, Warren,
OH 44483, (216) 399-8807

Oklahoma

Oklahoma Historical Society, 2100 N. Lincoln Blvd., Oklahoma City, OK 73105-4997, (405) 521-2491

Oregon

Multnomah County Library, 801 SW 10th Ave., Portland, OR 97205, (503) 248-5234
Oregon Genealogical Society, 223 North A St., Suite F, Springfield, OR 97477, (503) 746-7924 (machine,
Monday & Friday, 10 - 2)
Oregon State Library, State Library Building, Salem, OR 97310, (503) 378-4277

Pennsylvania

Carnegie Library, Pennsylvania Dept., 4400 Forbes Ave., Pittsburgh, PA 15213, (412) 622-3154
Pennsylvania Genealogical Society, 1300 Locust Street, Philadelphia, PA 19107, (215) 545-0391
Pennsylvania State Archives, P.O. Box 1026, Harrisburg, PA 17108-1026, (717) 783-3281
State Library of Pennsylvania, P.O. Box 1601, Harrisburg, PA 17105, (717) 783-5991 (machine only)

Rhode Island

Rhode Island State Archives, 337 Westminster St., Providence, RI 02905, (401) 277-2353
Rhode Island State Historical Society Library, 121 Hope St., Providence, RI 02906, (401) 331-8575

South Carolina

South Carolina Historical Society, 100 Meeting Street, Charleston, SC 29401, (803) 723-3225
South Carolina State Archives, 1430 Senate St., P.O. Box 11669, Columbia, SC 29211, (803) 734-8596
South Carolina State Library, 1500 Senate Street, P.O. Box 11469, Columbia, SC 29211,
(803) 734-8666

South Dakota

State Historical Society, 900 Governors Dr., Pierre, SD 57501-2217, (605) 773-3458
Tri-State Genealogical Society, 905 Fifth Avenue, Bell Fourche, SD 57717

Tennessee

Tennessee Genealogical Society, P.O. Box 111249, Memphis, TN 38111-1249, (901) 327-3273
Tennessee State Library and Archives, 403 7th Avenue North, Nashville, TN 37243, (615) 741-2764

Texas

Texas State Library, Box 12927, Austin, TX 78711, (512) 463-5455

Utah

Family History Library, 35 North West Temple Street, Salt Lake City, UT 84150, (801) 240-2364
Utah Genealogical Association, P.O. Box 1144, Salt Lake City, UT 84110, (801) 241-4196

Vermont

Genealogical Library, Bennington Museum, West Main St., Bennington, VT 05201, (802) 447-1571
Vermont Historical Society, Pavilion Office Bldg., 109 State Street, Montpelier, VT 05609-0901,
(802) 828-2291

Virginia

Virginia Historical Society, P.O. Box 7311, Richmond, VA 23221-0311, (804) 358-4901
Virginia State Library, 11th St. at Capitol Square, Richmond, VA 23219, (804) 786-2306

Washington

Seattle Genealogical Society, 1405 5th Avenue, Ste. 210, P.O. Box 1708, Seattle, WA 98111,
(206) 682-1410
Washington State Library, P.O. Box 42475, Olympia, WA 98504-2475, (206) 753-4024

West Virginia

West Virginia Historical Society, Cultural Center, 1900 Kanewha Blvd E., Charleston, WV 25305-0300,
(304) 558-0220

Wisconsin

Milwaukee Public Library, 814 West Wisconsin Ave., Milwaukee, WI 53233-2385, (414) 278-3000
Wisconsin Genealogical Society, c/o Mrs. John Irvin, 2109 20th Ave., Monroe, WI 53566, (608) 325-2609
Wisconsin Jewish Genealogical Society, 9280 N. Fairway Dr., Milwaukee, WI 53217
Wisconsin State Historical Society Library, 816 State St., Madison, WI 53706, (608) 264-6534

Wyoming

Department of Commerce, Historical Research Unit, Barrett Bldg., 2301 Central Avenue, Cheyenne, WY
82002, (307) 777-7018

CANADIAN SOURCES

Archives Nationales du Québec, Service Au Public, P.O. Box 10450, 1210 Avenue du Séminaire,
Saint-Foy, Qué., G1V 4N1, (418) 643-1322
Archives of Ontario, 77 Grenville St., Queen's Park, Toronto, Ont., M7A 2R9, (416) 327-1600
National Archives of Canada, 395 Wellington St., Ottawa, Ont., K1A 0N3, (613) 995-5138
Northwest Territories Archives, Department of Educational, Cultural, & Employment Programs,
Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, N.W.T., X1A 2L9, (403) 873-7698
Provincial Archives of Alberta, 12845 - 102 Ave., Edmonton, Alba., T5N 0M6, (403) 427-1750
Provincial Archives of British Columbia, 655 Belleville St., Victoria, B.C., V8V 1X4, (604) 387-5885
Provincial Archives of Manitoba, 200 Vaughan St., Winnipeg, Man., R3C 1T5, (204) 945-3971
Provincial Archives of New Brunswick, P.O. Box 6000, Fredericton, N.B., E3B 5H1, (506) 453-2122
Provincial Archives of Newfoundland and Labrador, Colonial Building, Military Road, St. John's Nfld.,
A1C 2C9, (709) 729-3065
Public Archives, 6016 University Ave., Halifax, N.S., B3H 1W4, (902) 424-6060
Public Archives of Prince Edward Island, P.O. Box 1000, Charlottetown, P.E.I., C1A 7M4,
(902) 368-4290
Saskatchewan Archives Board, Regina Office, University of Regina, Regina, Sask., S4S 0A2,
(306) 787-4068
Saskatchewan Archives Board, Saskatoon Office, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, Sask., S7N 0W0,
(306) 933-5832
Yukon Archives, P.O. Box 2703, Whitehorse, Y.T., Y1A 2C6, (403) 667-5321



LDS ORDINANCE INFORMATION

If you selected **Yes** to use the LDS format for reports on “**Preferences – Step 3 of 5**” in **Program Setup**, several new fields will be added to some Family Tree Maker screens.

1. The event field labels on **Individual Card 1** are automatically changed to the ordinances baptism, endowment, and seal to parents.
2. The field labels of the **Marriage Card** now ask for the sealing date and location.
3. The “**Family Group Sheet – Step 2 of 3**” screen will provide space for entering the submitter’s stake and unit number as well as his or her relationship to the individuals listed on the sheet.
4. The location and date fields will accept temple codes and several special date codes. These codes can be spelled out or abbreviated.

<i>Special Date Codes</i>
BIC (born in the covenant)
Canceled or CAN
Child or CHI
Cleared or CLE
Completed or COM
DNS (do not seal)
Infant or INF
See notes
Stillborn or STI
Submitted or SUB
Uncleared or UNC

Figure B-1. Special Date Codes

If your printer is capable of printing 132 characters across a page, the Family Group Sheet will reflect these changes:

1. Ordinance data is now listed along the right hand side of the sheet.
2. Last names are printed in capital letters.
3. All dates are automatically formatted — Day/Month/Year — with the month abbreviated (10 Sep. 1988).

-
-
4. The submitter's name, address, stake, and unit number are included at the bottom of the page.
 5. Space is provided for entering information about proxies.
 6. The relationship of the submitter to the husband or wife is listed at the very bottom left corner of the page.
 7. Source information for all items on the Family Group Sheet is printed on additional pages.



PRINTERS AND PLOTTERS

This appendix describes special settings you might need to change to make your printer or plotter work correctly with Family Tree Maker.

When You're Not Sure What Printer Setting To Use

If you do not find your printer's manufacturer listed on "**Installing the Printer – Step 1 of 3**," it will still work correctly with Family Tree Maker.

1. Check your printer manual to see if your printer emulates (behaves like) any of the manufacturers listed. If it does, try that one first.

Note: Each time you try a different printer setting, be sure to reset your printer (turn it off, then back on) before printing.

2. If you can't find the printer your printer emulates and it is a dot matrix printer, try the following settings in the order listed:
 - **Graphics Printer** under the manufacturer, **IBM Printer – Other**.
 - **IBM Compatible** under the manufacturer, **IBM Printer – Other**.

If your printer is a laser printer, try any of the "**No cartridge req'd**" settings under the manufacturer, **HP LaserJet II, III**.

3. If these options don't work correctly, try the manufacturer **Other** on "**Installing the Printer – Step 1 of 3**." The manufacturer **Other** is located at the very end of the list of manufacturers. Make sure that the **Plain vanilla** setting you select on "**Installing the Printer – Step 2 of 3**," has the same cpi (characters per inch) that your printer is using.

Plain vanilla printer settings work with almost any printer. They use regular underscore and vertical dashed lines to draw boxes, rather than using graphics characters. Therefore, your output will appear as in Figure C-1 on page 242.

*Printer without graphics
(plain vanilla)*

Kenneth Hess born: February 22, 1953	Richard Hess born: February 23, 1925
	Phyllis Lafferty born: July 17, 1928

Printer with graphics

Kenneth Hess born: February 22, 1953	Richard Hess born: February 23, 1925
	Phyllis Lafferty born: July 17, 1928

Figure C-1. Printer output with plain vanilla settings

Setting Up A Large Format Plotter

This section gives instructions for using Hewlett-Packard 7580B, 7585B, 7586B, DraftPro, and DraftMaster drafting plotters and their compatibles.

If your plotter is not an HP plotter, select **Other HPGL plotter** under the manufacturer **HP Plotter**. When you make this selection, Family Tree Maker will ask you how many pens there are on your plotter. (See page 101 in Chapter 3 for information on using each pen.) Then follow the directions below for the model of HP plotter that your plotter emulates.

Paper Size

You must use D-size (22 x 34") or A1-size (594 x 841mm) or larger paper. If you use smaller paper, your tree will print out of limits.

Configuring the Plotter

The methods for configuring the various plotters differ.

For the 7580B, 7585B, and 7586B, set the switches as follows:

Interface Mode	RS-232
Emulate/Normal	Normal
Expand/Normal	Normal
Stand-alone/Eavesdrop	Stand-alone
Monitor Mode/Normal	Normal
Local/Normal	Normal
Parity On/Off	Off
Even/Odd	Odd
Duplex	Full
Hardwire/Modem	Hardwire
DTR-Bypass	Normal
Baud Rate	9600

For the HP DraftPro, set the switches as follows:

Eavesdrop	6	Off (Stand-alone)
Odd	5	Off (Even)
Parity	4	Off
Baud	3	On (9600)
	2	Off
	1	On
	0	Off

For the HP DraftMaster, use the front panel menu to configure the plotter:

Press **Next Display** until you see the Group/Sort/HP-IB/Serial menu.

Select **Serial** and make sure the four selections are set as follows:

Dataflow	REMOTE and STAND-ALONE
Baud Rate	9600
Parity	0
Hardwire	ON

In Family Tree Maker

On “**Installing the Printer – Step 3 of 3**” make sure your selections are set as follows to match the settings on the plotter:

Select a COM port	
Baud Rate	9600
Data bits	Eight
Stop bits	One
Parity	None

Special Setup

Special Setup contains options that change the way Family Tree Maker sends information to the printer. To access the options available here, press **Ctrl** + **F5** from any Family Card (hold down the **Ctrl** key while you press **F5**).

Reverse paper orientation?

Choose **Yes** to tell Family Tree Maker that the paper is turned sideways in the printer. Normally, paper feeds through the printer with the following dimensions:

	<u>Width</u>	<u>Length</u>	(in inches)
Letter	8.5	11	
Legal	8.5	14	
Computer	14	11	

If you plan to put the paper in with the reverse dimensions (see table below), you need to tell Family Tree Maker.

	<u>Width</u>	<u>Length</u>	(in inches)
Letter	11	8.5	
Legal	14	8.5	
Computer	11	14	

This is only possible on wide carriage printers.

Note: This setting is ignored if your printer is an HP DeskJet, a laser printer, or a plotter.

Shorten print area on page?

Choose **Yes** if your printer has a cut sheet feeder. This will allow Family Tree Maker to adjust for the way the paper is fed into the printer.

Always reset printer?

Choose **Yes** if you are printing through a local area network to a shared printer. This option will reset the printer for every tree or list that you print.

Roman-8 character set?

Family Tree Maker normally uses the IBM International Character Set to print international characters. Many Hewlett-Packard printers use the Roman-8 character set for international characters. Choose **Yes** to use this character set.

43/50 Line Preview Mode

Family Tree Maker previews your tree on the screen just before you print it. Ordinarily, you can only preview 25 lines worth of text and graphics at a time. Some monitor types, specifically EGA (Enhanced Graphics Adapter) and VGA (Video Graphics Adapter) monitors, have the ability to show more than 25 lines on the screen at one time.

Select **Yes** to take advantage of an EGA or VGA monitor. Select **No** if your monitor isn't one of these, or if you do not see your tree properly when it is previewed. (Sometimes incompatibility problems make it impossible to use the 43/50 line preview.)

Top, left, right, and bottom margins

Use these settings to control the size of the margins on your printed output. Choosing larger numbers will give you bigger margins, which are helpful for things like three-hole punching a Family Group Sheet. Choosing smaller numbers will reduce the size of your margins, getting as much information as possible onto a page (on trees, for example). The numbers represent parts of an inch (i.e., “.5” means one half inch; “.2” means one fifth of an inch).

Note: All printers have a built-in margin. This margin varies from printer to printer, so a margin that you set here will be added to your printer's built-in margin.

These settings will affect all of your printouts. If you want certain settings for a Family Group Sheet, and then different ones for an ancestor tree, come back to this screen and change them.



COMMON QUESTIONS AND PROBLEMS

This section covers the most common questions and problems encountered while using Family Tree Maker.

ENTERING INFORMATION

Correcting Relationship Mistakes

Sometimes you find out that you have to change the relationships you've created in Family Tree Maker. You might find out that two spouses weren't married to each other after all, but to other people in your file. Or you might need to assign a child to different parents than the ones you've given it. Sometimes you will even find that an individual doesn't belong in your card file at all.

The commands described in this section allow you to modify the relationships you've already set up in Family Tree Maker.


D – Delete Individual

If you find that you have added a person to your card file by mistake, you can use the **Delete individual** function to remove that individual.

Note: If you've made a mistake entering a single piece of information (such as an incorrect date or location), you don't need to use **Delete individual**; just type over the incorrect information. Do NOT type over an individual's NAME unless you are just changing the spelling. If you just need to MOVE an individual to a different Family Card, use the attach and detach commands described in this appendix.

You can delete only one person at a time using this command. To delete a whole branch of people, such as an individual who has children, use the **Save Selected Descendants** feature (see Appendix E, page 263).

To delete an individual:

1. Place the cursor on the individual to delete.
2. Press  to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **E – Edit card file**, then **D – Delete individual**. Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm the deletion.

Sometimes when Family Tree Maker deletes an individual, the current Family Card no longer exists. Family Tree Maker tries to bring up the parents of the deleted individual when this happens. If the individual has no parents, Family Tree Maker picks a card to display from all those in your card file.

Note: It's important to remember that the delete individual command severs all ties that the deleted individual created between any other people in your tree. When you've deleted an individual, you may have to reconnect other people in your tree. For example, if you delete a single parent, you've disconnected all of that parent's children from the rest of their relatives. Since children are related to other family members only through the parental connection, you must re-attach children to a parent to re-establish their family ties. See "**Attach child**," on page 250 for information on how to do this.

The following four commands allow you to change the relationships you have created in your card file without removing anyone from the card file. They are located in the Modify Family Structure Menu under E – Edit card file on the Command Menu.

C – Detach child (child does not belong with these parents)

If a child in your card file appears with the wrong parents, you can use the **Detach child** command to separate the child from those parents. If the individual you are detaching has children, those children will remain with the detached individual. Only the relationship between the detached child and its parents will be severed.

To detach a child from its parents:

1. Go to the Family Card of the individual you want to detach.

Note: You must be on the Family Card on which the individual you want to detach is shown in the list of children. If you find yourself on a card on which the individual appears as a husband or wife, go to the Family Card on which the individual appears as a child. You can do this by pressing **F4** to find the parents of the female spouse or **F5** to find the parents of the male spouse, or by pressing **F2** and selecting one of the individual's parents from the list.

2. Place the cursor on the child you want to detach.
3. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
4. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **F – Modify family structure**.
5. From the Modify Family Structure Menu, select **C – Detach child**. Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm the detachment.

If the child has siblings, Family Tree Maker asks if the siblings should be detached as well. If you select **Yes**, Family Tree Maker will detach all siblings from the parents at once and they will remain together as siblings. If you select **No**, only the selected individual will be detached.

Once the child has been detached, you can attach him/her somewhere else in your card file by using the **Attach child** command, described on page 250.


To reattach this individual somewhere else in the tree, go to the Family Card where you want to attach this individual and choose the **Attach child** command from the Modify Family Structure Menu. For information on attaching children, see “Attach child,” described on page 250. For information on printing a report of individuals who are not attached to either parents or children, see “Printing a Specific List of Individuals” on page 183.


D – Detach spouse (spouses are incorrectly shown as married)

If Family Tree Maker shows two individuals as married when they actually aren't, use the **Detach spouse** command to separate the spouses from each other. If these spouses have children listed on their Family Card, the children will remain with the spouse who is not being detached. Use the **Detach child** command (described on page 248) if you also need to detach the children from the remaining spouse.

To detach someone from his or her spouse:

1. Go to the Family Card of the individual you want to detach.

Note: You must be on the Family Card on which the individual you want to detach appears as a husband or wife, not as a child. If you find yourself on a card on which the person is shown in the list of children, go to the Family Card on which the individual appears as a spouse. You can do this by first placing your cursor on the individual whose Family Card you want to see, and then pressing .

2. Place the cursor on the spouse you want to detach.
3. Press  to display the Command Menu.
4. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **F – Modify family structure**.
5. From the Modify Family Structure Menu, select **D – Detach spouse**. Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm the detachment.

If the individual you are detaching has children, the children will remain with the spouse.

To reattach this individual somewhere else in the tree, go to the Family Card where you want to attach this individual and choose the **Attach spouse** command from the Modify Family Structure Menu. For information on attaching spouses, see “Attach spouse” on page 250. For information on printing a report of individuals who are not attached to either parents or children, see “Printing a Specific List of Individuals” on page 183.

A – Attach child (child and parents both in card file, but not attached)

If an individual and its parents are entered in your card file, but the individual does not appear on the parents' Family Card, use the **Attach child** command. You only need to use this command when both the child and parents are already entered in your card file. If one of them is not, just type in their name (see "Entering Family Information" on page 56 for more information).

To attach a child to its parents:

1. Go to the Family Card where you want the individual to appear as a child, i.e., the card that shows the child's parents as spouses.
2. Press **F6** to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **F – Modify family structure**.
4. From the Modify Family Structure Menu, select **A – Attach child**.

Family Tree Maker now displays a list of all possible children. This list won't contain all the names in your card file. It will just list those individuals who have no parents entered in the card file. If the individual you are looking for does not appear, it may be because the individual is incorrectly entered as someone's child somewhere else in your card file. If this is the case, you will need to use the **Detach child** command (described on page 248) first.

5. Use **F7** and **F8** to highlight the correct individual.
6. Press **F9**. Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm your selection.

If the child has siblings, Family Tree Maker will ask if you want to attach all of the siblings to the new parents as well. If you select **Yes**, Family Tree Maker will attach all siblings to the parents at once. If you select **No**, only the selected individual will be attached.

S – Attach spouse (both spouses in card file, but not attached)

If two people are entered in our card file, but aren't married to each other, use **Attach spouse** to join them. You only need to use this command if both spouses are already in your card file, but are not married to each other. If both are not already entered, just enter their names or use **F3 – Other spouses** to add a spouse, if needed (see "Entering Family Information" on page 56 for more information).

To attach two individuals as spouses:

1. Go to the Family Card where one of the spouses appears in the husband or wife field.

Note: You must be on a Family Card where one of the spouses appears as the **ONLY** spouse. If the individual is already married on this Family Card, then

you must create a place for a new spouse by pressing **F3** and choosing **Create another spouse** for the husband or wife.

If one of the spouses you are attaching already has the children of this marriage listed on their Family Card, then go to the Family Card with the children. That way, Family Tree Maker knows to keep the children with the marriage you are creating.

2. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
3. Select **E – Edit card file**, then select **F – Modify family structure**.
4. From the Modify Family Structure Menu, select **S – Attach spouse**.

Family Tree Maker now displays a list of all possible spouses. This list won't contain all the names in the card file. It will just list those individuals who are the opposite sex of the individual whose Family Card you are currently on.

5. Use **F7** and **F8** to highlight the correct individual.
6. Press **F10**. Family Tree Maker asks you to confirm your selection.

Avoiding Information Loss



To avoid accidental loss of information, take the following precautions:

- Save your card file frequently while using Family Tree Maker
- Make a backup copy of your card file on a separate disk at the end of every day

If you take these precautions, you won't have to retype a lot of information if you lose power or have a disk problem.

To make a backup copy of your card file on a separate disk:

1. Format a blank floppy disk and label it "Card File Backup Diskette."
2. Start Family Tree Maker and get your card file.
3. Press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
4. Select **F – File**.
5. Select **S – Save card file to disk**.
6. Press Tab **F5** to move up to the "Drive (or directory)" line.
7. Hold down **Ctrl** and press **Y**.
8. Type **A:** to specify disk drive A. If you want to save to a different drive, type that drive's letter instead.
9. Insert your backup diskette into the drive you're saving to.












-
-
10. Press Tab  to move down to the “Card file name” line.
 11. If your card file name does not appear at your cursor, type it now.
It’s best to use the name you always use.
 12. Press .
 13. Quit Family Tree Maker.

Note to floppy disk users: When making backups from one floppy disk to another, Family Tree Maker may require you to swap disks. Please simply follow the instructions on the screen.

Retrieving Backups

You may find that, for one reason or another, you need to restore your card file from your backup copy. This process will replace your card file with your backup copy.

To retrieve a backup copy of your card file from a floppy diskette:

1. Start Family Tree Maker.
2. Insert your backup diskette into Drive A. If you want to get your card file from a different drive, insert your diskette there instead.
3. When it asks if you want to get an existing card file or create a new one, highlight **Get Existing**, and press .
4. Press Tab  to move up to the “Drive (or directory)” line. On a piece of paper, write down exactly what is on this line, if anything (normally it is blank).
5. Hold down  and press .
6. Type **A:** to specify Drive A. If you want to get your card file from a different drive, type that drive’s letter instead. Press .
7. Highlight the file you want to retrieve and press .
8. From any Family Card, press  to display the Command Menu.
9. Select **F – File**.
10. Select **S – Save card file to disk**.
11. Press Tab  to move up to the “Drive (or directory)” line.
12. Type exactly the information you wrote down in Step 4 above, or press  +  to make the line blank again and press .

-
-
13. Use or to highlight your card file name and press .

Note: It is very important that you select the name of the card file you are replacing with the backup copy. If you choose a different card file, you will lose all the information that is contained in it.

Family Tree Maker displays a warning message telling you that you will overwrite the information contained in this card file if you select **Yes**.

14. Use to highlight **Yes** and press if you are sure you want to replace this card file with your backup copy.

Family Tree Maker will give you one more chance to change your mind.

15. Use to highlight **Yes** and press if you are sure you want to replace this card file with your backup copy.

Keeping All Your Information In A Single Card File

Always save your family information in a single card file. The only exceptions are:

- If you're starting a new card file for someone who's completely unrelated to you, such as your neighbor, *or*
- If you have more than 2400 names to enter.

A card file is like a box of recipe cards. You write your recipes on 3 x 5" cards and keep them all together in a single box so you can find them easily. In the same way, you should keep all your family cards together in a single card file so that you can find your family members easily. Everyone in your family, whether they're related by blood or by marriage, whether they're closely related or very distantly related, should be stored together in one card file.

To use only one card file, follow these guidelines:

1. When you first start Family Tree Maker, a message appears asking, "Do you want to create a new card file or get an existing one?"

Always choose "**Get existing.**" Even if you're adding new names, think of this process as adding new recipes to your existing file.

2. When you save your card file, do not give it a different name. Always choose the name that's highlighted – the same name you used in "Get Existing."

Listing Children And Marriages In The Correct Order

To prevent children from appearing in the wrong order, always include a birth date, even if it's only an estimated birth date. You can indicate that the date is estimated by typing any of the following words before the date:

- **est** (e.g., est 7/4/1776)
- **after** (e.g., aft 7/4/1776)
- **before** (e.g., bef 7/4/1776)
- **about** (e.g., abt 7/4/1776)
- **circa** (e.g., circa 7/4/1776)

Note: For more information about entering dates, see page 58.

Note: You can change the word "about" to be anything you like. See page 96.

Figure D-1, on page 255, shows an example of why you should estimate birth dates. In this family, Jon is the oldest, Joel is the middle child, and Susanne is the youngest. We know when Jon and Joel were born, but do not know when Susanne was born. We only know that she was born after Joel, so her birth date was left blank.

When you ask Family Tree Maker to arrange the children by birth date, or when you print a Family Group Sheet, Family Tree Maker shows the children with no birth date first.

Using an estimated date solves the problem. Entering "After July 7, 1870" as Susanne's birth date causes her to be shown last on the Family Card, and on Family Group Sheets, which we know is correct. See Figure D-2 on page 255.

Using an estimated date instead of no date solves the same problem when marriages appear in the wrong order.

Harvey & Joan	F4 - Parents of Joan	F5 - Parents of Harvey	F2 - Index of names
---------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

Husband: Harvey Bines
Date born: December 12, 1840 in Brookline, Massachusetts
died: in

Wife: Joan Wallace
Date born: October 25, 1843 in Medford, Massachusetts
died: in

Marriage date: June 30, 1860 Status: M
Marriage location: Medford, Massachusetts

Children	[F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1	Susanne Bines	F	
2	Jon Bines	M	October 9, 1869
3	Joel T. Bines	M	July 7, 1870
4			
5			

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Figure D-1. Children listed in the wrong birth order

Harvey & Joan	F4 - Parents of Joan	F5 - Parents of Harvey	F2 - Index of names
---------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------

Husband: Harvey Bines
Date born: December 12, 1840 in Brookline, Massachusetts
died: in

Wife: Joan Wallace
Date born: October 25, 1843 in Medford, Massachusetts
died: in

Marriage date: June 30, 1860 Status: M
Marriage location: Medford, Massachusetts

Children	[F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1	Jon Bines	M	October 9, 1869
2	Joel T. Bines	M	July 7, 1870
3	Susanne Bines	F	AFTER July 7, 1870
4			
5			

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Figure D-2. Children listed in the correct birth order

Using International Characters

The table on the next page is called an ASCII table (pronounced “ask-ee”). It contains a list of the international characters that you can enter in Family Tree Maker. You can use the information contained in this table to enter international characters into Family Tree Maker that are not represented by a key on your keyboard.

For example, if members of your family originate from France, you may find that the correct spelling of a name contains the French character, **é**. You can enter this character in Family Tree Maker by holding down the **Alt** key while typing the numeric equivalent of the letter **é** on your keyboard’s numeric keypad.

Note: We recommend that you test the printing of all of the international characters you plan to use before you go to the trouble of entering them throughout your card file. Not all printers can print these characters. See the section below for more information.

To enter international characters in Family Tree Maker, follow these steps:

1. Find the letter or symbol you need on the table. The numbers on the left of each column in the table are the codes you’ll use, so look on the right side of each column to find the character or symbol you need.
2. Hold down the **Alt** key.
3. While you are still holding down the **Alt** key, use the numeric keypad on the right hand side of your keyboard to type the numeric sequence corresponding to the character you want to use. For example, to type the French **é**, you would actually type **Alt 130**.

When you release the **Alt** key, the character will appear on your screen.

To print these characters, it is necessary to have a printer that supports the standard IBM Character Set 2. All IBM printers (except the IBM Matrix Printer) should work without adjustment. Most other major printer brands should work as well. To be sure your printer will print these characters, use the following steps to print a sample of all the characters you plan to use:

1. In any text field, on any Family Card, follow the steps above to enter each of the characters you would like to use.
2. Press **Alt + P** (hold down the **Alt** key while you press **P**) to print the Family Card.
3. Check to make sure each of the characters printed correctly.

If any of the characters did not print, or a different character printed in its place, check your printer manual to make sure your printer is set up to support the IBM Character Set 2.

128	Ç	147	ô
129	ü	148	ö
130	é	149	ò
131	â	150	û
132	ä	151	ù
133	à	152	ÿ
134	å	153	Ö
135	ç	154	Û
136	ê	155	ø
137	ë	156	£
138	è	157	¥
139	ï	158	Þ
140	î	159	ƒ
141	ì	160	á
142	Ä	161	í
143	Å	162	ó
144	É	163	ú
145	æ	164	ñ
146	Æ	165	Ñ

Figure D-3. The ASCII table

PRINTING

Text Is Printing Out Of The Boxes

This occurs when the printer is using a different character spacing than the printer setting you chose in Family Tree Maker. If your tree appears as shown in Figure D-4 on page 258, try the following:

1. Sometimes other software can leave the printer in a state that Family Tree Maker can't override. Reset the printer (turn the power off, then on) and try printing again.
2. If the text still prints out of boxes, check the character spacing your printer uses to make sure it matches the character spacing of the printer setting selected in **Program Setup**. From the Command Menu select **F – File**, then select **P – Change program setup** to check your printer setting. Then follow the steps in “When You’re Not Sure What Printer Setting to Use” on page 241 in Appendix C to select the correct printer setting for your printer.

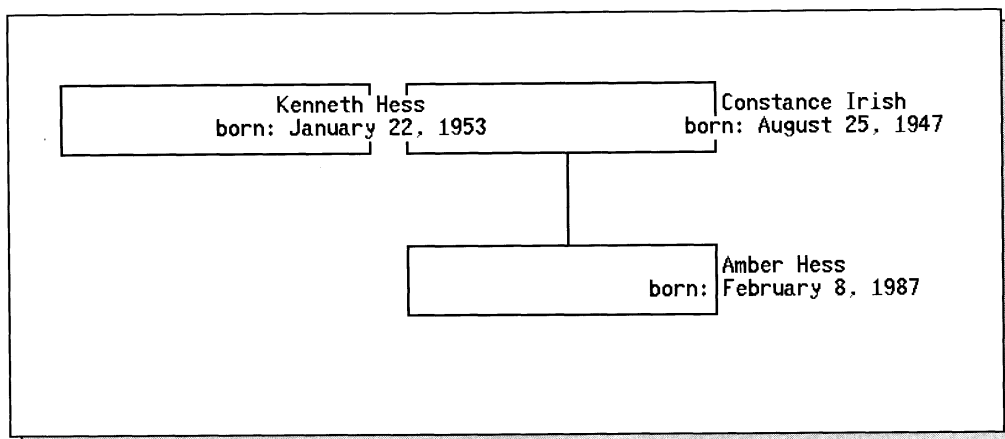


Figure D-4. Text printing out of boxes

The Information From The Boxes On The Right Side Of The Tree Is Printing On The Left Side Of The Page

This symptom indicates that the paper size specified in **Program Setup** is wider than the maximum width that the printer can handle. For example, if you have a narrow carriage printer and you select a paper size of 14 x 11 inches, the tree will wrap. In some cases, this problem also appears to cause extra vertical spaces between lines of the tree (see Figure D-5).

Use a ruler to check the actual width and length of your paper. Then from the Command Menu select **F – File**, then select **P – Change program setup** to make sure the page size you selected in **Program Setup** is not larger than this.

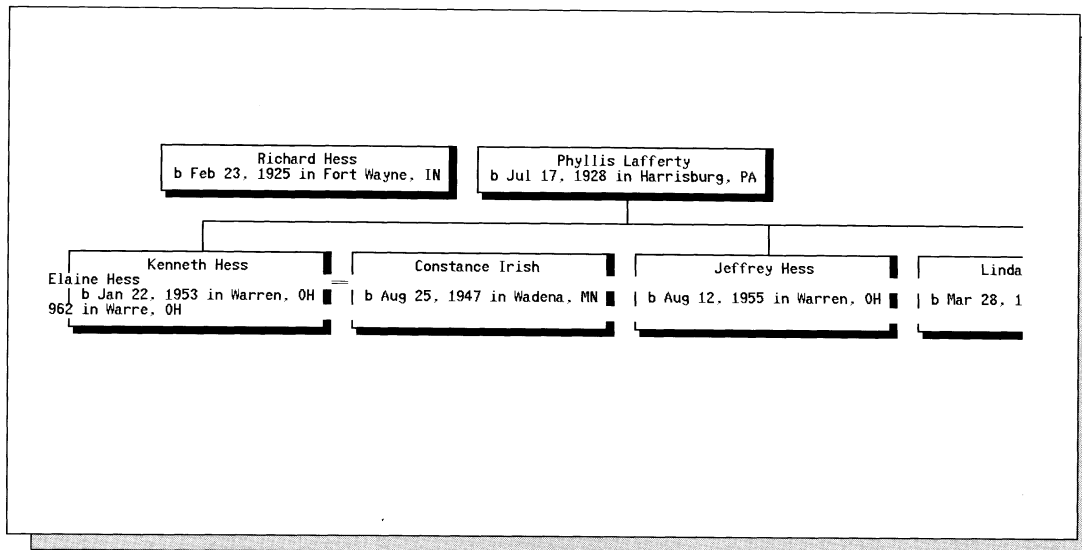


Figure D-5. Tree wrapping

Garbage Characters Are Printing On The Tree

Usually, a printer prints garbage characters instead of lines, boxes, or text because the wrong printer setting was selected in **Program Setup**.

1. Make sure to select the correct printer type in **Program Setup**. From the Command Menu, select **F – File**, then select **P – Change program setup** to check which setting you have chosen and to change it if necessary. (See page 94 in Chapter 3 for help using the Command Menu.)
2. If you are using a printer that has several printer emulations, make sure you select the same setting in **Program Setup** as you have selected on the printer itself.

Refer to the section “When You’re Not Sure What Printer Setting To Use” on page 241 in Appendix C for more information on how to set up your printer.

3. If your printer is connected to a serial port (COM1, COM2, etc.), make sure you specify the same baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits in **Program Setup** that your printer uses. (See “**Installing the Printer – Step 3 of 3**” on page 21 in Chapter 1 for more information.)
4. Make sure you do not have a bad cable. Your printer may work correctly with software programs that do not print graphics (like a word processor), but not with Family Tree Maker. This is because your cable may have a bad pin in it that is only used for sending graphics characters. Try using another cable.

ERROR MESSAGES

“Out of memory. Cannot hold more information.”

This may mean your card file has used all the memory available on your computer, or it may mean your card file has reached the maximum allowable number of records.

1. From any Family Card, press **⌘** + **F1** to see how much memory is available to Family Tree Maker and to see how many records are still available.
2. If you have a network or any other memory-resident software loaded (like a menu program), you can make more memory available to Family Tree Maker. Save your card file, then quit Family Tree Maker and re-start your computer without loading the memory-resident programs.

“Your printer or plotter is not responding.”

This message happens when Family Tree Maker detects an error while sending the information to the printer. It can be caused by several different things:

1. You chose the wrong port on “**Installing the Printer – Step 3 of 3.**” From the Command Menu, select **F – File**, then select **P – Change program setup** to try a different port. (See page 94 in Chapter 3 for help using the Command Menu.)
2. Your cable is bad or just not connected securely at both ends. Check the cable connections and/or try a different cable.
3. You have a switch box, external buffer or other hardware device between the computer and the printer. To determine if the problem is being caused by one of these devices, temporarily remove the device and try printing again.
4. You are plotting a very large tree on one of the large format plotters. This is probably because the software “timed out” and is not a cause for concern. Press **⌘** to resume plotting.



“You have entered the drive (or directory) incorrectly.”

This message means that Family Tree Maker doesn’t understand where you want to save the file; you’ve specified a location that it doesn’t recognize.



To fix this problem:

1. Position your cursor on the “Drive (or directory):” line.

If your screen currently displays the “Incorrect drive (or directory)” message, just press **⌘**.

-
2. **If you're using a hard disk**, press  +  to clear the line. Usually this line is blank if you save your card file on a hard disk.

If you're using a floppy disk, type the letter of the drive followed by a colon and a backslash. In most cases, this would be **B:**

3. Press Tab  to move to the "Card file name" line.
4. Enter your filename.
5. Press  to save (or get) your file.



HOW TO SAVE SELECTED DESCENDANTS AND JOIN CARD FILES

This appendix describes how to use two special features in Family Tree Maker. Both of these features allow you to manipulate the information in your card files.

SAVE SELECTED DESCENDANTS

This function allows you to take a section of the information contained in a card file (a branch) and save it as a new card file. You might want to do this if you've reached the program's limit on the number of people who can be in one card file. (On a computer with 640Kb of RAM, you can enter 2400 names in each card file.) You could then use this "branch" as a starting point for a new family tree.

This function also allows you to delete more than one person at a time, such as someone with children, or even an entire branch. Just before Family Tree Maker saves your selected descendants, you are given the option to delete them.

Just pick an individual from your current card file and Family Tree Maker makes a new card file. The new card file contains just that individual and as many generations of his or her descendants as you wish. The original card file can remain the same (all the people are still there) or you can choose to remove the selected descendants.

Note: The term "descendants" includes spouses of blood line descendants.

To Save selected descendants, first save your current card file (see page 92 for information on saving), then do the following:

1. From any Family Card, press to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **F – File**, then select **U – Utilities**.
3. From the Utilities Menu, select **S – Save selected descendants**. Family Tree Maker displays the screen "**Save selected descendants – Step 1 of 5.**"
4. Highlight the person who is to be the primary individual (the person whose descendants you want to save as a new card file).
5. Press . Family Tree Maker now displays the screen "**Save selected descendants – Step 2 of 5.**"
6. Use or to select the number of generations you want to save.

-
-
7. Press **F10** to confirm your choice and to go to the next screen. The preview screen appears (it's really "**Save selected descendants – Step 3 of 5,**" it's just not labeled).

The preview screen allows you to view on screen all the individuals you'll save to the new card file. Use the cursor keys (see page 57) to move around the screen and see who is there. If you need to change something, just press **ESC** to go back and change the primary individual and/or the number of generations.

8. When you're satisfied with what you see on the preview screen, press **F10** to display the "**Save selected descendants – Step 4 of 5**" screen.
9. The cursor is at the beginning of the field labeled "Card file name." You can now type in a new card file name or use **↑** and **↓** to select a name from the list of existing card files.

Caution: If you select a card file name from the list, the contents of your new card file will REPLACE the one you selected. Family Tree Maker will display a message warning you about this.

Usually, you'll want to type in a new name for this new card file.

10. Press **F10** to confirm your selection. You will see the screen, "**Save selected descendants – Step 5 of 5.**"
11. Family Tree Maker now gives you the option of permanently deleting these individuals from your original card file, or leaving this card file unchanged.

Choose "**No change**" to leave these descendants in your card file.

Choose "**Delete descendants**" to **permanently** delete these descendants from your card file.

Family Tree Maker brings you back to the Family Card you were working on when you began the **Save selected descendants** function. If you chose to delete that Family Card, a different Family Card will be shown.

To work with the new card file, press **F10** to display the Command Menu, then select **F – File** and finally **G – Get card file from disk** (see page 95 for more details).

JOIN CARD FILES

This function allows you to combine the entire contents of two card files into one new card file. You might want to do this if you have two card files that contain different branches of the same family.

Note: Family Tree Maker won't allow you to join two card files if the combined number of individuals exceeds the program's limit. In a system with 640Kb or more of available memory, the maximum is 2400 individuals.

When joining two card files, Family Tree Maker uses the same rules it uses for entering new individuals. This means that you can only join the card files at a place where an individual in one card file is the child, parent, or spouse of someone in the other card file. There are three joining methods to choose from (see Figure E-4 on page 269):

1. Join a parent in the first card file to a child in the second card file.
2. Join a child in the first card file to a parent in the second card file.
3. Join a person in the first card file to their spouse in the second card file.

There are a few things you should know before you join two card files:

- This function combines the ENTIRE CONTENTS of the two card files.
- It won't overlap information from one card file to the other, it simply joins the information. So if an individual is in both card files, that individual will appear in the new combined card file TWICE.
- The "child" in a parent/child joining (1 or 2 above) CANNOT have parents in the card file the "child" is already in. This is because an individual can't have two sets of parents in the combined card file.

You may want to edit the card files slightly before joining them. You may even want to use the **Save selected descendants** function to save just a portion of one card file before joining it with the other card file.

What follows is an example.

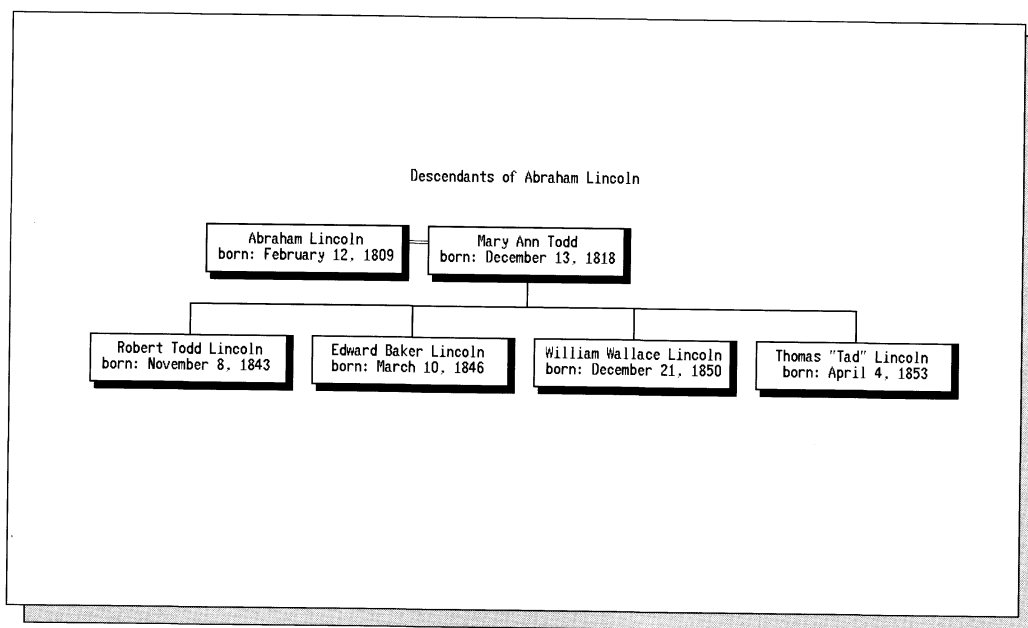


Figure E-1. Contents of the LINCOLNA.FTM card file

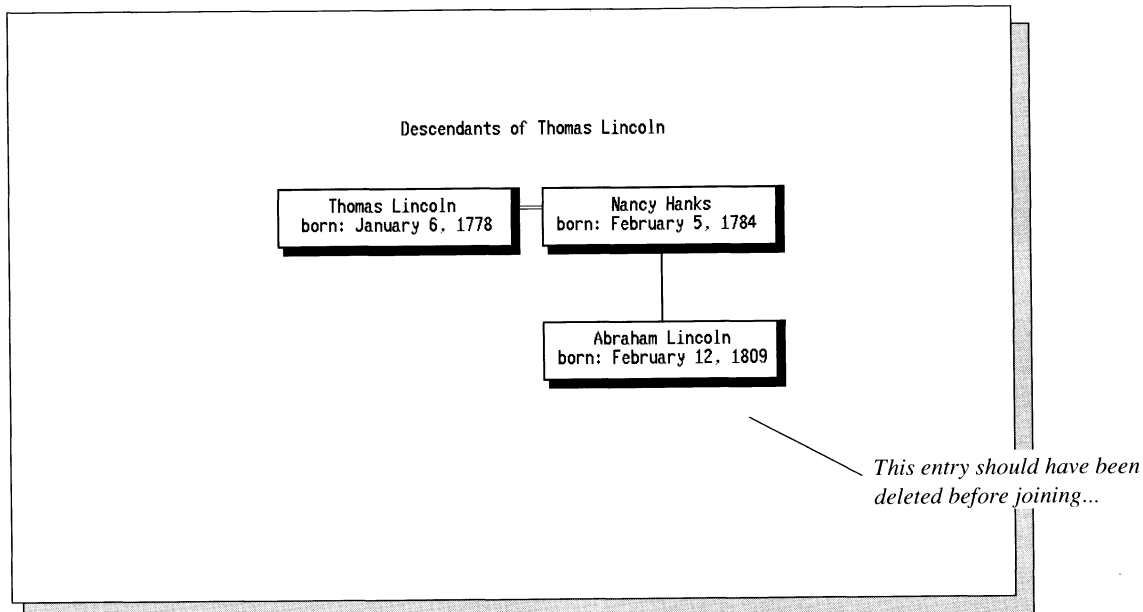


Figure E-2. Contents of the LINCOLNB.FTM card file

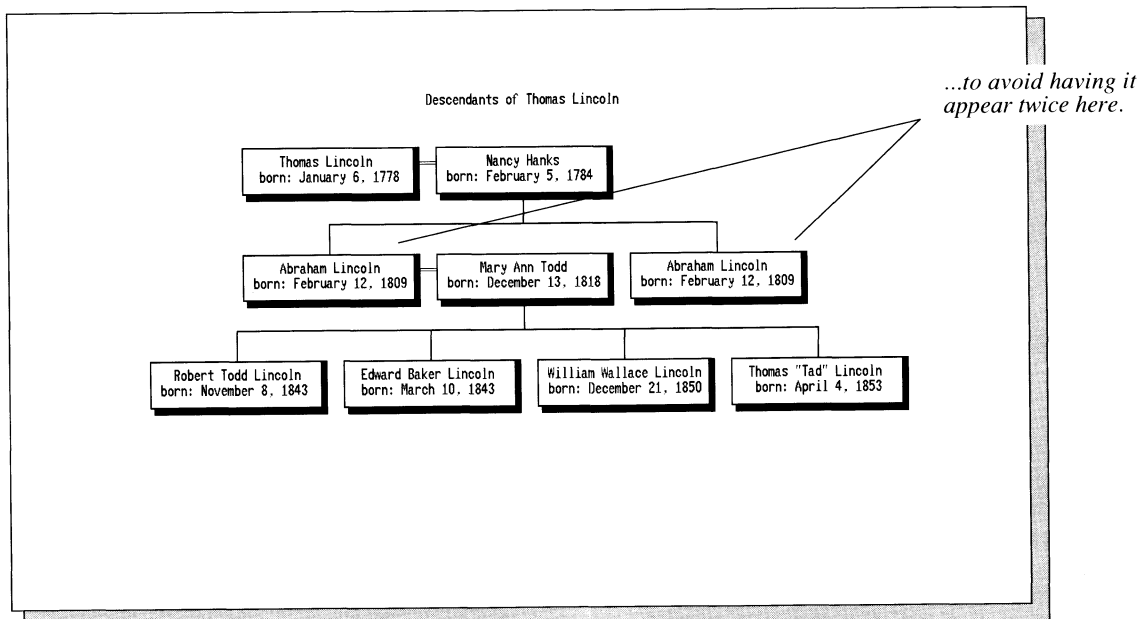


Figure E-3. Oops! Abraham appears twice in the combined card file

In the tutorial you created a card file that contained information about Abraham Lincoln and his family. Let's assume that instead of creating one card file, you really created two card files.

The first card file, LINCOLNA.FTM contains just the information on Abraham & Mary's Family Card (see Figure E-1 on page 265). And the second card file, LINCOLNB.FTM, contains just the information on Thomas & Nancy's Family Card (Abraham's parents). See Figure E-2 on page 266.

Note: Figures E-1 and E-2 are descendant trees showing the information from the Family Cards displayed in Figure 2-3 on page 32 and Figure 2-5 on page 37. To join the two card files, you make Abraham the child of Thomas and Nancy (using Join child in LINCOLNA.FTM to parent in LINCOLNB.FTM). See Figure E-4 on page 269.

But first, the entry for Abraham that is already on Thomas & Nancy's Family Card needs to be deleted (using the **Delete individual** command). If you don't, Abraham will be entered twice in the combined card file (see Figure E-3 on page 266). Remember, Family Tree Maker doesn't overlap the information, it just combines it.

In your own card files, it will be very obvious which two people you will use to join the card files and what their relationship is (husband and wife or parent and child). You must be careful that the two card files do not already duplicate each other (unless you are intentionally duplicating a branch).

Note: You might want to experiment with this function using sample card files (LINCOLN.FTM or small portions of your own card files). Make sure you understand what the results will be before using it on your real card files.

Now that you have an idea of what this function does, here briefly, are the steps (details follow):

1. Before you begin, make sure both card files have been saved to disk. You should also have backup copies of your cardfiles. See Appendix D for instructions on making backups.
2. Get one of the card files (so that it is displayed on your screen as the current card file).
3. Select the Join card files function, which steps you through:
 - Selecting the other card file
 - Selecting the method of joining the two card files
 - Selecting the individuals from each card file to be joined
4. Save the new combined card file under a new card file name.

If you change your mind at any point, press  to go back to the previous screen.

Saving The Original Card Files

Be sure to save both card files to disk before proceeding with this function (see page 92 for information on saving). The resulting combined card file will contain ALL of the information from the original two card files.

Note: If you want the combined card file to have the same name as one of your original card files, then save the original file under a different name before starting this function.

When you are done, you'll have three card files: the original two card files and the new combined card file, each with its own name.

Selecting One Of The Card Files To Be Joined

Before you can join two card files, you must have one of them displayed on the screen. If you are already working in one of them right now, skip to the section labeled "Selecting the Join Card Files Function."

If you just started Family Tree Maker, or if you are working in a completely different card file now, use the **Get card file from disk** function to get and display one of the card files:

1. From any Family Card, press **[FG]** to display the Command Menu.
2. Select **F – File**.
3. Select **G – Get card file from disk**.
4. Use **[↑]** and **[↓]** to highlight the name of one of the card files you want to join.
5. Press **[FG]** to confirm your selection.

Family Tree Maker now displays a Family Card in the card file you selected.

Selecting The Join Card Files Function

1. From any Family Card in the current card file, press **[FG]** to display the Command Menu.
2. Choose **F – File**, then **U – Utilities**.
3. From the Utilities Menu, select **J – Join card files**.

Family Tree Maker will display the screen labeled "**Join, Step 1 of 5 – Card File to Join with *file1.ftm***" (where *file1.ftm* is the name of your current card file).

Selecting The Second Card File To Be Joined

1. Use **↑** and **↓** to highlight the card file you want to join with the current card file.
2. Press **F10** to confirm your selection and to move to the next screen.

Family Tree Maker now displays “Join, Step 2 of 5 – Joining method.”

Selecting The Joining Method

The first two choices are for joining parents to children. The one you select determines which card file the child comes from and which card file the parents come from.

The third choice is for joining a person to his or her spouse.

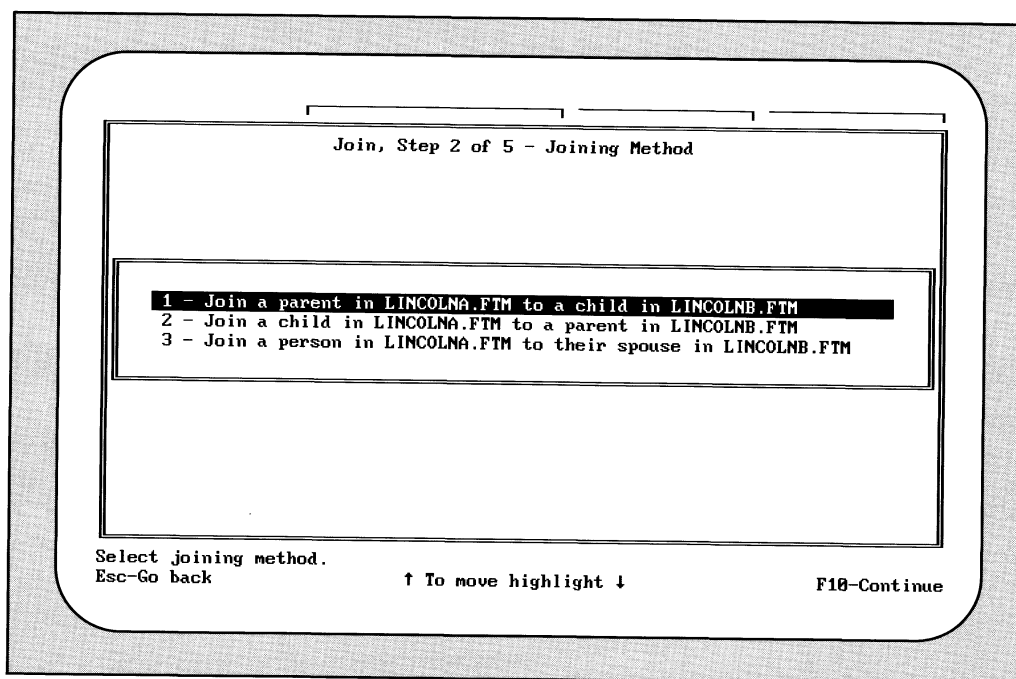


Figure E-4. Join, Step 2 of 5 – Joining method screen




1. Use **↑** and **↓** to highlight the method you would like to use to join the two card files.
2. Press **F10** to confirm your selection and to move to the next screen.

The next two steps differ slightly depending on the choice you just made. The joining spouses method is described in detail here (see choice 3 in Figure E-4). In this case, Family Tree Maker now displays “Join, Step 3 of 5 – Possible spouses in *file1.ftm*” (where *file1.ftm* is your current card file name). See the Special Note on page 270 for more information on the other two methods.

Selecting The Correct Individual From The Current Card File

Now that you've told Family Tree Maker that you want to join individuals in each card file as spouses, a list of all possible spouses in the current card file is displayed. All the individuals in this card file are possible spouses even if you've entered a spouse for them already.

Note: Be sure that the spouse you're going to join to in the second card file is NOT entered as their spouse already in the first card file. Family Tree Maker won't know that it's the same person in both card files, so they will be listed twice in the combined card file.

1. Use  and  to highlight the correct individual.
2. Press  to confirm your selection and to move to the next screen.

Family Tree Maker now displays “**Join, Step 4 of 5 – Possible spouses in *file2.ftm***” (where *file2.ftm* is your other card file).

Special Note

If you selected one of the parent/child joining methods, you'll notice the following differences from the joining spouses method:

- When you select the parents, you'll first be asked to select just one of the parents (either the man or the woman), then a special “Parents” window will be displayed asking you to confirm the exact set of parents.




In the case where the selected individual has two spouses, you'll be asked to select the correct set of parents from the ones displayed.

- When you select the child, Family Tree Maker will display a list of all the possible children. Only those individuals for whom you have not already entered parents will be displayed (see page 265 in this appendix for more information).

Figure E-5. Selecting the correct individual from the current card file

Selecting The Correct Individual From The Second Card File

Family Tree Maker now displays a list of all the possible spouses in the second card file. This list won't contain all the names in the second card file. It will just list those individuals who are the opposite sex of the individual you selected on the previous screen.

1. Use  and  to highlight the correct individual.
2. Press  to confirm your selection and to move to the next screen.


Family Tree Maker now displays “**Join, Step 5 of 5 – Confirmation.**”

Note: If you selected one of the parent/child joining methods, see the Special Note on page 270.

Confirming The Relationship and Joining The Files

A message is displayed asking you to confirm that the correct individuals are going to be joined. Select **Yes** if the individuals and their relationship are described correctly. Select **No** if they are not.

If you select **No**, Family Tree Maker takes you back to the Family Card that was displayed in the original card file before you started the **Join card files** function.

If you select **Yes**, Family Tree Maker completes the joining process and then displays a special message window. Press  to display the Family Card of the joined individuals.

You are now working on the new combined card file.

Note: We strongly recommend that you immediately save this new combined card file with a different card file name than either of the original card files.









U SING A MOUSE



In Family Tree Maker 3.0 you can use a mouse to do many of the things you previously had to do with the keyboard. You do not need a mouse to use Family Tree Maker, but many people find it easier to use than a keyboard.


Use a mouse to:

- Make menu selections
- Move the cursor from one field to another
- Move from screen to screen
- Scroll through a list such as the Index of names

A mouse can make Family Tree Maker much faster and easier to use. For example, to move your cursor into a field, just position the mouse pointer where you want the cursor and click the primary mouse button. This is much faster than using  (tab), , , , , or  to move around the screen.

You can also click anywhere you see key names, such as at the bottom of the screen. For example, click anywhere on **F3 – Other Spouses** to create or view other spouses. Or click **F1 – Help** to display help.

When using the Find individual command from a Family Card (see page 81) or from the Index of Names (see page 86) you can click  or  in the lower right hand corner of the screen to search for the previous or next match.

The secondary mouse button always displays the current menu. For example, from anywhere on the Family Card you can click the secondary button to quickly display the command menu. Similarly, you can display the Notes Menu from within Individual Card 4. Anytime you can press  to display a menu, you can click the secondary mouse button to display it more quickly.

The following figures show some of the different areas of the screen you can click, and what happens as a result. In some cases, you need to double-click (click the mouse button two times in rapid succession). There are many other areas you can click. Feel free to experiment.

Click here to display the parents' Family Cards.

Double-click any name to display that person's Individual Cards.

Single-click a child. Then click here to display the child's Family Card.

Click these arrows to scroll through the list of children.

Click any command, instead of pressing a key.

Elmer & Edna

F4 - Parents of Edna F5 - Parents of Elmer F2 - Index of names

Husband: Elmer Eugene Hess F3-Other spouses
 Date born: May 9, 1897 in Fort Wayne, Allen Co., IN
 died: January 24, 1986 in Jacksonville, FL

Wife: Edna Adina Boegli
 Date born: November 17, 1894 in Berne, Adams Co., IN
 died: September 6, 1981 in Jacksonville, FL

Marriage date: November 25, 1915 Status: M
 Marriage location: Fort Wayne, IN

Children [F6] - Family card of child	Sex	Birth dates
1 Richard Morton Hess	M	February 23, 1925
2 Gretchen Kathryn Hess	F	April 28, 1917
3 Eugene Elmer Hess	M	November 1, 1918
4 Donald Boegli Hess	M	February 16, 1920
5 Pauline Gwendolyn Hess	F	February 3, 1922

More children ↓ Card: 1 2 3 4 M S P

F9-Menu PgDn-Individ'l cards F3-Other spouses F7-Find individ'l F1-Help

Click here to display Index of Names.

Double-click any marriage field to display the Marriage Card.

Click "M" to go to the Marriage Card or "F" to print this Family Card. Or, single-click an individual. Then click number to go to his/her Individual Cards, or to go to his/her Source Card.

Figure F-1. Clicking on a Family Card

Click a name to highlight it. Or, double-click a name to select it.

Index of Names

Type name: _____ Date born: _____

Hess, Edna Belle	January 24, 1989
Hess, Elisabetha Catharina	August 28, 1828
Hess, Elmer Eugene	May 9, 1897
Hess, Eugene Elmer	November 1, 1918
Hess, Franklin Eduard	July 14, 1906
Hess, Franz Christoph	March 29, 1819
Hess, George Franklin	January 1, 1872
Hess, George Franklin	May 13, 1939
Hess, George Richard	January 6, 1908
Hess, George William	August 5, 1857
Hess, Gretchen Kathryn	April 28, 1917
Hess, Jeffrey Richard	August 12, 1955

PgUp PgDn

Elmer Eugene Died: January 24, 1986 1st Spouse: Olive
 Esc-Go back ↑ Scroll ↓ F3-Arrangement F7-Find individ'l F10-Continue

Click here to display the previous and next screen's worth of names.

Click the arrows to scroll up or down, one person at a time.

Click here to change the arrangement of the list.

Click here to find an individual on the list

Figure F-2. Clicking in the Index of Names



FIXING FILES WITH DUPLICATES OF THE SAME PERSON

In previous versions of Family Tree Maker, you may intentionally have created duplicate family cards for individuals who, through intermarriage or for other reasons, appear multiple times in a printed family tree.

In Version 3.0, you no longer need to duplicate information — Family Tree Maker can keep a single copy of the individual's information, and show that information wherever it needs to be repeated.

This appendix describes how you can combine duplicates you created with previous versions of Family Tree Maker. You are not required to combine duplicates; but doing so will free up room for other individuals and reduce data entry errors.

This appendix will be important to you if:

- You were previously using version 1.0 or 1.01 of Family Tree Maker, *and*
- You have intentionally entered the same person more than once in your card file because of intermarriages, *and*
- You want to have this person only listed once in the index of names.

Note: You will not be able to use this method to fix data entry errors. If you have incorrectly entered the same person in two places (but he or she only shows up once in the list of names), see “Correcting Relationship Mistakes” in Appendix D.

COMBINING DUPLICATE ENTRIES IN YOUR CARD FILE


Follow the steps presented in this section to combine duplicate information entered into a card file with versions **1.0** or **1.01** of Family Tree Maker.

1. Display any one of that person's Family Cards.

If you have trouble finding one, use the Find individual command (see page 81).

2. Position your cursor in the birth date field.

Note: The same birthdate must be entered on both of that person's Family Cards.

3. Press Tab .


At this point, Family Tree Maker will recognize that there are duplicate entries for this person in your card file, and it will ask you to verify that these entries are really the same person.

4. Select **Yes**.

This person will now only appear once in your card file, but he or she may print more than once in some trees. When this happens, there will be a number in brackets next to the person's name, indicating that their name is printed elsewhere in the tree (e.g., "Kenneth L. Hess [1]"). Every occurrence of that person will have the same number, so you can easily locate him or her.

WHAT TO DO IF FAMILY TREE MAKER DOESN'T RECOGNIZE A DUPLICATE ENTRY

If you're sure that a person is entered more than once in your file and you want to combine the two entries into one, but Family Tree Maker doesn't seem to be recognizing him or her, check this list:

1. Make sure that you aren't trying to correct a data entry error. This method can only be used if you intentionally entered duplicates in versions 1.0 or 1.01. If someone shows up on two different Family Cards, but is only listed once in the list of individuals, see "Correcting Relationship Mistakes" in Appendix D.
2. Make sure you're currently using Version 3.0 of Family Tree Maker. Check the Card File Status to find out: Press  from any Family Card, then choose **E – Edit card file**, and finally **S – Card file status**.
3. Go through the section above, "Combining Duplicate Entries In Your Card File."
4. Make sure the individual's name is spelled *identically* in both places. If it isn't, Family Tree Maker will not recognize that there are two entries for the same person.
5. Make sure the sex of both entries is the same.
6. Make sure there is a birth date for both entries, and that it is identical. If one entry says, "July 23, 1968" and the other says, "About July 23, 1968" Family Tree Maker will not recognize the two entries as the same person.
7. Make sure no more than one entry of the person has parents. It's okay for one entry to have parents, but if two or more entries of the same person have parents, Family Tree Maker will not allow you to combine the entries.
8. It's possible that you already told Family Tree Maker that these two names are not the same person, even though they are. To tell Family Tree Maker that they're the same, delete a letter in their name and retype it. Then, start from step 1 in the section above, "Combining Duplicate Entries In Your Card File."



TIME-SAVING TIPS

Here's a summary of the short-cuts and time-savers that you can use in Family Tree Maker.

Entering Information

- Let the Typing saver save you from typing common words and phrases over and over (see page 88).
- Use **Ctrl** + **F1** to insert information from the current field into the Typing saver instantly.
- Use "hot keys" to edit the Family Card (see page 57) and Individual Card 4 – Notes (see page 70).
- Press **Alt** + **F** to display the Card File Status to see how full or empty your card file is, and to check your printer settings.
- Press **Alt** + **S** to enter source information from the Family Card.
- If you're familiar with DOS, use the Copy command to make backups of your data. Consult your DOS manual. (If you're not familiar with DOS, but want to make backups, see page 251.)

Moving Around

- Go directly from the Family Card to any Individual Card by holding down **Alt** and pressing the number of that Individual Card (i.e., press **Alt** + **3** to go from the Family Card to Individual Card 3).
- Use the Find individual command to quickly find an individual's Family Card (see page 81).
- In the Index of Names, type the first letter of the last name you're looking for to go to that section of the alphabet immediately. Continue typing letters of the last name until you find the individual you're looking for.
- Use the Find individual command in the Index of Names (or any other list of names!) to find someone much faster than having to **PageUp** or **PageDn** many times.
- If you're using a mouse, click the icons in the lower right corner of the Family Card (see Appendix F, page 273).

Printing

- Print trees, Family Group Sheets, and virtually everything else faster by using a draft setting for your printer (see page 203).
- Hold down **Ctrl** and press **P** to print the Family Card or the Individual Cards.



IMPORTING ROOTS III FILES

Family Tree Maker can automatically import a Roots III file and convert it to a Family Tree Maker card file. You can import names, birth dates and locations, death dates and locations, marriage dates and locations, sex, and birth status. If you want to import more information, see Chapter 6 on the Data Exchange Utility. Once you have this information in Family Tree Maker, you can print trees that are not possible in Roots III.

To import your Roots III file into Family Tree Maker:

1. If you have made any changes to your card file, be sure to save it now. If you don't, all your changes will be lost when you import your Roots III file.
2. From any Family Card, press **F9** to display the Command Menu.
3. Choose **F – File**.
4. Choose **U – Utilities**.
5. Choose **R – Get Roots III file**.
6. Select your Roots III file and press **Enter**.

Your Roots III file is now imported into Family Tree Maker and is ready for printing.

Note: If you've used an underscore between names in Roots III, it will not appear in your Family Tree Maker card file. **DO NOT** type them back in. They will appear in your printed trees and the trees won't look as nice.


Important note about importing from Roots III: Family Tree Maker and Roots III do not always allow the same amount of data for a piece of information. For example, a name in Family Tree Maker can only be 48 characters long. In Roots III, a name can be longer. If there is a name in your Roots III file that is longer, Family Tree Maker will put the first 48 characters on the name field. So you do not lose information, all of that individual's information will also be placed into his/her Individual Card 4 – Notes. This way, you can decide which piece of the information is most important to you, and which piece you want to drop. Or you may decide to abbreviate something so it all fits.

To search for all individuals whose information was truncated:


1. From any Family Card, press **F7** to Find an individual.

Family Tree Maker now displays the “**Find Individual**” screen.

2. Press **F5** to change the item to search.
3. Highlight “**Notes**” and press **Enter**. (You'll need to press **Page Down** several times to get to “**Notes**.”)

-
4. Type **ROOTS III** and press .

Family Tree Maker now displays the Family Card of the first person whose information was truncated.

5. If you like, you can edit this Family Card. You can continue your search by pressing .



RESERVING PHOTOGRAPHS

For more than a century, people have enjoyed the ability to capture a special moment in time with a photograph. People enjoy seeing pictures of their parents and grandparents when they were young. Many take it for granted that their children and grandchildren will someday enjoy the pictures they take today.

However, you probably have experienced yellowing, cracking, and fading of some of your photographs. Still others are destroyed or simply lost. Although some photographs last for generations, none of them are immune to the effects of time. This appendix provides tips that can help you preserve your photographic treasures.

WHAT A PHOTOGRAPH IS MADE OF

Photographs are made up of several layers of materials. The top layer contains the image suspended in gelatin (purified animal protein). It is called the emulsion layer. This layer is coated on to a base layer of photographic paper or film. A middle layer of adhesive is used to make the emulsion stick to the base.

The materials used to form the image depend on the type of photograph. The image for black and white photographs is made up of light-sensitive silver salts (silver halides).

Color photographs and slides are made up of dyes instead of silver deposits. Like all dyes, those used in photography fade and/or change color over time. Since most of the photographs taken today are made in color, researchers continue to work on dye stability. With proper care you can expect your color prints to last for decades, but in general, they do not preserve as well as black and white images.

CAUSES OF DETERIORATION

Many factors can contribute to the deterioration of photographs. Since photos are made up of layers of material, damage to any one layer can ruin the image. Often, it is a combination of factors causing the damage. The following are some of the most destructive influences.

High temperature and relative humidity

These factors by themselves are damaging and together they are the most destructive factors that affect photographs. Temperatures above 70°F and relative humidity above 60% for long periods should be avoided. Daily, drastic temperature changes (such as occur in an attic) and continuously damp areas (such as basements) should also be avoided. At the other extreme, very low humidity, under 25%, is also damaging. It causes the emulsion layer to crack and the base material to curl.

Because the emulsion layer is composed of organic materials (the gelatin), heat and high humidity promote the growth of mold and fungi on it. The gelatin also softens and becomes sticky as it begins to retain moisture. Heat and humidity also make base materials deteriorate quickly. Cold temperatures (refrigeration) are preferable, especially for color photos, but only if humidity can also be controlled. Standard refrigerators have a high relative humidity and are NOT a good place to store photographs. Air-conditioning used with a dehumidifier helps control the effects of temperature and humidity when refrigeration is not an option.

Residual processing chemicals

Damaging chemicals can be left on photographs if they are not processed correctly. In black and white photographs, these chemicals are made up of sulfur and silver compounds which react with the silver of the image to turn it a yellowish brown color. Over time, the silver compounds can become silver sulfide which will not only discolor the photograph, but also fade the image. Residual chemicals also increase the effect of external influences such as heat and humidity. For these reasons it is important that you have your film developed by reputable professionals or, if you develop your own, that you follow processing procedures precisely as the manufacturer suggests.

Air pollutants

All kinds of airborne substances can be damaging to photographs. Those people living in cities with high pollution levels will find this especially true. Oxidizing gases containing sulfur compounds, paint and varnish fumes, cleaning agents (chlorine and ammonia), tobacco smoke, auto exhaust, salty sea air, and dust are some of the most troublesome pollutants. Photos should not be stored in areas where these pollutants are present. For example, avoid closets that also contain cleaning products and remove photos from rooms freshly painted with an oil based paint for at least a month (latex paint is safe).

Nitrate based film

This type of film base was common in the early 1900's. It is relatively unstable and decomposes rapidly. It is also flammable and in large quantities is considered a fire hazard. During decomposition it produces oxidizing gases such as nitric oxide and nitrogen dioxide. These by-products of decomposition also speed up the decomposition process and are damaging to other negatives and photographs that may be stored near them. If possible, have pictures on nitrate based film converted to newer, safer film. At the very least, store nitrate based film away from your other photographs.

Ultraviolet light

Direct sunlight and fluorescent light can be very damaging to the image on a photograph. This is particularly true of the dyes in color photos which will fade rapidly when exposed to light. For all types of photographs, it is best to avoid prolonged exposure to direct

sunlight and to use ultraviolet filters on fluorescent lights. Tungsten lights are much safer than fluorescent lights.

Mishandling

Much of the damage to photos comes from the way we handle them. Always try to avoid touching the emulsion surface. Some other obvious things to avoid are bending, cutting, or scratching photographs. Less obvious dangers are such common household items as ink, staples, paper clips, glue, and tape. These products all contain substances harmful to photographs. The next section (Proper Storage Methods and Materials) will list products safe to use with photographs.

Natural Disasters

There are a few things you can do to protect your photographs from flood, fire, and other natural disasters. Storing them up off the floor is relatively simple and can help tremendously in case of minor flooding. Storage in an enameled steel file cabinet can prevent photographs from being crushed and offers some safety from water and fire damage. You may want to consider a safe deposit box for extremely valuable photographs. It is also wise to give copies of special photographs to relatives to avoid having them all in one place in case of a disaster.

PROPER STORAGE METHODS AND MATERIALS

In addition to avoiding the conditions mentioned in the previous section, using specialized storage methods and materials helps prolong the life of photographs. The storage environment is very important. Heat, relative humidity, light, and air pollutants should be maintained as close to acceptable levels as possible. The two places photographs are most often stored, attics and basements, do not provide the best conditions.

When storing prints and negatives, a general rule is never store them in contact with one another. Prints and negatives can stick to each other. Also, any print with residual processing chemicals could affect the prints around it as it begins to decay. Each should be stored in a separate paper or plastic enclosure. If you have mounted prints, be sure to place a sheet of paper or plastic (interleaving sheets) between them during storage. The prints and negatives within their enclosures can be stored in acid-free storage boxes on a shelf or in enameled steel file cabinets.

If you prefer the convenience of a photograph album, take great care in choosing it. Ironically, many mass produced photograph albums are made from photo-damaging materials. Albums can be safe if made of proper materials.

On the next page is a list of do's and don'ts when choosing storage materials and locations. Also, the next section lists the names of two catalogs where you can order the proper materials. You should also be able to find these materials in photographic supply stores.

SOURCES OF SAFE STORAGE AND DISPLAY MATERIALS

Light Impressions, P.O. Box 940, Rochester, NY 14603-0940, (800) 828-6216

Archival Quality Materials, University Products Inc., P.O. Box 101, 517 Main Street, Holyoke, MA 01041, (800) 628-1912

ADDITIONAL PRESERVATION TECHNIQUES

Another method for preserving your photographs is to have copies made of them while they are still in good condition. It is also wise to display these copies instead of the originals.

For black and white photographs, toned prints tend to be more stable. The toning process changes the metallic silver of the image to a form that is more resistant to oxidizing gases. The toning is performed during the developing process and results in the photograph having a brownish or purplish tone to it. This process is not recommended for old prints.

For color prints, consider having black and white negatives and prints made since these tend to last longer. There is a method which produces black and white separation masters. These separate the different layers of color into a black and white format which can be recombined and colored at a later time if desired. However, this procedure is costly and difficult.

As you can see, there are several relatively simple things you can do to help your photographs last longer. By carefully choosing the mounting materials, storage materials, and storage location for your photographs, you can preserve memories for generations to enjoy.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Eastman Kodak Company. *Conservation of Photographs*. Rochester, NY, 1985.

Keefe, Laurence E., Jr. and Inch, Dennis. *The Life of a Photograph*. Boston: Butterworth Publishers, 1984.

The Polaroid Corporation. *Storing, Handling and Preserving Polaroid Photographs: A Guide*. 1983.

Weinstein, Robert A. and Booth, Larry. *Collection, Use and Care of Historical Photographs*. Nashville: American Association for State and Local History, 1977.



ACCESSORIES

The following accessories can be purchased using the order card at the front of this reference manual or by calling Banner Blue.

If you would like to be notified of any new programs, accessories, or services, please be sure that we have your current address. Send in your registration card or the handy change of address card located in the front of this manual.

BIOGRAPHY MAKER

This clever program makes it easy and fun to write biographies about your relatives or yourself. *Biography Maker* quickly and easily creates a customized list of writing ideas for each person you write about.

For example, if you are writing about someone who was a teen during the Roaring Twenties, *Biography Maker* gives you writing ideas that capture the spirit of those times. It reminds you of the invention of radio, the reign of Al Capone, Prohibition, and much more. With the research done for you, you can concentrate on the most important part of your biography: telling the story.

The program contains more than 5,500 writing ideas that fall into over 80 different topic categories. All the important personal topics of the typical human life are covered, such as Ancestry and Marriage. And there are hundreds of detailed writing ideas on the historical events that shaped people's lives, such as World War II and The Great Depression. A special, built-in word processor displays pertinent writing ideas on-screen while you write.

With customized writing ideas to guide you along while you write, you won't forget to include anything. Do an overview of a relative's whole life or just concentrate on some of the major events. It's up to you! *Biography Maker* is the perfect tool for helping you capture all those old family stories you want your grandchildren to enjoy. (See the last page of this manual for even more details about this extraordinary program.)

LASER FONTS DISKETTE

This diskette contains additional fonts for HP, Canon, and compatible laser printers. These sans serif fonts are smaller than those built into your printer, allowing more information to fit on a single page.

PARCHMENT PAPER

Banner Blue Software offers antique finish parchment paper you can use to print your trees. You can use the paper in tractor-feed printers or in laser printers. See the order card at the front of this manual for details.

OTHER PRODUCTS BY BANNER BLUE SOFTWARE

For more information on any of the following products or to order them, call Banner Blue at (510) 794-6850 or write Banner Blue Software, P.O. Box 7865, Fremont, CA 94537.

Uncle Sam's Budget Balancer

Uncle Sam's Budget Balancer makes it easy for ordinary citizens to try their hand at balancing the federal budget. Users can modify the President's current fiscal year budget with over 300 options researched and documented by the Congressional Budget Office. Options for spending and revenue changes are described, including the pros and cons of implementing each one. Print out your budget plan to discuss with others or send it to your congressperson or senator. The program also contains educational information on the budget process.

Banner Blue Movie Guide

This is the ultimate gift for video renters and movie buffs! *Banner Blue Move Guide* contains information on over 9,800 movies, including stars, directors, plot descriptions, and awards. Perform searches for movies starring your favorite actor, or search to see whether or not a comedy has ever won the Oscar for Best Film. Play the entertaining trivia game, or even print lists of movies you want to see. The *Banner Blue Movie Guide* makes an excellent gift for anyone who ever goes to the video store!

Brochure Maker

This Windows program provides a revolutionary new way to create professional-looking, low-cost, color brochures in just four quick and easy steps: 1) Choose a design; 2) Type in your text; 3) Send us your disk and photos; and 4) We professionally print your brochures in color and deliver them to you fast! Advertisers know that color attracts more readership, so with *Brochure Maker's* aggressive printing prices, you can't afford not to print in full color.

Org Plus

Org Plus automatically draws organization charts and tree diagrams. Also use it to generate reports such as phone lists or salary summaries directly from your charts. Available for DOS, Windows, and Mac, it's an indispensable tool for managers in all types of businesses. In fact, over 400 of the Fortune 500 companies use *Org Plus*!

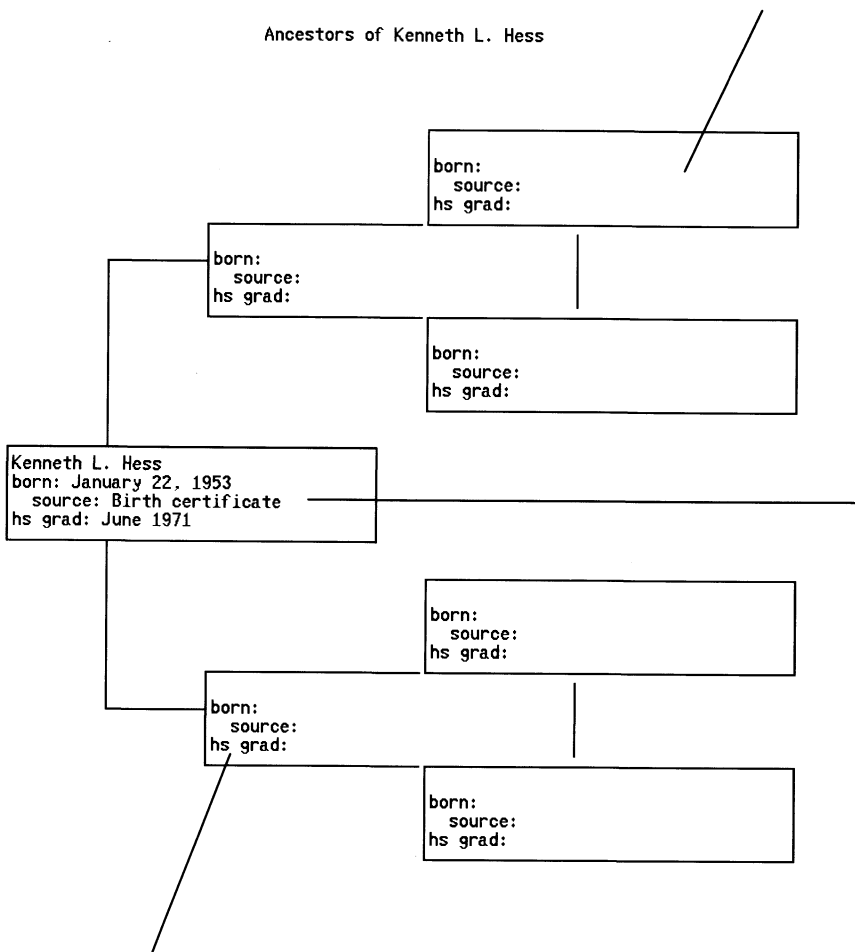


ICTURE INDEX

Look here if you know what you want, but don't know what to call it.

*To print empty branches,
see page 123.*

Ancestors of Kenneth L. Hess

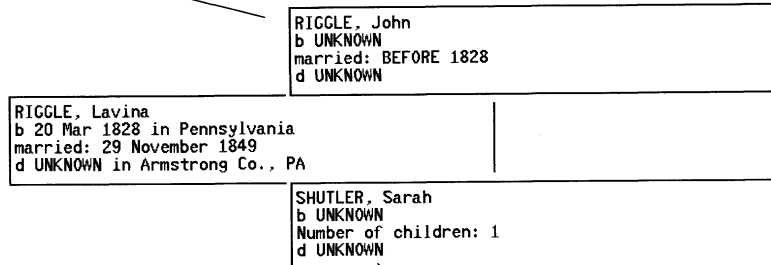


*To record sources for
your information, see
page 63.*

To change event field labels, see page 96.

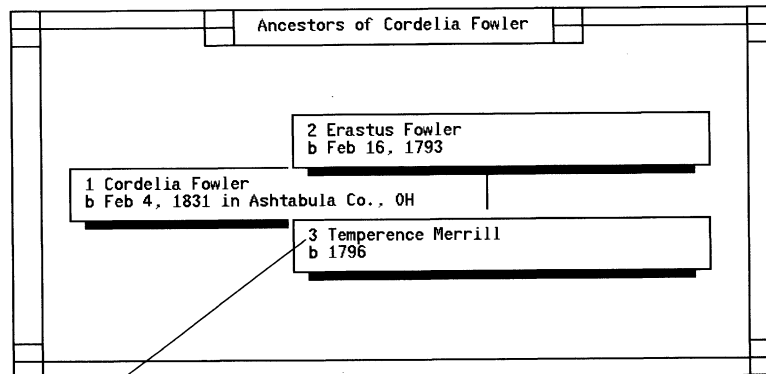
When you select to print the name you can choose to have Family Tree Maker print it in all caps and/or last name first. See page 120.

Ancestors of Lavina Riggle



Change date format to day-month-year. See page 96.

Unknown date of death distinguishes from people not yet dead. See page 58.



Standard (Ahnentafel) numbers. See page 122.



INDEX

- 3-hole punch
 - changing margins for, 245
 - 43/50 line preview mode, 245
- Abbreviated text
 - in ancestor trees, 123
 - in direct descendant trees, 151
 - in outline descendant trees, 164
 - in outline direct descendant trees, 177
 - in Custom reports, 196
 - See also* Selecting information to print
- Accessories, 287-288
 - antique finish parchment paper, 288
 - Biography Maker, 287
 - Laser Font Diskette, 287
- Adopted children
 - entering, 61, 65
- Age
 - printing in trees, 121, 137, 150, 162, 175
 - printing in Custom reports, 190
- Ahnentafel numbering, 122, 65
- Aligning Paragraphs
 - in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 76
- Alphabetizing
 - Index of Names, 86
 - List of Individuals, 182-183
- Ancestor trees
 - changing print settings of, 117-123
 - defined, 109
 - examples of, 5, 110, 115
 - photo tree, 125
 - previewing, 116-117
 - print command, 102
 - printing, 109-124
 - printing empty, 117
 - printing (in Tutorial), 49-51
 - printing spouse of primary individual, 121
 - sets of, 113
- Anniversaries
 - in calendars, 186
- Annulments
 - recording, 61
- ANSEL, 215
- ANSTFILE, 214, 215
- Antique finish parchment paper, 288
- Arrange children by birth, 97, 254-255
- Arranging information to print.
 - See* Selecting information to print
- ASCII
 - exporting Family Tree Maker files to, 216-219
 - exporting Notes from DEU, 218
 - importing into Individual Card 4 – Notes, 77-78
 - table, 256-257
- ASCII table
 - defined, 256-257
 - using, 256-257
- Attach child, 250
- Attach spouse, 250
- Aunts, 62
- Backup copy
 - making, 16-17, 251-252
 - retrieving, 252-253
- Baptism
 - entering, 64
- Batch printing, 198-203
 - index for, 202-203
- Baud rate
 - for large format plotters, 242
 - setting, 21
- Bibliography (Genealogy books), 233
- Biography Maker, 287
- Birth date
 - arranging by, 97, 254
 - changing format, 96
 - entering, 58
 - in calendars, 186
 - in List of Individuals, 182-183
 - in reports, 191
- Birth status, 65
- Blank cards, printing
 - Family Card, 56, 181
 - Individual Cards, 64, 182
- Blank rows
 - in ancestor & photo trees, 121, 127
 - in descendant trees, 137
 - in direct descendant trees, 150
 - in reports, 196
 - to make room for photos, 152
- Blood line, 65
- Book style page numbering, 202
- Border styles
 - in ancestor trees, 119
 - in Custom reports, 195
 - in descendant trees, 135
 - in direct descendant trees, 148
 - in outline descendant trees, 160
 - in outline direct descendant trees, 172-173
 - in photo trees, 127
- Box around footnotes
 - in ancestor & photo trees, 118
 - in descendant trees, 133-135
 - in direct descendant trees, 146-148
- Box styles
 - in ancestor trees, 119
 - in descendant trees, 135

-
- Box styles, *continued*
 in direct descendant trees, 148
 in photo trees, 127
- Box width. *See* Width
- Brother
 entering, 61-62
See also Siblings
- Burial, recording.
See Event fields
- Cable
 connecting to your printer, 21
 damaged, 259
- Calculating
 age statistics, 121, 137, 150, 162, 175
 Ahnentafel numbers, 122
- Calendars
 changing print settings of, 186-187
 example of, 7, 187
 printing, 187, 7
- Canon Laser Printer
 additional fonts, 287
- Card file
 creating new, 56, 96
 defined, 32, 55
 editing, 96-98
 getting, 95
 index of, 86
 joining, 264-271
 keeping all info in one, 253
 saving, 92-94, 25, 75-76, 268
 saving (in Tutorial), 35-36
 status, 99
- Card file status
 command, 99, 260
 using to check memory, 260
- Cards
 Family Card, 55-56, 32
 Individual Cards, 64-78
 Marriage Card, 78
 of Other spouses, 80-81
- Cause of death
 recording, 66
- Census Records, 227
See also Records
- Centering text
 in ancestor trees, 123
 in descendant trees, 138
 in direct descendant trees, 151
 in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 76
- Changing
 date format, 96
 field labels, 96
 program setup, 19-24
 sex of an individual, 61
See also Editing
- Character set
 ANSEL, 215
 international, 256-257
 using the ASCII table, 256-257
- Characters per inch (CPI)
 in ancestor trees, 123
 in Custom reports, 197
 in descendant trees, 139
 in direct descendant trees, 151
 in outline descendant trees, 165
 in outline direct descendant trees, 178
- Children
 adopted, 65, 61
 displaying Family Card of, 80
 entering, 61-62
 foster, 65, 61
 inserting in child list, 98
 listing in correct order, 97, 254
 moving in child list, 98
 rearranging, 97, 254
 step, 61
- Choosing
 info to print in ancestor trees, 120-123
 info to print in Custom reports, 190-192
 info to print in descendant trees, 137-139
 info to print in direct descendant trees, 150-152
 info to print in outline descendant trees, 162-165
 info to print in outline direct descendant trees, 175-178
 info to print in photo trees, 127
 number of generations: ancestor trees, 113
 number of generations: descendant trees, 129
 number of generations: outline descendant tree, 156
 number of generations: photo trees, 125
 paper size, *see* Paper
- Christening
 entering in Event fields, 64
- Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.
See LDS ordinance information
- Church records.
See Records
- Clipboard
 copying to, 73
 cutting to, 72
 defined (in Tutorial), 47
 pasting from, 72, 73, 74
- Color monitor
 text styles on, 76
- Colors. *See* Palette
See also Plotter pen
- Column labels
 printing, 118, 197
- COM ports
 selecting, 21
- Combining
 card files, 263-271
 duplicate individuals, 275-277

-
- Command Menu
 - defined, 94-105
 - figure of, 95
 - using (in Tutorial), 30-31
 - Command Menu: Edit card file, 97-99
 - Arrange children by birth, 97
 - Card file status, 99
 - Delete individual, 98
 - Insert child in child list, 98
 - Modify family structure, 99
 - Move child in child list, 98
 - Typing Saver, 99
 - Command Menu: File, 95-96
 - Change program setup, 96
 - Create new card file, 96
 - Get card file from disk, 95
 - Save card file to disk, 95
 - Utilities, 96
 - Command Menu: Options, 100-101
 - Kinship, 101
 - Line type, 100-101
 - Plotter pen, 101
 - Command Menu: Print List, 104-105
 - Batch print, 105
 - Calendar, 104
 - Family Group Sheet, 104
 - List of individuals, 104
 - Custom reports, 105
 - Command Menu: Print Tree, 102
 - Ancestor tree, 102
 - Descendant tree, 103
 - Direct descendant tree, 103
 - Outline descendant tree, 103
 - Outline direct descendant tree, 103
 - Photo tree, 102
 - Command Menu: Quit Family Tree Maker, 105
 - Comment fields
 - entering, 66
 - printing, *see* Selecting information to print
 - Compatible printers
 - setting up, 241
 - Computer system
 - telling Family Tree Maker about, 19-24
 - Computing age statistics
 - in calendars, 186
 - in trees, 121, 137, 150, 162, 175
 - Continuous Forms
 - using, 22
 - Copying. *See* Diskette
 - Copying text
 - in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 73
 - See also* Typing saver
 - Correcting relationship mistakes, 247-251
 - Cousins
 - entering, 62
 - intermarriage, 275
 - CPI. *See* Characters per inch
 - Create new card file, 56, 25, 96, 31
 - Creating
 - additional spouses, 80-81
 - new card file, 56, 25, 96
 - Cursor Movement, 57, 70
 - Custom reports
 - printing, 188-197
 - Customer registration, 10
 - Customer support. *See* Product support
 - Cut sheet feeder
 - using, 244
 - Data bits, 21, 259
 - Data Exchange Utility (DEU), 207-220
 - ANSEL, 215
 - ANSTFILE, 214, 215
 - export to ASCII, 216-220
 - export to GEDCOM, 213-215
 - exporting Notes from, 218-219
 - import from GEDCOM, 209-212
 - installing, 15-18
 - medical fields, 215
 - NPS, 215
 - program setup, 207-209
 - sample GEDCOM Notes, 211
 - starting, 208
 - submitter information, 214
 - tags, 210, 213
 - view file, 220
 - Date field(s), 58-60
 - recording sources, 63
 - Date format, 58-60, 96, 229
 - Date(s)
 - different formats, 58-60, 96, 229
 - double, 58-60, 96, 229
 - entering, 58-60
 - estimated, 59, 254
 - printing two years, 60, 229
 - selecting printing format, 120, 137, 150, 162, 175
 - uncertain, 59
 - Defining
 - ancestor tree, 4, 109
 - batch printing, 198
 - calendars, 186
 - card file, 55-56
 - Command Menu, 94
 - Custom reports, 188
 - descendant tree, 4, 126
 - direct descendant tree, 4, 142
 - Family Card, 32, 55
 - outline descendant tree, 153
 - outline direct descendant tree, 167
 - page size, 22
 - pedigree tree, 4, 109
 - photo tree, 4, 125
 - Deleting
 - branches, 263-264
 - card file, 96
 - individuals, 98, 247-248
-

-
-
- Deleting, *continued*
 individuals with children, 263-264
 information, 57, 71
- Descendant tree styles, 139-140
- Descendant trees
 changing print settings of, 133-141
 defined, 4, 126
 direct, 142-152
 examples of, 5, 128, 131
 previewing, 126
 print command, 103
 printing, 128
 selecting orientation for, 138
 sets of, 131
 styles of, 140
- Detach child, 248
- Detach spouse, 249
- Direct descendant trees
 changing print settings of, 146-152
 defined, 4, 142
 example of, 143
 previewing, 146
 print command, 103
 printing, 142-152
 selecting orientation for, 151
- Disease(s)
 recording, 66-67
 outdated terminology, 231
- Disk. *See* Hard disk
- Diskette
 making a backup to, 251-252
 write protecting, 15
- Diskette Drives
 installing Family Tree Maker on, 17-18
 saving card files to, 25
- Display
 choosing colors for, 23
 text styles on, 75-76
- Displaying
 a different family card, 78-87
 children in correct order, 254
 marriages in correct order, 254
 other spouses, 80-81
- Divorces
 recording, 61, 78
- Document style page numbering, 203
- DOS
 file name format, 92
- Dotted line(s), 100
- Double date
 changing cutoff, 96
 defined, 229, 60
 entering, 60
 example of, 229
- Draft printing, 203
- Drive for saving files, 22
- Drive (or directory)
 changing, 22, 94
 defined, 22
- “entered incorrectly” message, 260
- Duplicate individuals
 removing from card file, 275-277
- Edit card file (the command), 97-99
 Arrange children by birth, 97
 Card file status, 99
 Delete individual, 98
 Insert child in child list, 98
 Modify family structure, 99
 Move child in child list, 98
 Typing saver, 99
- Editing
 card file, 97-99
 fields, 57
 in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 71-74
 See also Changing
- EGA (Enhanced Graphics Adaptor)
 defined, 245
 using, 245
- Emphasizing text, 75-76
- Empty branches
 in ancestor trees, 123
- Empty, printing
 ancestor tree, 117
 Family Card, 56
 Family Group Sheet, 185
 Individual Card, 64
- Emulation. *See* Printer
- Entering
 comments, 66
 dates, 58-60
 double dates, 60
 estimated dates, 59
 events, 64, 65
 extra information, 68
 information about children, 61-62
 information about other relatives, 62
 into Family Card (in Tutorial), 32-35
 into Individual Cards (in Tutorial), 42-45
 last names with suffixes, 58
 locations, 60
 marriage information, 61
 medical information, 66-67
 missing last names, 58
 names, 58
 nicknames, 58
 Notes, 68
 personal information, 66-68
 stories, 68
 unusual last names, 58
- Erasing
 card file, 96
 See also Deleting
- Error messages, 260-261

-
-
- Ethnic group/Religion field.
 See Individual Card 2
- Event fields
 entering, 64-65
 printing, *see* Selecting information to print
- Ex-husband
 status field, 61
 See also Other: spouses
- Exiting
 from Family Tree Maker (Quit), 105
 from Individual Cards, 64
- Exporting
 Notes, 218-219
 to ASCII, 216-219
 to GEDCOM, 213-215
- Ex-wife
 status field, 61
 See also Other: spouses
- Family Card
 defined, 55
 displaying a different, 78-87
 entering information, 56-57
 example of, 30
 finding, 81-84
 printing, 56, 181
 printing blank, 181
 printing several at once, *see* Batch printing
 searching for, 81-84
 “src” printing on, 181
 using a mouse with, 273-274
- Family Group Sheet
 defined, 181, 184
 example of, 7
 print command, 102
 printing, 184-185
 printing empty, 185
 printing several at once, *see* Batch printing
- Family tree
 creating new, 29, 30-31, 96
- Father. *See* Parents
- Female. *See* Sex
- Field label(s)
 changing, 96
 defined, 56
 in ancestor trees, 123
 in Batch printing, 198
 in descendant trees, 138
 in direct descendant trees, 151
 in Family Group Sheet, 184
 in outline descendant trees, 155
 in outline direct descendant trees, 167
- Field(s)
 abbreviated when printed, 66
 children, 57, 61
 comment, 66
 date, 58, 56
 defined, 56
 drive (or directory), 94
 editing, 57
 event, 65
 husband, 61
 labels, 56, 96
 location, 60
 marriage, 61
 name, 58
 reference number, 65
 sex, 61
 status (marriage), 61
 wife, 57
- Fields, printing.
 See Selecting information to print
- File (the command)
 Change program setup, 96
 Create new card file, 96
 Get card file from disk, 95
 Save card file to disk, 95
 Utilities, 96
- Filename
 format, 92
- Filing
 genealogical data, 225
 location, 225
 order, 225
- Find individual
 command, 81-85
 finding primary individuals, 111, 125, 129, 144, 155, 16
 in the Index of Names, 86
- Fonts
 additional laser printer fonts, 287
- Footnote. *See* Title and footnote
- Foreign letters
 inserting, 256-257
- Formatting
 dates, 96
 field labels, 96
 names, 58, 120, 137, 150, 162, 175
- Formatting information to print.
 See Information to print
- Forms
 continuous, 22
- Foster children
 entering, 61, 65
 in printed trees, 65
- FTM command, 16, 18
- FTM file extension, 92
- Garbage printing, 259
- GEDCOM
 exporting files using the DEU, 213
 importing files using the DEU, 209
 LDS church standard, 207
- Genealogical Information Sources.
 See Records

- Generations, number of
 - in ancestor trees, 113-115
 - in descendant trees, 129
 - in outline descendant trees, 156
 - in photo trees, 125
- Get card file from disk, 95
- Get Roots III file, 96, 281-282
 - See also* Roots III
- Getting
 - card files, 95
 - help (on screen), 55
- Grandchildren. *See* Parents' Family Card
- Grandparents. *See* Parents' Family Card
- Graphics characters
 - printers that don't print, 241
- Great aunts
 - entering, 62
- Great grandparents. *See* Parents' Family Card
- Great uncles
 - entering, 62
- Hard disk
 - installing Family Tree Maker on, 15-16
 - saving files to, 22
- Help
 - on-screen, 55
- HP LaserJet
 - additional laser printer fonts, 287
- HP plotters, 21, 22, 242-244
- HPGL (Hewlett Packard Graphics Language)
 - plotters that use, 242-244
- Husband field
 - entering information into, 57
- Importing
 - ASCII text files, 77-78
 - from GEDCOM, 209-212
 - from PAF, 209
 - from Roots III, 281-282, 209
 - text into Individual Card 4 – Notes, 77
- Incorrect
 - child, 247-251
 - documents, 230
 - drive (or directory) message, 260
 - marriage shown as first, 254
 - spouse, 247-251
- Index, 202-203
 - See also* Batch printing
- Index of Names
 - defined, 86
 - example of, 41, 86
 - sorting, 86
 - using (in Tutorial), 40
 - using a mouse with, 273
 - using Find individual with, 87
- Individual Card 1, 64-65
 - Birth date/location field, 64
 - Birth status field, 65
 - Death date/location field, 64
 - Event date/location field, 65
 - Reference number field, 65
 - Sex field, 64
- Individual Card 2, 66
 - Comment fields, 66
 - Ethnic group/Religion field, 66
 - Occupation field, 66
 - Personality/Interests field, 66
 - Place of residence field, 66
- Individual Card 3, 66-67
 - Adult height field, 67
 - Adult weight field, 67
 - Cause of death field, 67
 - Medical information fields, 67
- Individual Card 4 – Notes, 68-78
 - aligning paragraphs in, 76
 - centering text in, 76
 - changing text styles in, 75
 - copying text in, 73
 - cutting text in, 72
 - editing text in, 71
 - emphasizing text in, 75
 - example of, 68
 - exporting to ASCII, 218-219
 - importing text from another program into, 77-78
 - moving around in, 70
 - moving text in, 73
 - pasting text into, 72
 - printing, 77, 182
 - printing (in Tutorial), 49
 - rearranging text in, 72
 - saving, 76
 - text styles in, 75
 - tutorial for, 44-49
 - undeleting text in, 71
 - what you can do in, 68
- Individual Cards
 - defined, 64, 181
 - entering information (in Tutorial), 42-48
 - examples of, 65-68
 - printing, 64, 181-182
 - printing blank, 64, 182
 - See also* Batch printing
- Individual(s)
 - deleting, 98
- Information
 - avoiding the loss of, 251-253
 - backing up your, 251-252
 - combining duplicate, 275-277
- Information to print
 - in ancestor and photo trees, 120
 - in calendars, 186-187
 - in descendant trees, 137
 - in direct descendant trees, 143-146
 - in outline descendant trees, 155-158

-
-
- Information to print, *continued*
in outline direct descendant trees, 167-168
in photo trees, 125
- Inserting
child in child list, 98
text, 57, 71
- Installing
Data Exchange Utility, 15-18
Family Tree Maker, 15-18
printers, 20-22, 241-245
- Intermarriage
fixing duplicates because of, 275
- International character set, 256-257
- International characters
on HP printers, 244
on IBM printers, 244, 256-257
- Item names. *See* Information to print
- Items to print. *See* Information to print
- Join card files, 264-271
- Justifying text
in ancestor trees, 123
in descendant trees, 138
in direct descendant trees, 151
in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 76
- Kinship, 65, 90-91, 101
- Labels
field, 56, 96
- Land Records, 226
See also Records
- Large format plotters
setting up, 242-244
- Laser fonts diskette, 287
- Laser printers
additional fonts for, 287
- Last name
entering, 58
- LDS
choosing format, 23
GEDCOM standards, 207
ordination information, 239-240
- Leader dots
in outline descendant trees, 160
in outline direct descendant trees, 173
- Length of paper, 244
- Libraries, 225-226, 234-238
- Line across box
in ancestor and photo trees, 121
in descendant trees, 137
in direct descendant trees, 150
- Line type, 100-101
- Lines
printers that use dashes, 241
- Lines per inch
in ancestor trees, 123
in descendant trees, 139
in direct descendant trees, 151
- List of Individuals
defined, 181
example of, 7
print command, 104
printing, 182-183
sorting, 182-183
- Loading. *See* Installing
- Local records, 226
- Location fields
defined, 60
- Location names and boundary changes, 230
- LPT1, 21
- Maiden names
when to use, 58
- Making backup copies of your card file, 251-252
- Male. *See* Sex
- Manufacturer of printer. *See* Printer
- Margins
changing, 245
- Marriage
Card, 78
fields, 61
intermarriage (between cousins), 275
listing in order, 254
multiple, 79, 80-81
other spouses, 79, 80-81
- Married name
printing on calendar, 186
- Medical information
exporting from DEU, 215
printing, 120, 137, 150, 162, 175, 181, 184, 190
recording, 66-67
- Medical terminology
outdated, 231
- Memory available
display of, 99
error message, 260
- Messages
error, 260-261
- Military Records, 227
See also Records
- Mistakes
data entry, 62
relationship, 247-251
See also Troubleshooting
- Model of printer. *See* Printer
- Modify family structure (the command), 99, 248-251
Attach child, 99, 250
Attach spouse, 99, 250-251
Detach child, 99, 248-249
Detach spouse, 99, 249
- Monitor. *See* Display
- Mother. *See* Parents

-
-
- Mouse
- primary button, 23, 273
 - secondary button, 23, 273
 - setup, 23-24
 - speed, 24
 - using, 273-274
- Moving
- around in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 70
 - around Preview screen, 116, 126, 133, 146, 158, 171, 193
 - between fields, 57
 - between Family Cards, 78-87
 - child in child list, 98
 - cursor, 57
 - paragraphs (in Tutorial), 46-47
 - text in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 72-74
 - two adjacent children, 98, 254-255
 - See also* Correcting relationship mistakes
- Multiple page trees
- ancestor trees, 111-113, 122
- Name(s)
- entering, 58
 - searching for, *see* Find individual
 - selecting format, 120, 137, 150, 162, 175, 186, 191
- National Archives
- list of branches, 227
- National Genealogical Sources, 227
- National Records, 227
- See also* Records
- Natural children
- entering, 65
- Note-taking, 223-224
- Notes. *See* Individual Card 4 – Notes
- NPS, 215
- Nuclear family
- defined, 55, 181
 - entering information for, 56-62
- Numbers
- Ahnentafel, 122, 65
 - generation, 160, 173
 - page, *see* Page numbering
 - reference, 65
 - standard, 64, 122
- Options (the command), 100-101
- Kinship, 101
 - Line type, 100-101
 - Plotter pen, 101
- Order of children
- arranging, 97-98, 254-255
- Order of multiple marriages
- arranging, 254
- Other
- relatives, 62
 - spouses, 79, 80-81
- Outdated Medical Terminology, 231
- Outline descendant trees
- defined, 4, 153
 - example of, 6, 154
 - previewing, 158
 - print command, 103
 - printing, 153-166
- Outline direct descendant trees
- defined, 4, 167
 - example of, 6
 - previewing, 171
 - print command, 103
 - printing, 167-178
- Overwrite file message
- explained, 93
- Page
- defining, 22
 - size, 22
- Page numbering
- book style, 202
 - document style, 203
 - in batch printing, 202-203
 - in Custom reports, 194
 - in Family Cards, 181
 - in Family Group Sheets, 184
 - in Individual Cards, 182
 - in outline descendant tree, 158-160
 - in outline direct descendant tree, 171-172
- Palette
- selecting screen color, 23
 - selecting screen color for DEU, 209
- Paper
- reversing dimensions, 244
 - selecting size, 22
- Parallel printer port
- selecting, 21
- Parchment paper, 288
- Parents
- biological, 61, 65, 79
 - foster, 65, 61
- Parents' Family Card
- entering information (in Tutorial), 37
 - how to get to, 79-80, 273-274
- Parity, 21
- Pedigree tree
- defined, 4
 - See also* Ancestor trees: defined
- Personal information, printing
- See* Selecting information to print
- Phone numbers
- technical support fax, 11
 - technical support phone, 10, 11
- Photo trees
- changing print settings of, 127
 - defined, 4, 109
 - descendant style, 152
 - example of, 5
 - previewing, 126

-
- Photo trees, *continued*
 print command, 102
 printing, 125-127
- Photographs
 bibliography, 286
 causes of deterioration, 283-285
 preserving, 283-286
 storage methods and materials, 285
- Physical information
 recording, 66
- Pictures. *See* Photo trees,
- Places. *See* Location field(s)
- Plain vanilla printer settings, 241
- Plotter
 large format, 242-244
 “not responding” message, 260
 pen, 101
 setting up, 19-21
- Plotter pen
 changing, 101
- Ports, selecting
 parallel (LPT), 21
 serial (COM), 21
- Preferences (Program Setup)
 selecting, 22-24
- Preserving Photographs, 283
- Previewing
 ancestor trees, 116-117
 Custom reports, 193
 descendant trees, 133
 direct descendant trees, 146
 Family Group Sheet, 185
 List of Individuals, 183
 outline descendant trees, 158
 outline direct descendant trees, 171
 photo trees, 126
 problems, 245
 setting preview mode, 245
- Primary individual
 selecting for ancestor tree, 111
 selecting for descendant tree, 129
 selecting for direct descendant tree, 144
 selecting for outline descendant tree, 155
 selecting for outline direct descendant tree, 168
 selecting for photo tree, 127
- Primary mouse button, 23
- Print list (the command), 104-105
 Batch print, 105
 Calendar, 104
 Custom report, 105
 Family Group Sheet, 104
 List of individuals, 104
- Print settings, changing
 in ancestor tree, 117-123
 in batch print, 202-203
 in calendars, 186-187
 in Custom reports, 194-196
 in descendant tree, 133-139
 in direct descendant tree, 146-152
 in outline descendant tree, 158-165
 in outline direct descendant tree, 171-178
 in photo tree, 127
- Print tree (the command), 102-103
 ancestor tree, 102
 descendant tree, 103
 direct descendant tree, 103
 outline descendant tree, 103
 outline direct descendant tree, 103
 photo tree, 102
- Printer
 changing selection, 19-21
 “not responding” message, 260
 resetting, 244
 selecting draft print mode, 203
 selecting manufacturer of, 20
 selecting model of, 20
 setting up, 19-21
- Printer selected
 display of, 99
- Printing
 adopted children, 65
 Ahnentafel numbers, 122
 ancestor trees, 109-124
 batches, 198-203
 blank Family card, 56, 181
 blank Individual cards, 64, 182
 calendars, 186-187
 children in correct order, 254
 column labels, 118, 197
 complete Family Group Sheet, 184
 Custom reports, 188-197
 descendant trees, 128-141
 descendant trees with photos, 152
 direct descendant trees, 142-151
 draft mode, 203
 empty ancestor trees, 117
 empty branches, 123
 empty Family Group Sheet, 185
 Family Card, 55, 181
 Family Group Sheet, 184-185
 faster, 203
 foster children, 65
 general List of Individuals, 182
 in Tutorial, 49-51
 index with Batch printing, 202-203
 Individual Card 4 – Notes, 64, 77, 182
 Individual Cards, 64, 181-182
 labels of empty fields, 123, 138, 151
 List of Individuals, 182-183
 many items at a time, 198
 marriages in correct order, 254
 Notes, 77
 outline descendant trees, 153-166
 outline direct descendant trees, 167-178
 partial Family Group Sheet, 185
 photo trees, 125-127

-
-
- Printing, *continued*
 problems with, 257-259
 row labels, 135
 specific List of Individuals, 183
 Standard numbers, 122
Printing empty branches
 in ancestor trees, 123
Printing several documents at a time.
 See Batch printing
Probate Records, 226
 See also Records
Product support
 how to get, 10
Progenitor, 128
Program setup
 Data Exchange Utility, 207-209
 Family Tree Maker, 19-24

Quit Family Tree Maker
 menu command, 105

RAM. *See* Memory
Rearranging
 order of children, 97-98, 254-255
 order of marriages, 254
 See also Sorting
Recording sources, 63
Records
 Cemetery, 228
 Census, 227
 Church, 228
 Land, 226, 227
 Local, 226
 Military, 227
 National, 227
 Probate, 226
 Vital, 226, 228
Reference number
 field, 65
Relationships
 identifying, 90-91
Removing. *See* Deleting
Reorganizing. *See* Sorting
Reports.
 See Custom reports
Requesting Information, 228-229
Requirements
 system, 8
Research
 sources, 225-228
 tips for, 229-230
Reset printer, 244
Retrieving backups, 252
Retrieving card files, 95
Roots III
 importing files from, 281-282, 212, 215, 96
 See also Data Exchange Utility

Save selected descendants
 explained, 263-264
 menu command, 96
Saving
 a branch, *see* Save selected descendants
 card file (in Tutorial), 35
 card file to disk, 25, 92-94
 in a single card file, 25, 253
 Individual Card 4 – Notes, 76-77
 Notes, 76-77
 your information, 25, 92-94
Saving card files
 choosing a drive (or directory) for, 94
 to disk, 25, 92-94
Screen. *See* Display
Searching
 for names, 81
 for other items, 83
 for primary individuals, 111, 125, 129, 144, 155, 169
 in Index of Names, 86
Secondary mouse button, 23, 273
Selecting
 from the Command Menu, 94-105
Selecting information to print
 in ancestor trees, 120-122
 in batch printing, 198-199
 in calendar, 186-187
 in Custom reports, 190-192
 in descendant trees, 137
 in direct descendant trees, 150
 in outline descendant trees, 162-163
 in outline direct descendant trees, 175
 in photo trees, 127
Selecting text, 72-74
Selecting the primary individual
 in ancestor trees, 111
 in descendant trees, 129
 in direct descendant trees, 144
 in outline descendant trees, 155
 in outline direct descendant trees, 168-169
 in photo trees, 125
Separations
 recording, 61
Serial. *See* Ports
Sets of trees
 ancestor trees, 113, 115
 descendant trees, 129, 131
Setting up
 Data Exchange Utility (DEU), 207-209
 Family Tree Maker, 19-24
 large format plotters, 242-244
 printers, 20-22, 241-245
Sex
 changing, 61
 recording, 61
Shrinking your tree
 ancestor tree, 124
 descendant tree, 141

-
- Siblings
 - defined, 80
 - Family Card of, 80
 - Single page trees
 - ancestor trees, 111-113
 - set of, 113, 115, 129, 131
 - Single sheet paper
 - using, 22
 - Sister
 - entering, 61
 - See also* Siblings
 - Size
 - defining paper, 22
 - See also* Tree size
 - Solid line, 100-101
 - Sorting
 - children, 97-98, 254-255
 - in Custom reports, 191
 - Index of Names, 86
 - List of Individuals, 183
 - marriages, 254
 - Sources
 - for date fields, 63
 - for event fields, 63
 - for location fields, 63
 - genealogical information, 225-228
 - Special setup, 244-245
 - Spouses
 - creating multiple (in Tutorial), 38-40
 - more than one, 80-81
 - “src”
 - printing on Family Cards, 181
 - Standard numbers (Ahnentafel), 64, 122
 - See also* Selecting information to print
 - Starting Family Tree Maker
 - hard disk system, 16
 - two-diskette drive system, 17-18
 - State Genealogical Sources, 234-238
 - Statistics
 - in calendars, 186
 - printing in trees, 121, 137, 150, 162, 175
 - Status field, 61
 - Status of card file, 99
 - Stepchildren
 - entering, 61
 - Stepparents. *See* Creating: additional spouses
 - Stop bits, 21, 243
 - Subdirectory
 - saving files to, 22, 94
 - See also* Drive (or directory)
 - Surname. *See* Last name
 - Switches
 - setting plotter, 21, 243
 - System requirements, 8

 - Technical support
 - how to get, 10

 - Text. *See* Individual Card 4 – Notes
 - Text justification
 - in ancestor trees, 122-123
 - in descendant trees, 138
 - in direct descendant trees, 151
 - in Individual Card 4 – Notes, 76
 - Text printing out of boxes, 257
 - Text styles
 - bold, 75-76
 - changing, 75-76
 - displaying, 75-76
 - entering, 75-76
 - italics, 75-76
 - normal, 75-76
 - underline, 75-76
 - Three-hole punch
 - changing margins for, 245
 - Title and footnote
 - in ancestor trees, 118
 - in Custom reports, 194
 - in descendant trees, 133-135
 - in direct descendant trees, 146-148
 - in outline descendant trees, 158-160
 - in outline direct descendant trees, 171-172
 - in photo trees, 127
 - Transferring data
 - in ASCII format, 77
 - into Individual Card 4 – Notes, 77
 - See also* Data Exchange Utility
 - Tree size
 - controlling for ancestor tree, 111-113, 124
 - controlling for descendant trees, 141
 - controlling for outline descendant trees, 166
 - Triplets. *See* Arrange children by birth
 - Troubleshooting, 247-261
 - Tutorial, 29-51
 - Twins. *See* Arrange children by birth
 - Two-diskette drive system
 - installing Family Tree Maker on, 17-18
 - saving files on, 22
 - Types of forms, 224
 - Types of trees, 4
 - Typing Saver, 88-90

 - Uncertain
 - dates, 59, 254
 - Uncles
 - entering, 62
 - Unknown. *See* Uncertain
 - Upgrade plan, 11
 - Using
 - a mouse, 273-274
 - Index of Names (in Tutorial), 40-41
 - Utilities (the command), 96
 - Change date format, 96
 - Change field labels, 96
 - Erase card file, 96

Utilities (the command), *continued*

Get Roots III file, 96, 281-282

Join card files, 96, 264-271

Save selected descendants, 96, 263-264

Version number

displaying, 99

VGA (Video Graphics Adaptor)

defined, 245

using, 245

Vital Records

finding, 226, 228

See also Records

Width

of boxes in ancestor trees, 123

of boxes in descendant trees, 138

of boxes in direct descendant trees, 151

Wife field

entering information into, 58

Word Processor. *See* Individual Card 4 – Notes

Wrapping

text in outline descendant trees, 165

text in outline direct descendant trees, 177

tree is, 258

BIOGRAPHY MAKER™

Now writing about your family is easy and fun

Biography Maker is the perfect tool for the family history enthusiast who wants to write biographies about relatives or an autobiography about himself. It offers an extensive selection of historical information and personal topics to help you create an interesting and complete biography. In fact, you will probably learn much about your relatives just by using the program. With so many Writing Ideas right at your fingertips, you'll never be at a loss for words!

Creates custom writing guides fast

Biography Maker is so smart, it creates a customized list of Writing Ideas for each relative you write about. All you have to do is provide the program with a few dates and answer some yes-no questions about the subject of your biography. Then Biography Maker searches through its database to find Writing Ideas that are appropriate to the person you are writing about.

Your own personal research assistant

Since Biography Maker knows that each person is a unique individual, the Writing Ideas it presents for a farmer who lived in the late 1800's will be entirely different than the Writing Ideas it presents for a nurse who lived in the mid 1900's. It's just like having your own research assistant. Both historical and personal Writing Ideas are presented together — in chronological order. So the list of Writing Ideas serves as a ready-made outline for your book. With this kind of help, all you have to concentrate on is telling the story.

Writes scripts for video histories, too!

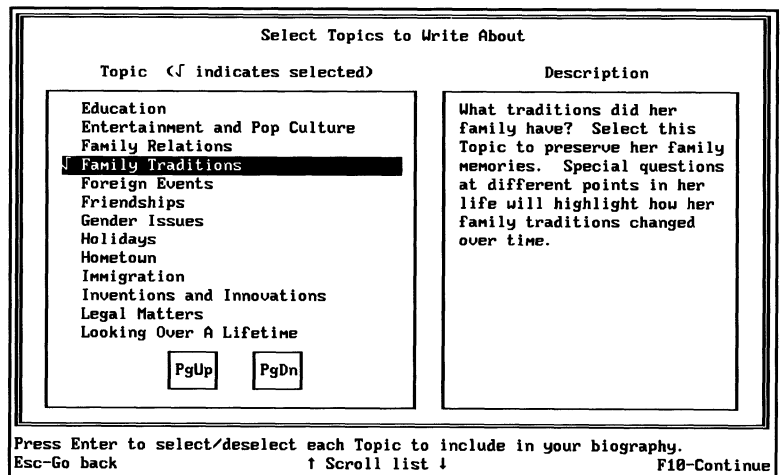
A video-taped interview of an older relative is a terrific way to pass your family heritage on to future generations. And Biography Maker is ideal for making scripts for a video-taped interview. In fact, it's automatic. Just give the program a few facts about the relative, choose some topics, and Biography Maker will print your script. There's no better way to help you recall all those wonderful family stories you want to preserve.

Make a family keepsake to last for generations

Whether you want to write a complete overview of a life or just concentrate on a few important events, Biography Maker turns family history into a fun project. And the rewards are great. The biography you create with Biography Maker is sure to become a family treasure.

Just select topics you want to write about...

Then, while you write, you can view the detailed writing ideas of each topic. See the back of this brochure to view some of the writing ideas from the "Family Traditions" topic.



Some of the many topics covered...

Biography Maker takes an in-depth look at the events that shaped your relatives' lives. It includes over 80 topics and more than 5,500 Writing Ideas.

Raising A Family	JFK's Assassination	Pop Culture
Marriage	World War I	Driving
Traveling	Foreign Events	Personality and Values
Inventions and Innovations	Friendships	Pioneer Life
Military Service	Recreation	Religion
Birth of Children	Prohibition Era	Medical History
Relationships and Dating	Favorite Pets	Space Exploration
Education	Family Traditions	Korean War
Gold Rush	Personal Finances	Ancestry
Wall Street Crash	The Civil War	Moving
Great Depression	World War II	Natural Disasters
U.S. Expansion	Personal Politics	and many more!
U.S. Exploration	Entertainment	

Features

- Autobiographies, too!
- Imports text files (in ASCII)
- Exports text files (in ASCII)
- Built-in word processor
- Automatic Table of Contents creation
- Writes scripts for video or audio histories
- Automatic cover page design
- User's guide that includes writing tips and inspiration

System requirements

- IBM PC, AT, XT, or compatible
- 512KB RAM
- DOS version 2.0 or higher
- Microsoft compatible mouse (optional)
- Hard disk, OR any high density drive, OR two 3 1/2" disk drives

(continued on other side)

Biography Maker Jogs Your Memory and Guides Your Research

When writing the story of someone's life, it's easy to forget some of the details. Even major events can sometimes be lost in the shuffle. Biography Maker helps you recapture those events and details with thousands of Writing Ideas that fall into over 80 different topics. Some major topics, such as education, have over 400 Writing Ideas.

Writing Ideas appear on-screen to help you while you write. You can also print lists of Writing Ideas to use as research guides when you're away from your computer.

Since each topic in Biography Maker is so complete, it is hard to show on paper what it's like to browse through the numerous Writing Ideas of a whole topic. But the four pictures to the right will give you an idea of how Biography Maker works.

The upper portion of each picture displays a few of the 50 Writing Ideas that make up the topic "Family Traditions." The lower portion of each picture displays a sample biography in progress. Notice how the Writing Ideas helped the writer recapture some special moments in Gayle's life.

**Order
Biography Maker
Today! \$29.99**

Biography Maker will help you recall and record the unique stories behind the lives of your relatives. It can even help you write your own life story! **Only \$29.99**, plus shipping (and sales tax for California residents).

To order: See the accessories order form in the front of this manual, or call:

**Banner Blue Software
510-795-4490**

(phone lines open Mon. - Fri.,
7am - 5pm PST)

or fax: 510-795-4488

Chapter titles are automatically organized into a Table of Contents.

Each group of Writing Ideas sparks your creativity and helps you write.

1

Writing Idea
What traditions did she and her family have? Did they eat special foods on special days? Did they make a point of spending time together on certain days?

Biography of Gayle Barbara Jansen

Like most children, Gayle especially loved the days and weeks surrounding Christmas. Gayle's mother was from a big, French-Canadian family, the Chamberland clan. Her father was from a big Norwegian family, the Jansens. That meant there were plenty of relatives around to help celebrate the holiday. And it also meant there was a fantastic collection of special Christmas time meals and sweets.

One of Gayle's favorite memories from her childhood was the making of Norwegian rosette cookies. The cookies were made by dipping a special iron into a pot of hot oil...

Normal Row 11 Col 25

F9-Menu Esc-Previous Writing Idea F10-Next Writing Idea

2

Writing Idea
Describe her everyday family routines. Did they always eat together at the table? Did they play games or spend time together in the evenings? Did these later become customs in her own family?

Biography of Gayle Barbara Jansen

Other than French and Norwegian recipes handed down from generation to generation, Gayle's family really didn't have many other traditions. They were pretty famous around the neighborhood for being good card players, though. And Gayle was among the best. Maybe it was the long Minnesota winters that made card playing such a popular pastime in the Jansen family. But even in the summer they played cards. Whenever the lake was too cold for swimming or it was raining, there would be Bridge, 500, Cribbage, you name it...

Normal Row 23 Col 25

F9-Menu Esc-Previous Writing Idea F10-Next Writing Idea

Use two simple keys to quickly scroll through Writing Ideas.

3

Writing Idea
Describe her everyday family routines. Did they always eat together at the table? Did they play games or spend time together in the evenings? Did these later become

Biography of

Other than F generation, were pretty though. And winters that family. But too cold for Cribbage, yo

tion to lions. They players, Innesota nsen he lake was 500,

Key Question
Did her family carry out traditions during her senior years?

Yes No

Normal Row 29 Col 1

Esc-Previous Writing Idea F10-Next Writing Idea

Key Questions help make sure you only see writing ideas that are appropriate for your relative.

4

Writing Idea
As she grew older, were there family traditions that she found she disliked? What new traditions had been introduced to the family? What did she think about them?

Biography of Gayle Barbara Jansen

Chapter 11 Gayle As A Grandmother

In her later years, Gayle taught all her grandchildren the tricks of card playing, and was herself an avid Bridge player well into her 80's.

Playing cards was still a family tradition, but the younger generation was a little less enthusiastic about it than Gayle had been at the same age. That didn't bother Gayle, though. In fact, she was very open to the games and activities that her grandchildren enjoyed. She even attempted to play Nintendo every once in a while...

Normal Row 36 Col 69

F9-Menu Esc-Previous Writing Idea F10-Next Writing Idea

Family Tree maker

"...everything you could ask for...easy input, easy editing, gorgeous output, and a modest price."

—PC Magazine, May 15, 1990

#1 SELLING AND BEST VALUE

With over 200,000 copies sold, Family Tree Maker™ is the #1 selling program to organize your family information. When it comes to ease of use, overall quality, and reliability, you won't find a better value than Family Tree Maker.

QUICK AND EASY

It's just like filling out a note card. Simply enter information about parents, children, and marriages into the family card screen. Links between family members are automatically created and maintained.

ORGANIZE YOUR FAMILY INFORMATION

Extend your family research to include education, military service, occupation — even personal characteristics like height, weight, and personality. Family Tree Maker lets you record any facts you choose. Then print your choice of information in your family trees. Other programs let you record facts like these, but then don't let you print them!

With the **Notes** feature, record extensive biographies and amusing stories — up to 5 printed pages per person. Family Tree Maker also provides a fun, **Kinship** command that tells you how one individual is related to any other.

Your family trees are rewarding and enlightening no matter what information you include. And what a great way to pass your findings on to future generations!

AUTOMATICALLY DRAWS, READY FOR FRAMING

Family Tree Maker automatically draws your family tree. It places each individual in a box, and precisely draws lines between the boxes to show your family relationships. The results are beautiful.

FAMILY TREES ARE GREAT GIFTS

Ancestor trees (also known as pedigree charts) make especially good gifts because they show the roots of a particular person. Their parents, grandparents, great-grandparents, and beyond are all printed with perfect spacing.

Descendant trees are ideal for family gatherings because they show where everyone fits. Starting with a relative in the distant past, a descendant tree shows the children, grandchildren, and so on, generation by generation. Aunts, uncles, and cousins are all included.

ENTER INFORMATION ONCE...PRINT MANY DIFFERENT WAYS

Family Tree Maker has more ways to print your family tree than any other program:

- 🌳 Print **Ancestor (pedigree) and Descendant Trees** in a variety of different styles: regular, direct, photo, and **NEW Outline Style**.
- 🌳 More **box and border styles** for your tree than any other program.
- NEW** 🌳 Create **Custom Reports and Lists** with your family information.
- 🌳 Remember special family occasions with **Calendars**, automatically printed with birthdays and anniversaries filled in.
- 🌳 Summarize information to aid in your family research with **Family Group Sheets** or **Individual Cards**.
- NEW** 🌳 **Batch printing and Index feature** are helpful when preparing family books.
- NEW** 🌳 Record up to 2,400 relatives in a single tree. **No limit to the number of different trees** you can create. **GEDCOM and ASCII data transfer** now included, free!

RECOMMENDED BY EXPERTS...PRAISED BY USERS LIKE YOURSELF!

"Of all the software packages on this subject, this is the easiest and best operating family history program."

—Maggie Ramirez, Sr. Reviewer, Rainbo Electronic Reviews, 1992

"For a quick genealogy payoff, you won't find anything better than Family Tree Maker...Entering information is fast and painless...You won't find any [trees] that are more attractive."

—Gregg Keizer, Compute, June 1991

"One of the easiest to use genealogy programs available. This manual is one of the best in the business; well organized, thorough, clear, and fully indexed."

—JP O'Connor, Genealogical Computing, 1990

"It is fantastic! There is now hope for everyone who didn't want to spend a month learning to use a genealogical program."

—Betty Morrison, Bloomfield, Ohio



P. O. Box 7865, Fremont, California 94537 • Phone 510-794-6850

